

**South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813)
Program for Results (PforR)**

Final

ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIAL SYSTEMS ASSESSMENT (ESSA) REPORT

May 2025

Table of Contents

Executive Summary	vi
1 Program Description	1
1.1 Background.....	1
1.2 Program Scope.....	2
1.3 Program Boundaries	3
1.4 Program Development Objective (PDO), Results Areas (RAs) and Theory of Change.....	4
1.5 Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs)	5
1.6 Strengths of the Program Design.....	6
1.7 PforR Exclusion Criteria	6
1.8 Summary of Performance Issues in the Three Trading Service Sectors.....	7
1.8.1 Water Supply and Sanitation.....	7
1.8.2 Electricity.....	8
1.9 Description of the eligible infrastructure support.....	9
2 Environmental and Social Systems Assessment Approach and Methodology	12
2.1 ESSA Approach.....	13
2.2 ESSA Methodology	13
3 Relevant Legal and Institutional Management Frameworks	15
3.1 Legal Framework Applicable to the Program	15
3.1.1 General.....	15
3.1.2 Sector-specific application of legislation	16
3.1.3 Legal Requirements for Public Consultation	20
3.1.4 Specific Licensing Requirements related to NEMA and Associated Acts and Regulations....	20
3.2 Relevant Institutional Framework for the MTSP	23
3.3 Gaps in the legal, policy and institutional framework relevant to the MTSP	26
3.4 Gaps in Metro E&S Capacity	28
4 Environmental, Social, Health and Safety Effects of the Program	29
4.1 Program Environmental, Health and Safety Benefits	29
4.1.1 Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)	29
4.1.2 Electricity (Results Area 2).....	38
4.1.3 Solid Waste (Results Area 3).....	39
4.2 Program Environmental, Health and Safety Risks and Impacts	50
4.3 Program Social Benefits.....	52

4.3.1	Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)	52
4.3.2	Electricity (Results Area 2).....	54
4.3.3	Solid Waste (Results Area 3).....	55
4.4	Program Social Risks and Impacts	58
4.4.1	Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)	58
4.4.2	Electricity (Results Area 2).....	59
4.4.3	Solid Waste (Results Area 3).....	59
5	Environmental, Social, Health and Safety Management Systems Assessment in Relation to the Core Principles	63
5.1	Core Principle 1: General Principle of Environmental and Social Management	63
5.2	Core Principle 2: Natural Habitats and Physical Cultural Resources.....	64
5.3	Core Principle 3: Public and Worker Safety	65
5.4	Core Principle 4: Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources.....	67
5.5	Core Principle 5: Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups	69
5.6	Core Principle 6: Social Conflict	70
5.7	Summary SWOT Analysis	70
6	Conclusions.....	80
7	Actions to include in the Program action plan (PAP) and Performance improvement action plan (PIAP)	84
8	Consultations and Disclosure.....	85
	REFERENCES.....	86

List of Figures

Figure 1-1.	Cities Support Program under the National Treasury.....	1
Figure 1-2.	Integration of key reform components to achieve sustainable business units	3
Figure 3-1.	Proposed Institutional and Implementation Arrangements for the Program	24
Figure 3-2.	Performance evaluation in the Metro solid waste sector based on thirty-seven criteria	28
Figure 4-1.	Summary of Activities and KPIs for the Water and Sanitation Sector	32
Figure 4-2.	The waste mitigation hierarchy	45
Figure 4-3.	The linear vs circular economy	45

List of Tables

Table 1-1.	Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs) associated with the MTSP PforR Project	5
Table 3-1.	Thresholds for Environmental or Water Use Licensing of WWTPs	21
Table 3-2.	Roles of Government Departments that participate in the MTSP Steering Committee	24

Table 4-1. How DWS calculates Water Use Efficiency Performance in the WSAs..... 30

Table 4-2. No Drop Key Performance Areas for the eight Category A metropolitan municipalities (2021-2022 data) 31

Table 4-3. How DWS calculates Sanitation Performance in the WSAs using Green Drop 35

Table 4-4. Summary Data for the MTSP Metro Wastewater Treatment Works based on the DWS November (2023) Green Drop D-PAT Report 37

Table 4-5. Common challenges across most metros 38

Table 4-6. Electricity billed, leakage and profit margins in the metros 39

Table 4-7. Estimates of illegal waste dumping sites in the MTSP metro 40

Table 4-8. AfriForum (2024) audit results for selected metro landfills and transfer stations..... 42

Table 4-9. External Audits of landfill and transfer station compliance with permits and license conditions 43

Table 4-10. Total waste disposed to and diverted from landfill in the metros 46

Table 5-1. SWOT analysis of environmental and social risk of the MTSP rated according to the ESSA Core Principles 71

Table 7-1. Contribution to the Program Action Plan (PAP) and Program Implementation Action Plan (PIAP). 84

List of Annexures

1 Water and Sanitation Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

2 Electricity Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

3 Waste Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

4 Preliminary Screening of MTSP Results Areas

5 SCP National Treasury Meeting

6 Meeting with the Eight Metropolitan Stakeholders

7 Slide Pack Presented at the Metropolitan Stakeholder Meeting

8 Relevant legal frameworks on Environmental and Social Aspects of the MTSP

9 Summary of Green Drop Report Scores for 2023 (DWS, 2023)

10 Metro WWTW compliance with effluent quality discharge requirements

11 Summary of Recent Metro Waste Audit Findings / Recommendations

12 An Analysis on the Implications of the MTSP for Waste Pickers

13 PIAP Indicators Definition Sheets: Accountability Performance, Financial Performance, and Operational Performance Indicators for WSS, Electricity and SWM

14 Summary of Metro Performance Indicators for Solid Waste Management

List of Acronyms

ADMS	Advanced distribution management system
AMI	Advanced metering infrastructure
ARO	African Reclaimers Organization
COGTA	Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
COIDA	Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act
CPF	Country Partnership Framework
CRR	Critical Risk Rating
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
CSP	Cities Support Program
DEFF	Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
DFFE	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
DLI	Disbursement linked indicators
DMA	District Metered Areas
DMRE	Mineral Resources and Energy
DPLG	Department of Provincial and Local Government
DSI	Department of Science and Innovation
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
E&S	Environmental and Social
EPR	Extended Producer Responsibility
ESF	Environmental and Social Framework
ESHS	Environmental, social, health and safety
ESMS	Environmental and Social Management System
ESP	Expanded Social Package
ESSA	Environmental and Social Systems Assessment
FBE	Free Basic Electricity
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
GIIP	Good International Industrial Practice
GWh	Gigawatt hour
HDPE	High Density Polyethylene
IA	Impact assessment
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IFC	International Finance Corporation
ISO	International Standards Organization
IUDP	Integrated Urban Development Framework
IWMP	Integrated Waste Management Plan
KPI	Key Performance Indicators
kWh	Kilowatt hour
LGEI	Local Government Environmental Indaba
MRF	Material Recovery Facility
MTS	Metro Trading Service
MTSG	Metro Trading Services Grant
MTSP	Metro Trading Services Program
NEM:AQA	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act
NEM:BA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act

NEM:WA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
NMBMM	Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality
NRW	Non-revenue water
NT	National Treasury
NWA	National Water Act
NWMS	National Waste Management Strategy
NWRS	National Water Resources Strategy
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety
OHSA	Occupational Health and Safety Act
OMS	Operational Management System
OPRC	Operations Procurement Review Committee
PAP	Project Affected Person
PDO	Program Development Objective
PET	Polyethylene terephthalate
PforR	Programme for Results
PIAP	Performance Improvement Action Plan
PIAPs	Performance Improvement Action Plans
PIU	Project Implementation Unit
PMU	Project Management Unit
PP	Public Participation
PRO	Producer Responsibility Organization
RA	Results Area
RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant
RWTW	Raw Water Treatment Works
SALGA	South African Local Government Association
SANS	South Africa National Standards
SAWPA	South African Waste Pickers Association
SAWPRS	South Africa Waste Picker Registration System
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SEMA	Specific Environmental Management Act
SWM	Solid Waste Management
W2RAP	Wastewater Risk Abatement Planning
WC/WDM	Water Conservation / Water Demand Management
WRC	Water Resource Commission
WSA	Water Services Authority
WSIG	Water Services Infrastructure Grant
WSS	Water and Sanitation Services
WTR	Water treatment residues
WUL	Water Use License
WWTW	Wastewater Treatment Works

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The World Bank Metro Trading Service Program (MTSP) and Program for Results (PforR) has been developed with the National Treasury under the City Supports Program umbrella. The MTSP aims to respond to the institutional capacity needs of eight major metros, enabling substantive interventions in response to deteriorating infrastructure services in three sectors (water and sanitation, electricity and solid waste). The MTSP will assist the metros to leverage additional funding for their infrastructure needs for these services. The eight targeted metropolitan municipalities include the City of Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane located in Gauteng Province, the City of Cape Town located in Western Cape Province, eThekweni located in Kwa-Zulu Natal, Nelson Mandela Bay and Buffalo City located in Eastern Cape Province and Mangaung located in Free State Province.

The PforR component will finance activities in each sector in three Results Areas (RAs) (**RA 1:** Accountability Performance, **RA 2:** Financial Performance, and **RA 3:** Operational Performance). The program will support low-risk construction and infrastructure improvement (rehabilitation) projects and possibly some new capex projects, with the aim to improve overall operational performance and delivery of services. Investments under the Program will include technical assistance to support the consolidation, adoption, and implementation of the trading services' respective Turnaround Strategies and accompanying investment plans, capacity building at both central and local levels, and low-risk physical investments in each of the service sectors. The design of the MTSP is still in progress and is being tailored to meet individual metro's circumstances.

The program will be implemented under the oversight of a National MTSP Steering Committee, and a Project Management Unit will be established at National Treasury and staffed with civil servants assigned to the Project and will be implemented over a period of 6 years.

As part of the World Bank program support requirements, an Environmental and Social Systems Assessment (ESSA) was carried out to (i) analyze the environmental and social (E&S) effects, including direct, indirect and cumulative effects, of activities associated with the Program, (ii) analyze the borrower's existing systems for managing the identified environmental, social, health and safety (ESHS) risks and impacts, (iii) compare the borrower's systems against the six core E&S principles for eligible investments . The Six Core principles are as follows:

- i. **Environment and Social Management:** To promote E&S sustainability in the Program design; avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse impacts; and promote informed decision-making relating to the Program's ESHS effects.
- ii. **Natural Habitats and Physical and Cultural Resources:** To avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse impacts on natural habitats and promote informed decision-making relating to a Program's ESHS effects in relation to physical and cultural resources.
- iii. **Protection of Public and Worker Safety:** To protect public and worker safety against the potential risks associated with construction and/or operations of facilities or other operational practices under the Program; exposure to toxic chemicals, hazardous wastes, and other dangerous materials under the Program; and reconstruction or rehabilitation of infrastructure located in areas prone to natural hazards.

- iv. **Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources:** To manage land acquisition and loss of access to natural resources in a way that avoids or minimizes displacement, and assists the affected people in improving, or at the minimum restoring, their livelihoods and living standards.
- v. **Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups:** To give due consideration to the cultural appropriateness of, and equitable access to, Program benefits, giving special attention to the rights and interests of the Indigenous Peoples and to the needs or concerns of vulnerable groups.
- vi. **Social Conflict:** To avoid exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial dispute.

The ESSA concluded that the environmental and social (E&S) benefits of the Program will be highly significant. Environmental and social benefits associated with the Program include (i) reduced greenhouse gas emissions, (ii) less demand for development of greenfield water resources, (iii) less pollution from wastewater treatment works and raw sewage discharges. (iv) reduced pollution associated with illegal dumping of waste and poor landfill site operations, (v) promotion of a circular economy to assist with reducing waste volumes to landfill, (vi) enhanced service delivery and access to basic services such as water and electricity provisions to vulnerable households and enhanced public health because of improved environmental controls.

Since the details of the Program civil works activities have not been defined yet, Program risk has been rated as *Substantial*. While the PforR instrument does not support works with significant adverse environmental or social risks and impacts, the thresholds applying to activities are not yet defined. To mitigate the risk, the ESSA has proposed boundaries that classify the eligibility of the possible MTSP civil works.

Among other investments that are not eligible for support under the MTPS, any civil works involving upgrading, rehabilitation or new hazardous waste disposal sites, construction of facilities for municipal waste incineration or co-processing and the construction of high voltage transmission lines.

Eligible capital investments subject to meeting the Bank PforR requirements include a wide range of options relating to rehabilitation and upgrading of existing WWTWs and municipal landfills, many of which have been raised by the metros in initial requests. Most metros need additional sewage treatment capacity, which can be provided through upgrades and extensions of existing works and/or by new works. Sanitary landfill airspace availability is variable across the metros, improvements in which can be accommodated in some cases by the construction of new cells at existing landfills but would need consideration of new landfills in others. Many municipalities also need new or upgraded solid waste transfer stations. Other critical requirements at municipal landfills would be new or upgraded leachate management systems, or any systems designed to collect, flare or process methane from the landfills. Also included would be repair or replacement of existing sewage, water network infrastructure or electrical distribution infrastructure taking place outside of municipal rights of way or municipal-owned or controlled property, and any activity which requires licensing or re-licensing under the suite of National Acts and regulations associated with the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA).

Adverse environmental and social effects are considered manageable through the existing regulatory framework, with the possibility of some technical assistance to update and improve relevant local bylaws. To facilitate effective management of risks and benefits, the development, implementation and maintenance of an **Environmental and Social Management System (ESMS)** is recommended at metro

level where they do not already exist. To ring fence responsibilities and encourage ownership, this must be managed by the Metropolitan Trading Services (MTS) themselves, not by the broader metropolitan Government. The ESMS is to set out key benefits, adverse risks and impacts, and the procedures, capacity and training necessary to manage them. Similarly, Metro must require their staff and contractors to comply with municipal health and regulatory requirements, safety policies and guidelines, the status and enforcement of which varies significantly between the MTSP municipalities.

Provisions for Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) to evaluate OHS and other E&S performance requirements at each Metro Trading Service need to be considered as part of the Program. KPIs should avoid duplicating or unnecessarily changing existing indicators where these are already being implemented, such as the No Drop, Blue Drop and Green Drop methodologies developed by the Department of Water Services for the water and sanitation sector. Solid waste management KPIs must include compliance of landfills with statutory pollution control measures as well as progress to reduce illegal dumping.

To mitigate risks associated with potential resettlement (for example, in service upgrades in informal settlement areas), the scale of the permissible resettlement under PforR must be decided in consultation with National Treasury and the World Bank before a decision is taken to proceed. It is expected that the system of subsidies/free services will remain in place to support disadvantaged groups. A recommended action to deal with the vulnerability aspect of potential re-alignment of the free basic services approach to water, sanitation and electricity is to develop a set of indicators that measure municipality performance against the policy intentions as set out in the Free Basic Services Indigent Support Policy and unlock incentives. A fully functioning, and project wide, grievance mechanism, that is fit for purpose and embedded in each of the municipalities is recommended. Lastly, a common actionable approach consistent with the guidelines for waste picker integration into the formal waste management process is recommended. This should be developed in collaboration with all the participating metros.

In conclusion, the MTSP represents a transformative effort to improve service delivery in South Africa's metropolitan areas through financial and operational reforms, infrastructure investment, and strengthened governance. The ESSA findings underscore the importance of financial accountability and institutional capacity-building to achieve the intended sustainability outcomes. The program's structured approach ensures alignment with national priorities and World Bank standards, promising significant improvements in urban service delivery and sustainability. Before specific civil works projects proposed by the metros are approved, they must be screened for eligibility under the World Bank PforR rules, and if eligible must be subject to any additional requirements for environmental and social management required by National Treasury and the World Bank, over and above the conditions of approval set by legally required authorizations.

1 PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

1.1 Background

The World Bank South Africa 2022-2026 Country Partnership Framework (CPF) supports the strengthening of basic service delivery to unlock the potential of urban areas across the country. The main focus has been to participate in the National Treasury’s Cities Support Program (CSP) within the eight metropolitan areas. For more than a decade, National Treasury (NT) has been implementing an umbrella program through its Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) division to enable cities to address the inefficiencies in the built environment and drive meaningful changes. The Cities Support Program (CSP) focuses on strengthening the intergovernmental environment for this agenda, improving performance and strengthening governance towards inclusive economic growth. Considering the multi-sectoral challenges that are faced by the metros, IGR coordinates and collaborates with government stakeholders across the three spheres of government.

The CSP takes as its point of departure the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDP), prepared by the Ministry of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA). The CSP, under the stewardship of a dedicated professional team in the National Treasury, is designed to assist cities to address the dysfunctional spatial form and inefficiencies in the built environment, through strengthening institutions and governance, enabling improved performance and inclusive economic growth.

The World Bank Metro Trading Service Program (MTSP) and Program for Results (PforR) has been developed with the National Treasury under the CSP umbrella. It is proposed to respond to the institutional capacity needs of eight major metros, enabling substantive interventions in response to deteriorating infrastructure services (water and sanitation, waste and electricity). The program will assist the metros to leverage additional funding for their infrastructure needs for these services.

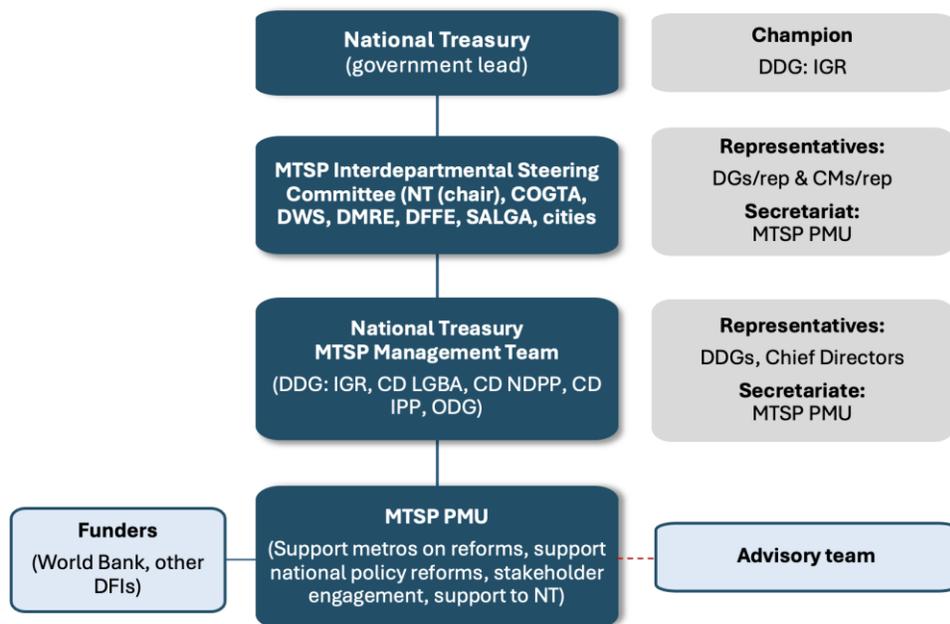


Figure 1-1. Cities Support Program under the National Treasury

The crisis in the provision of metropolitan basic trading services (water and sanitation, waste and electricity)¹ is marked by declining safety, reliability and accessibility. This has been caused by low collection rates with resulting revenue loss, underinvestment in infrastructure operations and maintenance, lack of financial transparency and suboptimal procurement processes, lack of proper asset management and human capacity constraints; all contributing to the cycle of diminishing revenues, decreased investment and increasingly unreliable service. In most metros, trading services departments also do not have full control of the revenue cycle, which is centralized with other support services such as finance and collections, human resources, supply chain management, information technology, and fleet management, often under multiple separate departments. This aggravates the problem of poor governance, making it difficult to ring fence the performance of the trading service.

1.2 Program Scope

The MTSP will include all financing spent on the program (US\$3 billion), comprising the Metro Trading Services Grant (MTSG) that will exclusively target water supply and sanitation, electricity, and solid waste services, which will be in addition to Metro expenditure from their own revenues and borrowing across the three trading services (~US\$6 billion). It is expected that the financing of any major civil infrastructure and all infrastructure, which may be needed, which would be regarded as having ‘high’ adverse environmental and social risk, will not be funded under the MTSG but will be funded under the Metro budgets or other sources of funding.

A significant component of the program is institutional reform. This reform will underpin all other activities undertaken by the program to improve the sustainable provision of metropolitan trading services. Figure 1-2 describes the steps that will be required, and provides an annotated account of how, to succeed, city utilities will need to integrate distinct elements of reform, starting with sound governance and a supporting and enabling environment. National Treasury and the MTSP design team have emphasised that ring-fencing of the utilities to achieve stable financial results and good governance will be the foundation of all improvements in service provision and will be the first Results Area in the program.

¹ Trading services are services for which consumption charges are levied and determined with the intention to make a surplus (profit) on the delivery of the services (National Treasury Guidance Note: *Metro preparations for the introduction of trading services infrastructure financing reforms, starting in 2024/25 with water and sanitation 2024*). Service charges are based on consumption (in the case of electricity and water); **or approximations** in the case of sanitation and solid waste.

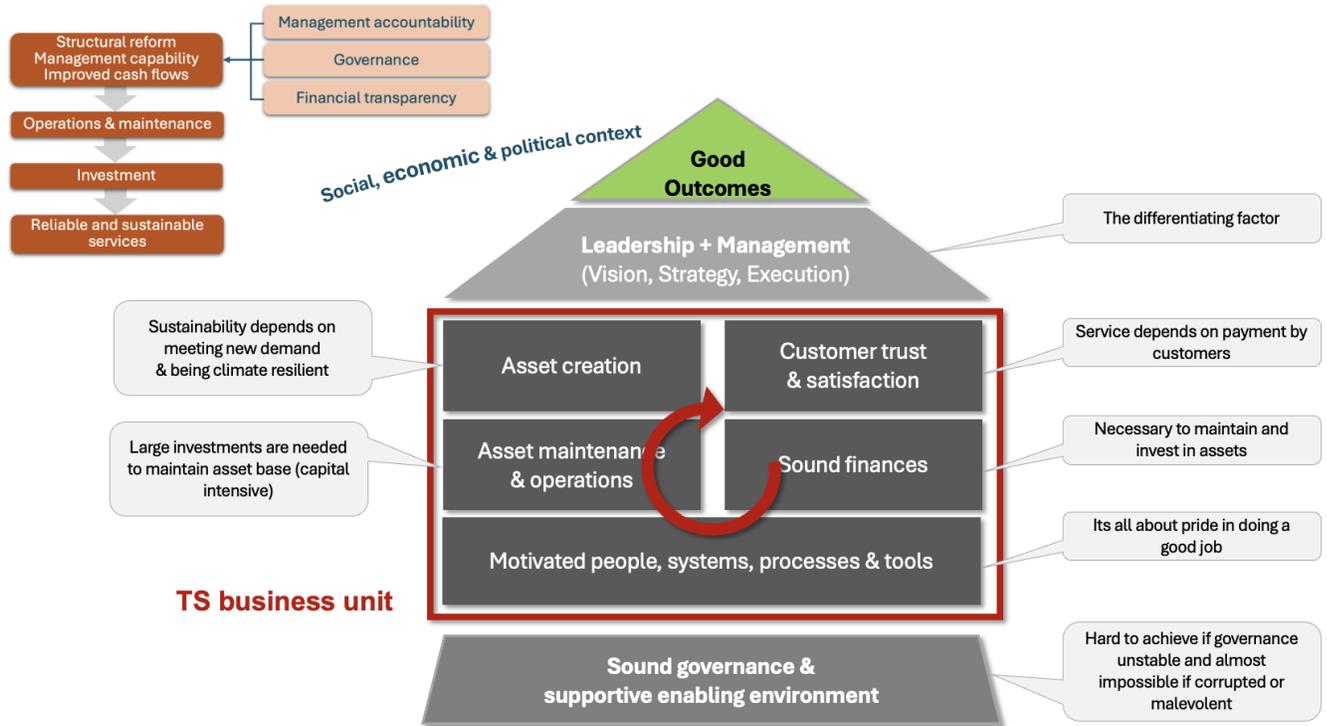


Figure 1-2. Integration of key reform components to achieve sustainable business units

1.3 Program Boundaries

The PforR boundaries are defined as follows:

- The Program will support eligible investments during the first phase of the anticipated Government program and its approximate US\$3 billion multi-sectoral investment plan over a period of 6 years (2025-2031). The PforR includes the MTSG (US\$3 billion) comprising International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) financing (\$US1 billion) and National Treasury (NT) financing (\$US2 billion). The PforR expenditures are all those under the MTSG, but do not include the MTSP expenditures financed by the Metros from their own resources.
- The Program area includes eight metropolitan municipalities, namely City of Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane located in Gauteng Province, City of Cape Town located in Western Cape Province, eThekweni located in Kwa-Zulu Natal, Nelson Mandela Bay and Buffalo City located in Eastern Cape Province and Mangaung located in Free State Province (Figure 1-3). Over 38 % of the population of South Africa fall within these eight municipalities.

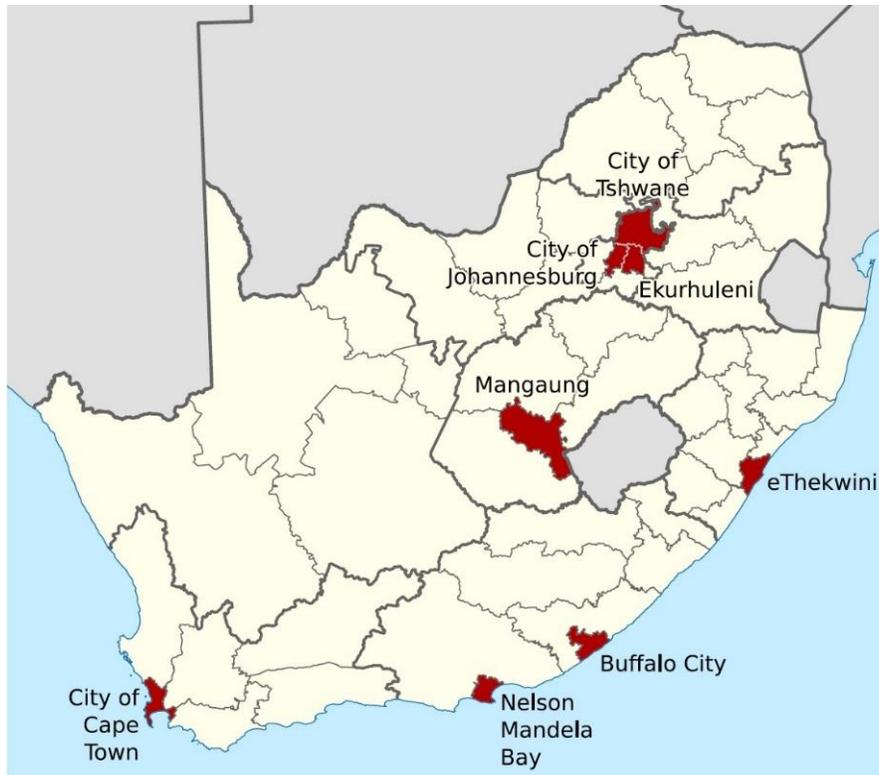


Figure 1-3. Metropolitan Municipalities of South Africa included in the PforR (Source: Wikipedia)

1.4 Program Development Objective (PDO), Results Areas (RAs) and Theory of Change

The PDO is to improve the accountability, financial and operational performance of trading services in South Africa’s metropolitan municipalities.

The PforR component will finance activities across the eight metros in three sectors (**Sector 1:** Water Supply and Sanitation, **Sector 2:** Energy and Electricity, and **Sector 3:** Solid Waste Management). The Results areas (RAs) for each sector are:

- **Results Area 1:** Governance and Accountability
- **Results Area 2:** Financial Performance
- **Results Area 3:** Operational Performance

Figure 1-4 summarizes the theory of change for the program. The metros’ performance will be measured against Performance Improvement Action Plans (PIAPs) for each sector and each Results Area. The PIAPs will contain the metros’ commitments to a set of key performance indicators and targets across the three Results Areas of the Program, for each trading service. The result areas (RAs) are deemed critical to improve the performance of trading services in the metros, as elaborated in the theory of change.

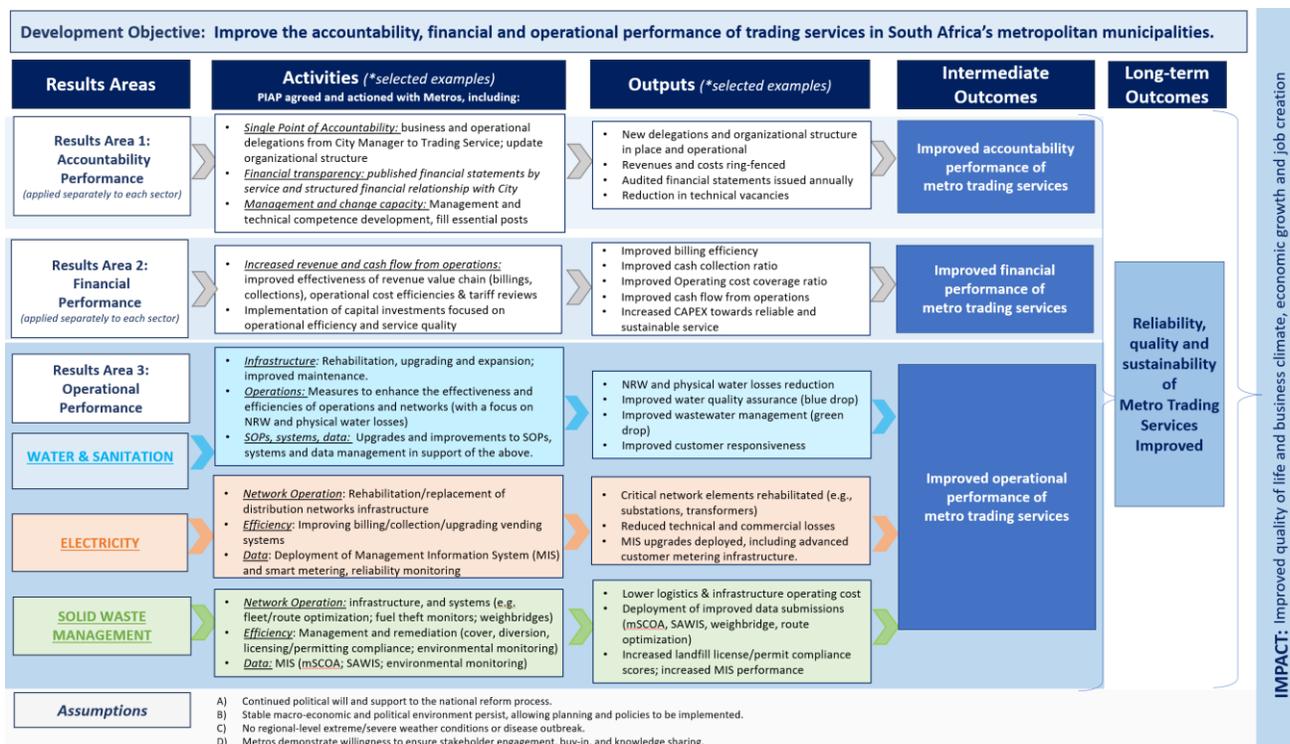


Figure 1-4: Theory of Change

1.5 Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs)

In PforR projects, disbursements are linked to indicators (DLIs). **Table 1-1** provides an overview of the DLIs for this PforR.

Table 1-1. Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs) associated with the MTSP PforR Project

Purpose of DLIs	Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs)		USD Million Total
Strengthen the Accountability, Financial Performance and Operational Performance of Water and Sanitation, Electricity, and Solid Waste Management Services.	DLI 1	Buffalo City has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational performance	65.47
	DLI 2	The City of Cape Town has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational	147.69
	DLI 3	The City of Ekurhuleni has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational	135.26
	DLI 4	The City of Johannesburg has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational	173.08
	DLI 5	The City of Tshwane has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational	122.51
	DLI 6	eThekweni has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational performance	146.66
	DLI 7	Mangaung has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational performance	61.65
	DLI 8	Nelson Mandela Bay has council approved PIAPs for the (3) Trading Services and is meeting its accountability, financial and operational	73.18

Purpose of DLIs	Disbursement Linked Indicators (DLIs)	USD Million Total
	TOTAL	925.00

Each DLI is subdivided into four staged components, indicating (i) metros have submitted draft PIAPs for the three Trading Services and have committed to achieving the Minimum Conditions (ii) metros have submitted acceptable full PIAPs for the three Trading Services and have achieved the Minimum Conditions (iii) metros have retained the Minimum Conditions; and (iv) metros have implemented the PIAPs for the three Trading Services.

1.6 Strengths of the Program Design

The Program design and implementation arrangements are informed by substantial World Bank experience on results-based financing to strengthen institutional and service delivery performance of city governments and municipal service utilities. Such programs rely on the following mutually reinforcing elements, each of which is present in this Program:

- A design of the performance-based grant to cities premised on a financial incentive that should be substantial enough to incentivize performance improvement, formula-based distribution of funding across the participating cities, and calibrated performance indicators that are within the mandates of cities.
- The performance of cities is assessed through a robust, externally executed, and transparent periodic performance assessment, the findings of which form the basis for funding allocations to them and are synced with the annual budget planning cycle at the central and local government levels.
- The Program is supplemented by extensive capacity building and technical assistance support provided by the Central Government to help cities achieve the intended results and performance indicators. This must also be underpinned by a conducive enabling environment led by National Government and enacted through a strong Local Government commitment to resourcing and strengthening municipal service delivery.

1.7 PforR Exclusion Criteria

Activities that are judged to be likely to have **‘significant adverse impacts** on the environment or nearby population that are sensitive, diverse or unprecedented are not eligible for financing under PforR Programs according to the Bank PforR Policy. Activities may typically involve the following:

- Significant conversion or degradation of critical natural habitats or critical cultural heritage sites;
- Air, water, or soil contamination leading to significant adverse impacts on the health or safety of individuals, communities, or ecosystems;
- Workplace conditions that expose workers to significant risks to health and personal safety;
- Land acquisition and/or resettlement of a scale or nature that will have significant adverse impacts on affected people, or the use of forced evictions²;

² In the context of the ESSA Guidance, resettlement includes physical relocation of individuals and communities as well as the acquisition of land for program purposes. Fixed numerical thresholds for “large scale” resettlement are not defined because the significance of impacts depends very much on local contextual factors. The definition of significant resettlement impacts is closely related to the extent to which the borrower’s systems align with the core principles and to the borrower’s capacity to carry out

- Large-scale changes in land use or access to land and/or natural resources;
- Adverse E&S impacts covering large geographical areas, including transboundary impacts, or global impacts such as greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions;
- Significant cumulative, induced, or indirect impacts;
- Activities that involve the use of forced or child labor;
- Marginalization of, discrimination against, or conflict within or among, social (including ethnic and racial) groups; or
- Activities that would (a) have adverse impacts on land and natural resources subject to traditional ownership or under customary use or occupation; (b) cause relocation of Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities from land and natural resources that are subject to traditional ownership or under customary use or occupation; or (c) have significant impacts on Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities' cultural heritage that is material to the identity and/or cultural, ceremonial, or spiritual aspects of the affected communities.

In the PforR context, the concept of exclusion means that an activity is not included in the identified program of expenditures. In addition, an activity is not included if it requires the completion of a non-eligible activity to achieve its contribution to the PDO or any specific DLI.

1.8 Summary of Performance Issues in the Three Trading Service Sectors

1.8.1 Water Supply and Sanitation

The rehabilitation of existing infrastructure, including water and sanitation, represents a significant share of spending needs because of the lack of maintenance, vandalism, theft, and sabotage. The impact of water conservation and demand management (WCDM) measures can reduce operating costs below what is currently being spent. There are weaknesses in how water and sanitation services are structured. There is a poor understanding, due to lack of transparency, of financial performance and an opaque financial relationship between the trading services and the city. Accountability for performance is dispersed without any single point of accountability, and management of the revenue value chain is divorced from the rest of the business. Essential support services have been centralized within the cities and perform poorly. There is an absence of management accountability for performance. Consequently, businesses lose revenue, are inefficient in how money is spent and how resources are used and have become ineffective in delivering on their core mandate of providing safe and reliable basic services.

Water supply reliability in metros cannot be taken for granted. The progress achieved by metros in expanding access to both WSS since 1994 is now being undermined by inadequate investments in, as well as lack of maintenance and upgrading of existing infrastructure. Operating deficiencies have led to widespread declines in the reliability and quality of services. Providing adequate WSS services in informal settlements is challenging and increases the financial burden in the absence of any recovery of these costs. Non-revenue water (NRW) accounts for approximately 47% of municipal water, with water losses estimated at 40,8%.³ National NRW and water loss trends show a steady increase in NRW over the past 10

land acquisition and resettlement in accordance with policy principles and requirements. Assessment of eligibility where resettlement is involved is therefore to be made on a case-by-case basis.

³ Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), Republic of South Africa, (2023). <https://ws.dws.gov.za/wsk/default.aspx>

years, and the Infrastructure Leakage Index (ILI) deteriorated drastically from 2016 to date.⁴ At metro level, challenges include capital expenditure allocations that are too low to ensure viability; inappropriate and generally not cost-reflective tariffs; lack of long-term planning and investment in renewal, repairs and maintenance; declining staff capacity on utility management; reduced utility performance, autonomy on investment decisions, declining collection rates, and management accountability; and lack of utility-level financial transparency due to municipal aggregation. Reforms to clarify or establish the single point of accountability for WSS services, financial transparency and operating interventions are crucial to reverse the long-term decline of WSS service provision.

1.8.2 Electricity

The financial performance of the metros has deteriorated significantly over the last 10 years with profitability and efficiency in most metros as a threat. In some municipalities, total system losses (technical and non-technical) are as high as 30% (City of Cape Town is a notable exception), making it very difficult to achieve adequate revenue generation and financial sustainability. Profitability indices are declining. Metro electricity departments do not have the full competences of classic electricity distribution and retail utility on management and operations. Effective billing is a critical link in the municipal revenue value chain that underpins the financial sustainability of any municipal trading service. Upgrades are needed to enhance revenue management and protection and improve customer service

The structure and governance of the metro electricity departments are such that decision-making authority (such as over capital investment and tariff decisions) are diffused over multiple units, leading to poor coordination and a lack of accountability. Electricity Departments are not entitled to receive and manage revenues from electricity sales to consumers as per tariffs set by the national electricity regulator. The metro finance department manage collected revenues as per directives and decisions made at the highest level (Council/Major).

Many parts of the electricity distribution system are in the advanced stages of their lifespan and close to reaching the end of their operational life. This is leading to increased outages, maintenance costs, and the need for extensive upgrades. Over the past several years, a maintenance and refurbishment backlog in relation to grid infrastructure has been growing, largely due to shortage of resources, supply chain management delays/issues and more recently limited project funding. These constraints are exacerbated by vandalism and theft of critical grid network equipment. Delayed maintenance cycles have led to premature failure of equipment thus resulting in replacement of equipment that require to be undertaken in the capital budget, which is also constrained. Outage Management Systems (OMS) are also often lagging – they are a tool to quickly and accurately identify location and analyze extent of an interruption in electricity supply and enable fast resolution and service restoration. Some metros have not yet implemented Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition System (SCADA): systems (hardware and software) that allow remote operation and control of high and medium voltage network infrastructure.

1.8.3 Solid Waste

Metro Integrated Waste Management Plans (IWMPs) in Gauteng City region, eThekweni, Ekurhuleni, and Nelson Mandela Bay are outdated and often misaligned with the National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS). This misalignment has contributed to limited accountability and transparency, hampering effective resource allocation. Key risks such as landfill fires, methane emissions, groundwater contamination, and inadequate flood management remain prevalent. Over the past year, compromised

⁴ DWS, Republic of South Africa, (2023). *No Drop National Report*, https://ws.dws.gov.za/IRIS/releases/ND_2023_Report.pdf

infrastructure—such as groundwater monitoring wells, stormwater ponds, and leachate collection systems—has been reported in several metros, heightening environmental risks. Additionally, issues like insufficient data on landfill airspace, lack of greenfield development planning, limited operational weighbridges, and minimal route optimization continue to challenge waste management efficiency. The absence of software solutions for fuel theft and logistics optimization further limits operational effectiveness.

Waste departments face critical operational issues, such as limited fleet availability, inefficient transport and disposal practices, and landfill airspace constraints. Persistent underinvestment in fleet maintenance exacerbates these issues, often leading to service disruptions. Illegal dumping remains a widespread issue due to weak enforcement, and broken leachate management infrastructure further impacts environmental standards. In terms of data and documentation, although most waste facilities have Waste Management Licenses (WMLs), many lack supporting Water Use Licenses (WULs). Furthermore, data management is severely hindered by the absence or malfunction of weighbridges, undermining tracking and planning efforts.

Solid waste services are typically underfunded and operate at a loss due to their dual nature as both public and private goods. Positioned at the "end of the financial food chain," these services face challenges in securing capital budgets, tariff approvals, and sufficient revenue allocations. Legislative and policy pressures further drive-up operational costs, but the sector remains highly susceptible to disruptions in staff and fleet availability. Service failures, often stemming from historic underinvestment in fleet maintenance and renewal, are immediate and visible. Solid waste departments depend heavily on equitable share allocations and transfers from municipal rates accounts, while receiving minimal support from Urban Settlements Development Grant (USDG), making it an inadequate performance incentive.

1.9 Description of the eligible infrastructure support

The program will support selected physical investments and the upgrading and replacement of infrastructure, plant, vehicles and equipment. The PAD provides a generic account of the nature of interventions that will be considered for PforR Grant funding in the three metro sectors. Much of the funding will be used to improve performance in RA1 (improving accountability performance) and RA2 (improving financial performance). RA3 (operational performance) is the results area involving physical interventions in which most of the environmental and social risks of the Program are situated. These interventions are still to be specified in detail, and at the time of preparation of this ESSA are defined only in broad terms.

Water supply and sanitation –

Overview

- Rehabilitation and expansion of networks and infrastructure/assets.
- Upgrading of priority systems such as non-revenue water (NRW) and WSS to improve network operations.
- Digitalization of WSS systems to improve efficiency.
- Equipping storage reservoirs with water quality sensors and automated distribution mechanisms to improve data management and quality.

Possible Interventions

- Rehabilitate and expand existing water supply and sanitation systems, including: (i) the rehabilitation and/or expansion of production, pumping, treatment, and storage infrastructure; distribution and sewerage networks; standpipes; and household connections and (ii) the development of associated studies and works supervision. Expansion of pump stations, which implies increased use of water, may be financed if it does not involve critical questions of water balance, river health and long-term biodiversity impact in the affected aquatic ecosystems that has not been previously studied and authorized under National Environmental Management Act (NEMA). Water storage infrastructure would include small scale intermediary storage, but not primary storage on ridgelines requiring large scale civil works.
- Upgrade infrastructure/assets of water supply and sanitation systems including those out of service and selected to be repaired as a priority.
- Implement works related to improving transmission and distribution networks. Construction of transmission pipelines may include work within the urban framework but will not be in any area where species or habitats of conservation concern may be impacted.
- Improve service quality: continuous water supply initiatives in demonstration zones, expand distribution network for 24/7 supply; expand sewerage network and treatment capacity.
- Construct a water quality lab for more frequent and accurate quality monitoring.
- Provide water storage reservoirs with water quality sensors and automated distribution arrangements.

Electricity –

Overview

- Rehabilitation/replacement of distribution networks infrastructure to improve network operations.
- Upgrading billing collection and vending systems to improve system efficiency.
- Deploying Management Information System (MIS) and smart metering, reliability monitoring to improve data quality and management.

Possible Interventions

- Enhance infrastructure protection measures to mitigate risks of damage and theft.
- Implement integrated security solutions and surveillance cameras and alarm systems at critical infrastructure sites.
- Implement design modifications, upgrade fencing and access control mechanisms, and explore innovative solutions (e.g. smart tagging) to deter theft and vandalism.
- Implement a fully functional OMS in all metros.
- Improve the digitalization of metro's distribution networks by adoption of systems such as SCADA, DMS and ADI.

- Replace end-of-life switchgear, transformers, insulators, circuit breakers, meters, lightning arrestors, surge suppressors, cabling and other equipment.
- Enhance GIS coverage of all customers as a basis for implementation of OMS.

Solid Waste -

Overview

- Rehabilitation/replacement of solid waste management systems.
- Improvements in landfill management.
- Implementation of waste management information systems to improve data quality and management.

Possible Interventions

- Support improvements of operational performance of service providers.
- Invest in solid waste infrastructure and assets including transfer stations, stormwater drainage, leachate collection systems and fleet.
- Invest in solid waste information systems including fuel theft monitors, route optimizations trackers and weighbridges.
- Implement security measures including landfill fencing, access control gates and security cameras.

For the solid waste sector, a more granular assessment by the technical team provides an indication of the type of infrastructure to be considered, per municipality, based on a review of metro's needs. The waste report⁵ also raises the possibility of various types of gas processing at landfills, including passive venting systems, use of bio-membrane covers to promote gas collection and minimize leakage, specific open flame flaring, on-site combustion for heat, gas to industry through extraction, scrubbing and piping to local nearby industrial sites, gas to electricity involving extraction, scrubbing and combustion to generate heat for generators and, on high production sites,. gas to compressed natural gas (CNG) or liquefied natural gas (LNG) for transport or industrial uses.

Table 1-2: *Solid waste sector infrastructure and equipment raised by Metros for consideration in the PforR grant*

⁵ JG Afrika, Solid Waste Management Infrastructure Requirements, Equipment Glossary.

Activity / Infrastructure	Johannesburg	Cape Town	Ekurhuleni	eThekweni	Tshwane	Mangaung	Buffalo City	N. Mandela Bay
New landfill site								?
New cell development and compliance alterations to meet license conditions at existing landfills								
Licensing of existing garden refuse landfills								
Purchase bulk waste containers								
Purchase new waste collection fleet vehicles								
Replacement of plant								
Landfill equipment hire (compactors, bulldozers, water tankers etc.)								
Fuel theft monitors								
Route optimization trackers								
New (always connected) weighbridges								
Landfill fencing								
Access control gates								
Security cameras								
Waste transfer stations								
Waste drop off sites								
Leachate collection systems in landfills (pumps, treatment tanks)								
Improved stormwater drainage								
Leachate collection systems (including pumps)								
Material Recovery Facility (MRF) upgrade								
Material Recovery Facility (MRF) new								
Upgrading and development works at existing hazardous waste disposal sites								
General upgrading of landfill sites								
Development of paved internal roads								
Installation of landfill gas collection infrastructure (eg: horizontal or vertical gas wells)								
Provision of waste containers and refuse bags								

2 ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIAL SYSTEMS ASSESSMENT APPROACH AND METHODOLOGY

As per the requirements of the World Bank PforR Policy and Directive requirements, the Bank must carry out an Environmental and Social Systems Assessment (ESSA) to: (i) analyze the environmental and social (E&S) effects, including direct, indirect and cumulative effects, of activities associated with the Program, (ii) analyze the borrower’s existing systems for managing the identified environmental, social, health and safety (ESHS) risks and impacts, (iii) compare the borrower’s systems against the six core principles and key planning elements set out in the Bank Policy and Directive for PforR to identify any significant differences that could affect Program performance; and (iv) propose recommended measures to address key gaps identified to strengthen the managing of the Program identified E&S risks.

2.1 ESSA Approach

The ESSA was prepared to establish the extent to which the Borrower's existing systems are consistent with the six Core Principles of the World Bank Policy and Directive for PforR. The Six Core principles are as follows:

1. **Environment and Social Management:** To promote E&S sustainability in the Program design; avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse impacts; and promote informed decision-making relating to the Program's ESHS effects.
2. **Natural Habitats and Physical and Cultural Resources:** To avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse impacts on natural habitats and promote informed decision-making relating to a Program's ESHS effects in relation to physical, biological and cultural resources.
3. **Protection of Public and Worker Safety:** To protect public and worker safety against the potential risks associated with construction and/or operations of facilities or other operational practices under the Program; exposure to toxic chemicals, hazardous wastes, and other dangerous materials under the Program; and reconstruction or rehabilitation of infrastructure located in areas prone to natural hazards.
4. **Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources:** To manage land acquisition and loss of access to natural resources in a way that avoids or minimizes displacement, and assists the affected people in improving, or at the minimum restoring, their livelihoods and living standards.
5. **Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups:** To give due consideration to the cultural appropriateness of, and equitable access to, Program benefits, giving special attention to the rights and interests of the Indigenous Peoples and to the needs or concerns of vulnerable groups.
6. **Social Conflict:** To avoid exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial dispute.

The relevance and applicability of each of the six core principles to the Program are discussed in Section 5 of the report.

2.2 ESSA Methodology

The approach to undertake the ESSA entailed the steps outlined below.

- a) **Screening.** During the concept (current)⁶ stage, the Program activities were assessed to identify potential ESHS effects associated with the Program (Annexure 4). The screening process further assessed the program against the exclusion criteria in the World Bank Policy for PforR financing and the ESSA Guideline for PforR programs, to determine activities which are ineligible for investment support, due to their potentially unacceptable adverse ESHS risks, involving the environments and/or affected people that are sensitive, diverse, or unprecedented. Since many of the specific programs' activities involving civil works are still to be defined, the screening assessment, and the determination of the eligibility of classes of activity, has been done at a broadly conceptual level. Checking eligibility against PforR financing rules and guidelines will need to be done for each proposed activity as the

⁶ Specific design proposals for maintenance and/or upgrading of sectoral infrastructure were still under development at the time of preparation of this ESSA. The metros have put forward 'shopping lists' for civil works which they wish to implement. The MTSP program design team are presently evaluating these requests, taking into consideration the PforR eligibility criteria, but no details were available at the time of writing.

program designs are developed, particularly where these are on the border line between eligible and ineligible activities under the PforR instrument.

- b) Desktop review.** A desktop review was undertaken of the country policies, legislation, regulations and institutional frameworks applicable to the ESHS aspects of the Program. Publicly available records and reports about the implementing agencies performance within the three sectors were also reviewed and considered. This included a review of policies and legislative frameworks at National level and policies, bylaws and plans at implementation level.
- c) System, Institutional and Capacity Assessments.** Various consultations (virtually and in-person) were held with stakeholders to obtain views of the country systems to manage ESHS Program risks in line with the six core principles and to identify any additional ESHS risks that need to be considered as part of the Program. The capacity of the implementing entities was assessed through review of publicly available information and records and consultations with stakeholders and key members of staff in each of the metros to obtain their views. Stakeholders that were engaged at National level and at Implementing Level. Records of meetings and lists of stakeholders consulted are presented in Annexures 5 and 6.
- d) ESSA validation and disclosure workshop – consultations.** The draft ESSA findings will be presented to the stakeholders through consultations that will be conducted by Appraisal, in line with the requirements of the Policy for PforR financing. The feedback received on the draft ESSA will be incorporated in the final ESSA, prior to approval and in-country disclosure on the NT website and external disclosure by the Bank.

Any gap-filling measures identified to enhance the in-country systems and capacities to manage environmental and social (E&S) outcomes will be incorporated in the Program PIAP to enhance the Program design.

3 RELEVANT LEGAL AND INSTITUTIONAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORKS

3.1 Legal Framework Applicable to the Program

This section includes a discussion of the most important policy and legislation that is relevant to the MTSP. Annexure 8 provides a more complete description of all legislation that has a bearing on the program.

3.1.1 General

South Africa has a robust environmental legislative framework, with environmental matters related to assessment of environmental effects, enhancement of environmental quality, protection of water and biodiversity resources being highly regulated (Bowman, 2020). Environmental rights are enshrined in the South African Constitution, which stipulates that environment is a functional area of all three spheres of government. Part A and B of Schedule 4 and 5 of the Constitution stipulates matters over which local government has authority, namely air pollution, potable water supply systems, and domestic wastewater and sewage disposal systems, while Section 24, the Bill of Rights, imposes further duties on municipalities in terms of environmental rights (Mathebula, 2014).

The National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) provides the legislative framework for cooperative environmental governance between the three spheres of government⁷ and addressing key environmental aspects relevant to the PforR. It contains environmental principles to which all state institutions must comply to ensure activities under their responsibilities are done in a manner that is not detrimental to the environment. The Act requires local government to integrate environmental considerations into metropolitan planning and development by preparing and implementing integrated environmental management plans as stipulated in various specific environmental legislation. It further delegates specific responsibilities to each of the spheres of government including annual reporting on implementation progress to the Director-General.

NEMA and its regulations provide a comprehensive framework for assessing environmental impacts associated with projects⁸. It ensures that assessments are done with the participation of interested and affected parties to facilitate an informed decision-making process. Environmental considerations must be addressed in the project design, and form part of the environmental authorization. The NEMA Environmental Assessment Regulations contain a list of activities which have the potential to impact on the environment and for which environmental authorization is required prior to commencement. Three lists are described, based on activity thresholds and geographic locations, the first of which contains activities for which a Basic Environmental Assessment (abbreviated EIA) is required, the second a list of activities which require a full Environmental Impact Assessment, inclusive of scoping, and a third containing activities in specific geographic and administrative areas that automatically require an Environmental Impact Assessment and environmental authorization. For energy generation, transmission and distribution, water and wastewater infrastructure and waste disposal activities, the lists set thresholds that determine whether the activity requires a Basic Assessment of a full ESIA prior to implementation. As part of the environmental assessment, some activities may require a water use license, especially those stipulated in the National Waste Act (Act 36 of 1998). NEMA allows for an integrated process by which an application for an environmental license (Water and / or Waste) can be done in conjunction with the EIA process, avoiding duplication and facilitating integrated environmental authorization for projects. Only registered independent Environmental Assessment Practitioners may undertake the environmental

⁷ National, provincial and local.

⁸ <https://www.legal500.com/guides/chapter/south-africa-environment/>.

assessment and license application process. Installation of renewable energy infrastructure within urban areas or at existing facilities, and water distribution networks located in road reserves, are excluded from having to prepare an environmental assessment, unless the activity triggers any other requirement in the listings. Activities within existing infrastructure footprints, which do not trigger any additional requirements as stipulated in the NEMA regulations; will need to comply with existing environmental requirements contained in either the environmental authorization, generic environmental management plans and sector-specific norms and standards. Where the expansion triggers any activities listed the necessary environmental assessments will need to be conducted.

The Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE) introduced a mandatory national web-based environmental screening tool in July 2019, which contains a series of environmental sensitivity maps and information to assist developers to screen proposed projects for environmental sensitivities. The screening tool identifies exclusions and specific requirements such as specialist studies which need to be undertaken as part of an EIA process⁹ The screening tool is a useful aid to identifying environmental sensitivities and no-go areas early in the project development process.

3.1.2 Sector-specific application of legislation

There are several pieces of environmental legislation which fall under the NEMA framework, referred to as Specific Environmental Management Acts (SEMAs). The SEMAs delegate certain responsibilities to metros and require them to prepare sector-specific environmental implementation or management plans as part of their Integrated Development Plans (IDPs). The IDP is a key strategic document, which according to the Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000), contributes to the integration of environmental planning into municipal planning. The IDP must ensure that metropolitan planning and annual budgeting take into account questions of environmental sustainability, including environmental management, environmental protection and climate change. In addition to the IDP, the Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) and Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000) are central to environmental planning in metropolitan structures as they set out the mechanisms and processes for ensuring that water, waste and electrical services are provided in a sustainable manner.

Like the NEMA, the SEMAs require authorizations, licenses or permits for particular activities before they can be undertaken. For activities that do not require authorizations, licenses or permits, the SEMAs instead require compliance with published norms and standards (Bowmans 2000). The legal environment related to environmental assessment and pollution control is complex and has necessitated the implementation of an integrated assessment process so as to avoid multiple submissions to different authorities for authorizations.

At municipal level, environmental authorizations are not required for sewer or water mains and the control of impact generally falls within the ambit of municipal policies, plans guidelines and bylaws. Most municipalities work within the frameworks of their IDPs and SDPs; Johannesburg, for example, has an Integrated Environmental Management Policy, in which principles of sustainable management are defined, and against which service infrastructure is evaluated and implemented.

Solid Waste Management: Prevention of pollution and environmental degradation while promoting economic and social development are enshrined in the National Environmental Management: Waste Act

⁹ <https://www.cliffedekkerhofmeyr.com/news/publications/2024/Practice/Corporate/corporate-commercial-alerts-22-May-the-environmental-and-other-legislative-transitions-to-a-low-carbon-economy-in-south-africa>).

(Act 59 of 2008) (NEM:WA) and appurtenant government notices¹⁰. The Act provides a legislative framework which requires compliance with the waste hierarchy, seeking to prioritize waste minimization, reuse, recycling, recovery and treatment of waste before disposal as a last resort. Waste-related activities for which licenses are required are in accordance with the NEM:WA (2013) regulations (refer to Table xx).

The Act establishes a cooperative governance mechanism for dealing with matters such as waste management planning¹¹ and sets out the responsibilities of metros for waste service delivery, including duties like waste collection, storage and disposal in line with national and provincial norms and standards. It further requires metros to prepare, submit for approval and thereafter implement Waste Management Plans with prescribed content, as part of their IDPs. Metros must appoint a waste management officer, who is responsible for coordinating matters pertaining to waste management. In addition to the norms and standards, NEM:WA makes provision for financial management systems, standard bylaws and tariffs to be developed. Financial provisions and systems for waste management are incorporated through the requirements stipulated in the Municipal Finance Management Act (Act 56 of 2003).

The norms and standards are guideline documents that are designed to protect the environment, promote sustainable development and ensure public and worker health and safety, through consistent and effective management of waste. The norms and standards provide guidance about the following:

- Classification of waste streams to ensure correct handling, storage treatment and disposal to prevent environmental impacts
- Waste minimization and recycling to divert waste sent to landfill
- Collection and transportation, including frequency of collection, container types and method of collection, with an aim to prevent spillage, contamination and impact on public health
- Treatment and disposal requirements for landfill sites, including site selection, specific design requirements, monitoring of environmental impacts on air quality, water and soil.

The waste hierarchy approach is further reinforced by the National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS) 2020. The NWMS bases waste management on three pillars, namely waste minimization, effective and sustainable waste services and compliance, enforcement and awareness, with the objective of achieving zero waste in landfills, well managed and financially stable waste services and a culture of zero tolerance to pollution and illegal dumping (NWMS 2020). According to the NWMS, there has been a significant improvement in waste collection and disposal services, including implementation of a successful program to license landfill sites. While the NWMS sets targets for diverting waste from landfill, it is not clear how these are to be achieved, nor the roles and responsibilities of the various entities in this regard. Local Government Environmental Indaba (LGEI) (2023) notes that the NWMS still needs to be fully implemented and that municipalities are yet to be trained on its requirements.

DFFE (2011) has created model Waste Management Bylaws for adoption by municipalities, which embody the principles and requirements of the NEM:WA, the NEM:WA regulations, the National Waste Management Strategy and the National Norms and Standards. Although this has provided a sound basis for managing waste, implementation at municipal level has proved difficult, and key issues such as increasing waste volumes, low recycling rates, failure to segregate waste at source, illegal dumping, financial resource constraints and issues surrounding governance and accountability of the metros trading

¹⁰ National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are likely to have a detrimental effect on the environment. Government Notice No. 921 of 29 November 2013, as amended.

¹¹ <http://wastepolicy.environment.gov.za/book/export/html/327>.

services have limited their ability to effectively implement the waste management strategy. Municipal bylaws are often outdated or are not adequately enforced, reinforcing the negative trends.

The Municipal Systems Act delegates the responsibility of sustainable delivery of services in cities to the Metros, which includes waste collection and disposal services. The application process for landfill sites is often lengthy with authorizations being delayed, leading to landfill sites being constructed and operated illegally, while waiting for permits, due to the necessity of dealing with waste being generated (CSIR 2020).

Water and Sanitation: The framework governing water and sanitation in South Africa is robust, promoting sustainable water use, protection and access to water resources. Water resources are considered national assets of which the national government is the custodian. The Constitution stipulates that access to clean and safe water is a human right and that water resources must be protected to ensure an environment that is not harmful to the health or well-being of the citizens of South Africa. Water resources are, however, facing increased pressure as a result of climate change, an increase in demand associated with population growth, over-utilization and poor management practices resulting in pollution. The Constitution allocates different responsibilities to the three spheres of government for safeguarding water resources. National government is tasked as the legislative and executive authority of freshwater resources and bulk supply, while municipalities administer, ensure budget provisions and planning of water and sanitation services within the boundaries of provision of potable water, domestic wastewater and sewage disposal systems¹².

The National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998) (NWA) provides the overarching framework for the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources. It recognizes that the protection of water resources is essential to ensure human health and functioning of ecosystems. The NWA regulations (GN R810 of 17 September 2010) place water resources in three classes which determine the level of protection and extent to which water can be utilized from sources. Once a resource has been classified, it is the Minister's responsibility to set specific objectives and goals to ensure the protection of the resource relevant to its class. There are eleven (11) water uses in the NWA which may have a potential detrimental impact on water resources. Activities related to wastewater treatment and management of waste are both listed. For these activities, an integrated environmental authorization process must be followed in which the environmental assessment addresses the requirements of NEMA, NEM:WA and NWA. Water resources are further classified and assigned certain protection requirements based on their classification. Resource quality objectives are set out under the NWA to ensure that basic human needs and protection of aquatic ecosystems are met.

The National Water Resources Strategy III (NWRS) was published in 2023 as a deliverable from the NWA, which requires the Minister to develop and publish a strategy at national scale, to be reviewed every five (5) years. The NWRS is a key instrument for implementing and operationalizing the NWA (Adom & Simatele 2021) and provides information about how water resources must be managed and relevant institutional responsibilities. Protection of valuable water resources, including protection of aquatic ecosystems are in the forefront of the NWRS objectives.

Allied to the National Water Resources Strategy is the Free Basic Water Policy (2001). The policy requires that all households must have access to a basic supply of water, even if they cannot afford to pay for it. This is implemented by municipalities and overseen by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS). The standard amount is 6,000 liters per household per month for indigent (low-income) households. The policy is largely entrenched in law through the Water Services Act 108 of 1997.

¹² <https://hsf.org.za/publications/hsf-briefs/water-governance-i-a-broad-outline-of-the-legislative-framework-in-south-africa>.

Duties of metros in respect of water and sanitation services are set out in the Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997). The Act mandates the Department of Water and Sanitation, as the custodian of water resources, to regulate water services through compulsory norms and standards. Norms and standards for domestic water and sanitation services have been published under the WSA. The standards set out the requirements for potable water to ensure that it does not pose a health risk; aspects of pollution prevention associated with sanitation services in line with the mitigation hierarchy set out in NEMA, and standards for the treatment and disposal of effluent. The WSA was recently amended to strengthen arrangements and accountability, allowing for the Minister to act against municipalities that consistently fail to meet their license conditions.

Requirements for wastewater discharge into the environment are established under the NWA. Specific requirements for the quality of effluent discharged from wastewater treatment facilities are set in the South African National Standards for Effluent Discharge (SANS 241) which these facilities must comply with. The standards are enforced through the legislation and permit conditions for effluent discharge from individual Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTWs), which are monitored by the DWS as the regulatory authority. The performance of metros in terms of water and sanitation services are audited against five key performance areas and results are publicly available through the DWS Blue, Green and No Drop reports.

As evident from the above, metros have access to a complex suite of legislation, instruments and tools to ensure that environmental aspects and governance are considered in water and sanitation planning (MMM EIMP 2016). At municipal level, a series of policies and plans have been prepared as a part of the metro's IDPs. The overall aim of these plans is to uphold the environmental rights of all citizens, as stipulated in the Constitution, and to promote sustainable use of water in municipal planning. The strategies and plans include among others, environmental sustainability strategies, air quality management plans (as related to water and sanitation services), climate change adaptation and mitigation strategies and biodiversity management plan. Section 11 of the NEM:WA requires the development of Integrated Waste Management Plans (IWMPs), and all of the metros have complied with this requirement. Environmental protection is therefore well integrated into the metro systems stated approach, even if implementation is lacking in many cases.

Over and above the Blue, Green and No Drop monitoring reports, DWS is engaged in several initiatives aimed at addressing the problem of pollution of rivers by municipal wastewater treatment works. Firstly, the Minister has agreed on action plans to address infrastructural deficiencies in many of the worst performing municipalities, and DWS is assisting municipalities with funding from the Water Services Infrastructure Grant (WSIG) and Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG) to address these deficiencies. Secondly, DWS is taking regulatory action in terms of the National Water Act, including issuing non-compliance notices, directives, taking civil action, and as a last resort, laying criminal charges against polluting municipalities. Thirdly, DWS is drafting amendments to the Water Services Act to strengthen its role as the regulator of municipal water and sanitation services and to enable the Minister to intervene effectively when there is non-compliance with directives to stop pollution.

3.1.3 *Legal Requirements for Public Consultation*

The metros have a constitutional obligation regarding stakeholder engagement/public participation/consultation/public involvement, including¹³:Reference to stakeholder engagement is also made in the following legislation:

- Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000 (Systems Act)
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998 (Structures Act)
- Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 56 of 2003 (MFMA)
- Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 6 of 2004 (Property Rates Act)
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2 of 2000 (PAIA)
- Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 3 of 2000 (PAJA)
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013

The Municipal Systems Act envisions that councilors, ward committees and advisory committees should be the main vehicles for community participation. Most ward committees are, however, dysfunctional, or not composed in a manner that represent the diversity of communities or stakeholders. Common problems with the composition of ward committees are well documented and SALGA has published guidelines on their roles¹⁴. Most of the metros have requirements for public participation in various policies and other documents, but few have *specific* public participation policies and none have public participation bylaws. Only Ekurhuleni has an approved, recent, public participation policy¹⁵. Mangaung¹⁶ has a draft public participation policy and Nelson Mandela Bay¹⁷ has a dated, approved, policy. In Cape Town, preparing a public participation policy has been a recent issue raised by councillors¹⁸.

3.1.4 *Specific Licensing Requirements related to NEMA and Associated Acts and Regulations*

a). Wastewater (Sewage) Treatment and Discharge Authorizations Requirements¹⁹

At National level, wastewater treatment and discharge from WWTWs is controlled through the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) and its appurtenant regulations, and the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998).

Under the NEMA:

- The construction and operation of a wastewater treatment facility with a daily throughput capacity of less than 2 000 m³ does not require environmental authorisation.
- A wastewater treatment facility with a daily throughput capacity exceeding 2 000 m³ per day requires Environmental Authorisation under NEMA either through a Basic Assessment (BA) process or through a full Scoping and Environmental Impact Reporting (ESIA) process (Table 3-1).

¹³ SALGA, 2022. Stakeholder Engagement Too.

¹⁵ City of Ekurhuleni (2023) Public Participation Policy.

¹⁶ Mangaung (2014). Draft Public Participation Policy.

¹⁷ Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality (2014). Public Participation Policy Version 3.

¹⁸ On 30 October, 2024, a City Councilor called in a press statement for the City to 'urgently draft, adopt and enforce a Public Participation Policy in line with both constitutional obligations and Parliament's public participation model.

¹⁹ Adapted from SRK Consulting (2022). Wastewater (Sewage) Treatment and Disharge Authorisation Requirements. February.

- An expansion of the capacity of an existing WWTWs by 15 000 m³, coupled with an increased footprint of 1 000 m² or more, also requires environmental authorization under NEMA through the BA process.
- The time frames for completion of the full ESIA process are regulated by the NEMA EA Regulations. In practice, taking administrative steps into account, it takes around a year from the application to the authorization.

Under the NWA:

- Wastewater treatment does not require licensing *per se*, and the discharge of treated effluent into the municipal sewer is not defined as a water use and therefore does not require authorization under the Act. However, in some circumstances, metros can no longer accept treated effluent into the municipal sewerage system and treated effluent must be managed through alternative methods or processes. In these circumstances a Water Use Authorization (WUA) is required to dispose of treated effluent into a surface or groundwater resource (NWA Section 21[f]) or to irrigate with treated effluent (NWA Section 21[e]).
- Should discharge of treated effluent (e.g. via non-sewer disposal or irrigation) require either a GA or WUL in terms of the NWA, then Environmental Authorization is required under NEMA through a full ESIA process, regardless of the volume of treated effluent to be discharged.

Table 3-1. Thresholds for Environmental or Water Use Licensing of WWTPs

Controlled Activity	BA	ESIA	WUA (GA or WUL)
Sewage Treatment			
Less than 2 000 m ³ /day	-	-	-
Between 2 000 m ³ /day and 15 000 m ³ / day			
More than 15 000 m ³ /day			
Expansion of more than 15 000 m ³ /day			
Treated Effluent Discharge (e.g.: disposal into a water resource or by irrigation)			
Any volume			
Authorized through NWA GA			
Authorised through NWA license			

b). Solid Waste Authorization Requirements

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act (NEM:WA; Act No 59 of 2008)²⁰ is framework legislation developed under NEMA, as amended. In terms of NEM:WA, listed waste management activities that have, or are likely to have a detrimental effect on the environment must be licensed according to section 20 and Chapter 5 of the Act. The Act has evolved over the years - it was originally promulgated to ensure commitment to environmental sustainability, as agreed upon as a signatory to the Millennium Development Goals of 2015.

In terms of section 20 of NEM:WA a producer of all waste that is regulated may not commence, undertake or conduct waste management activity without a Waste Management License (WML) or in compliance with the Norms and Standards. A disposal site permit, issued by the Minister or MEC informs users in

²⁰ Published under Government Notice No. 921 of 29 November 2013.

terms of waste disposal standards, waste classification and monitoring that would be required for disposal of WTR. The aim is to regulate the management of waste to protect the health of people and the environment (Golder, 2015). Under NEM:WA (GNR 921 Listed Activities)²¹, WTR management activities that require a Waste Management License include: (i) storage, such as settling ponds or lagoons for hazardous waste; (ii) treatment, changing the physical or chemical composition of the WTR (iii) reuse, recycling and recovery and (iv) disposal to land. Licensing must be supported by an Environmental Assessment as follows:

Category A activities for which a Basic Assessment is required:

- Storage of waste (including general waste in excess of 100 m³, or hazardous waste in excess of 35 m³), the storage of general waste in lagoons, the storage of waste tyres in an area exceeding 500 m²)
- Reuse recycling and recovery of general waste
- Recovery or co-processing of waste at a facility with capacity in excess of 3 tons of general waste or 500 kg of hazardous waste; biological, physical or physico-chemical treatment of waste at a facility with a capacity in excess of 10 ton/day; processing of waste at biogas installations with a capacity exceeding 5 tons/day, treatment of effluent/wastewater with annual throughput of more than 2000m³ but less than 15000m³, remediation of contaminated land, extraction / recovery /flaring of landfill gas
- Disposal of waste including inert waste of more than 25 tons and capacity of more than 25 000 tons, disposal of general waste covering an area of more than 50 m² but less than 250 m² and with a total capacity of less than 25 000 tons; domestic waste generated on premises in areas not serviced by the municipal service where the waste disposed does not exceed 500 kg per month
- Storage and treatment of animal waste at facilities with capacity of more than 1 ton per day
- Construction, expansion or decommissioning of facilities and associated structures and infrastructure, including the construction of facilities listed in the Act; the expansion of facilities or changes to existing facilities for any process or activity, which requires an amendment of an existing permit or license or a new permit or license in terms of legislation governing the release of pollution, effluent or waste; and the decommissioning of activities listed in this Act.

Category B activities for which a full Environmental Impact Assessment is require:

- Storage of hazardous waste in lagoons
- Reuse, recycling and recovery of waste, including the reuse and recycling of hazardous waste; the recovery of hazardous waste including the refining, utilization or coprocessing of waste at a facility with a capacity to process more than 500 kg of hazardous waste per day
- Treatment of waste including the biological, physical of physico-chemical treatment of hazardous waste at a facility with capacity of 500 kg or more, any form of treatment of hazardous waste; treatment of hazardous waste in lagoons; treatment of effluent, wastewater or sewage with an annual throughput of 15 000 m³ or more; incineration of waste

²¹ As amended by GN 332, GN 663, GN 1094 and GN 1757.

- Disposal of waste on land, including any quantity of hazardous waste and general waste to an area in excess of 200 m²
- Construction of facilities and associated structures and infrastructure listed in the Act.

c). Raw Water Treatment

Licensing for a raw water treatment plant is obtained by applying for a "Water Use Licence" from the Department of Water and Sanitation, which requires a detailed environmental impact assessment (EIA), to be undertaken and submitted in accordance with the requirements of the NEMA EIA Regulations (2014), demonstrating the plant's potential environmental effects and mitigation strategies. Expansions of water treatment plants similarly require environmental assessment and authorisation as a result of changes to the authorised daily volume of treated water.

d). Water Treatment Residues (WTR)

Water treatment residues (WTR) refer to the by-products formed during the production of potable water. These by-products include organic and inorganic compounds in liquid, solid and gaseous forms. WTR is generally considered to be 'general' waste but in some cases may be classified as 'hazardous' depending on added chemicals during the treatment process. Traditionally in South Africa, WTR was disposed to a water source and later d to landfill (Hughes, et al., 2000). Due to an increase in the number and size of water treatment works coupled with the deterioration of source water quality, the continuous production of WTR has increased to a point where current management strategy have become unsustainable (Mokonyama et al, 2017²²). The main challenges are the environmental impact of WTR, the economic burden on the stakeholders to treat and dispose of this waste and the engineering requirements to develop sustainable WTR management strategies.

3.2 Relevant Institutional Framework for the MTSP

The Program will be implemented under the oversight of a National MTSP Steering Committee that includes the key stakeholders involved in the three trading services. A Project Management Unit (PMU) will be established at National Treasury (NT) staffed with civil servants assigned to it (Figure 3-1). The PMU will be responsible for monitoring all Results Areas, preparing progress reports both to the World Bank and to the Steering Committee for review and guidance. The steering committee will consist of National Treasury (chair), Department of Water & Sanitation (DWS), Dept. of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE), Dept. of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA), South African Local Government Association (SALGA), Dept. of Mineral Resources (DMR) and Cities. The functions of Government Departments represented in the Steering Committee are summarized in Table 3-2.



Figure 3-1. Proposed Institutional and Implementation Arrangements for the Program

Table 3-2. Roles of Government Departments that participate in the MTSP Steering Committee

Department	Function in Government
National Treasury (NT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Primary objective is to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of national, provincial and local government, and to lead any required policies and reforms Provides Grants to the metros to support municipal services over and above money generated by the metros themselves in the form of service tariffs Is the primary driver of the Cities Support Program, which is located within the inter-governmental relations (IGR) division. The CSP supports metros directly and works across divisions in NT, with other national departments and broader stakeholders, to enhance the enabling policy environment fiscal frameworks to make it easier for cities to work more efficiently.
Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Custodian of South Africa’s water resources Responsible for water resource management including water use regulation, wastewater management and water resource development Oversees the development, operation and maintenance of water infrastructure Oversees the establishment of water boards, which sanitize raw water and supply clean water to municipalities. Monitors the performance of major water users in relation to license conditions Registers all water users in the country
Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Responsible for managing, protecting, and conserving South Africa's natural resources and environment Monitors and reports on the state of biodiversity in the country

Department	Function in Government
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Develops strategies and policies aimed at regulating and promoting the sustainable use of inland and coastal natural resources ▪ Responsible for reducing carbon emissions, atmospheric pollutants and the effect of climate change ▪ Develops, maintains and administers legislation related to Environmental Assessment and licensing ▪ Monitors compliance of all licensed organizations (including municipalities) against license conditions ▪
<p>Dept. of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Responsible for overseeing and supporting local municipalities, promoting cooperative governance between different government spheres, and upholding the role of traditional leadership within the country; essentially, ensuring effective collaboration and service delivery at the local level while respecting traditional institutions. ▪ Provides support to municipalities to improve their operational capabilities and service delivery. ▪ Facilitates coordination and collaboration between national, provincial, and local government levels. ▪ Assesses the effectiveness of municipalities in delivering services to communities. ▪ Creates and implements policies related to local government and traditional leadership
<p>South African Local Government Association (SALGA)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Recognized voice of local government in terms of the Organized Local Government Act 52 of 1997 in accordance with section 163 of the Constitution. ▪ An employer body for local government ▪ Is an autonomous association of municipalities performing an important role within the IGR system. Represents local government in national and provincial legislative processes. As such, it is the body that national and provincial government consult with when contemplating legislation that impacts on local government. ▪ Represents local government in the National Council of Provinces (NCOP), which is tasked with ensuring that provincial and local government interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government ▪ Has a key role to play in building the capacity of municipalities as well as advocating the interests of municipalities in national and provincial processes that impact on local government. ▪ A key strategic goal is <i>Effective, Responsive and Accountable Local Governance for communities</i>. ▪ As required by Section of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000, is responsible (as organized local government is to:- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - develop common approaches for local government as a distinct sphere of government - enhance co-operation, mutual assistance and sharing of resources among municipalities - find solutions for problems relating to local government generally; - facilitate compliance with the principles of co-operative government and intergovernmental relations.

Department	Function in Government
Dept. of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coordinates and oversees the planning, monitoring and evaluation of government programs to ensure effective service delivery and improve outcomes across different sectors. • Responsible for the Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2019-2024, which is grounded in the aims and objectives of the National Development Plan and includes 5-year strategic priorities of Government • The theme of the 2019-2024 MTSF is ‘Integration for Spatial Transformation & Spatial Justice’ which forms a sound basis for the National Treasury Cities Support Program
Metros	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The council of a municipality must for each financial year approve an annual budget for the municipality before the start of that financial year ▪ Responsible for setting ‘cost reflective tariffs for services (Municipal Systems Act, No. 32 of 2000, Section 74(2) ▪ Tariff increases to be maintained at levels that demonstrate an appropriate balance between the affordability to poorer households and other consumers. ▪ Tariff affordability entails implementing appropriate strategies to limit losses and wastage –required to be maintained at acceptable or normative levels. ▪ Tariff guidance provided by National Treasury and others (e.g.: use of the NT MSCOA Reform Initiative)

3.3 Gaps in the legal, policy and institutional framework relevant to the MTSP

There are no major gaps in the regulatory framework that will negatively influence the E&S outcomes of the MTSP. South Africa has a sophisticated and comprehensive regulatory regime governing environmental and social sustainability at all levels - national, provincial and local. Environmental licensing of listed activities is entrenched and modifications to or closures of facilities that are licensed typically require license amendments through the IA process.

The environmental and social risks of the program are mainly related to the management of civil works associated with the upgrading of the metro trading services. These risks can be managed through procedures that are commonly applied and well understood, supported by the strong legal framework in relation to pollution control, occupational health and safety, community health and safety and biodiversity in relation to construction projects. In this instance of potential land acquisition and displacement the legal framework includes the Constitution that provides protection for private property rights as well as instruments including the Prevention of Illegal Eviction from and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act 1 (PIE) and The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA) as well as the newly promulgated Expropriation Act of 2024. While this framework is in place a potential issue, as set out in Section 5.4 and 5.7 relates to the full coverage provided by the national legislative framework as it relates to management of displacement impacts where lands, and/or assets and rights, need to be acquired to enable civil works to proceed. This is particularly related to specific measures required to manage impacts on vulnerable groupings and to ensure that livelihoods that are disrupted are replaced.

The risks of not achieving the objectives of the MTSP (the risks of failure to achieve the expected E&S benefits of the program), are also not likely to be affected by gaps in the regulatory framework except

at the level of some bylaws. The MTSP itself is designed to resolve the most critical institutional problems affecting E&S performance - that of sound governance, financial stability, and appropriate human capacity in the Metro Trading Services. The turnaround strategy to ring fence Metro Trading Services, providing greater independence from other branches of the metros, clearer accountability for performance (including environmental and social performance), restructuring of responsibilities and increased capacity where absent, is the basis of the design of the MTSP. The environmental improvements in performance, such as compliance with license conditions for the release of treated sewage effluent into natural water courses, and compliance with pollution control conditions at sanitary landfills, will result from this restructuring. License conditions are generally clear and unambiguous, so MTSP will have the ability to monitor performance improvements using measurable KPIs, based on legal conditions of approval (Annexure 13 refers). The Solid Waste Management (SWM) assessment has also identified updating of bylaws to better address the requirements in national regulations and policy for the implementation of the waste hierarchy (reduction in waste volumes, circular economy) and metros are likely to be able to access funding through the Program for this.

The regulatory framework also provides a robust legal basis for managing operational risks of new facilities, should it be decided that new major infrastructure, proposed in specific cases, meets the threshold for PforR eligibility.

The National Treasury, and the ministries on the coordinating committee of the MTSP, have the capacity to develop and manage the program, effectively monitor the outcomes according to the defined KPIs, liaise with the beneficiaries, appoint and manage the consultants required to audit annual performance, and disburse the Grant accordingly. There may, however, be a need to provide for some strengthening in the E&S capacity of the NT team as the program ramps up, both to support the metros, to ensure consistency of approach across metros, and to assist in the coordination and monitoring of performance. Provision is made for this in the PforR grant.

There are three areas in which metro bylaws, policies and strategies could be improved in support of the E&S goals and objectives of the MTSP:

- Development of a cohesive approach/strategy based on the current set of guidelines for integration of waste pickers into the waste management process.
- Development of a fully functioning grievance management process that is accessible results in an accountable and measurable process for generating timely responses and is monitored in a manner that allows for adaptive management of service delivery outcomes. Existing tools prepared by SALGA for public participation may be used to structure a broader public participation strategy linked to the GRM.
- Strengthening/updating of bylaws related to waste reduction and recycling. Although most of the metros have bylaws in place, there is a major need for diversion (which then will allow for less material to be managed and less to be landfilled).

Other local policy and strategy improvements to support the MTSP objectives of improved metro trading services are included in the recommendations of the technical sector-based studies. These may be supported by the technical assistance component of the program. An example raised by the waste sector team is metro policy support for electricity feed-in tariffs that would provide the financial basis for the development of landfill gas to electricity conversion with an acceptable return on investment.

3.4 Gaps in Metro E&S Capacity

The capacity constraints affecting Metro performance are illustrated by an analysis prepared by the SWM team in a review of technical, environmental and institutional indicators, divided into 37 categories (JG Afrika, 2025). Metros were scored under each category as facing ‘significant concerns’, ‘some concerns’ or ‘little or no concern’²³. The overall scores provide a clear justification for the Program’s focus on financial and institutional reform as the basis for operational improvement. Many of the technical problems faced by the metro operations stem from financial, governance and institutional constraints. At the level of personnel resourcing, all metros were found to have some capacity limitations while four metros (Buffalo City, Ekurhuleni, Mangaung and Nelson Mandela Bay) had critical vacancies affecting departmental performance. In one case, the legal requirements for the appointment of both a Waste Management Officer (WMO) and WMCO (Waste Management Control Officer) had not been met and in three other cases (Buffalo City, Ekurhuleni and Nelson Mandela Bay) only one of the officers had been appointed. Figure 3-2 shows the average scores. The MTSP is specifically designed to address capacity issues within the metros (PIAP indicators M1, M2, M3, M4, M8, A5 – refer to Annexure 13.)

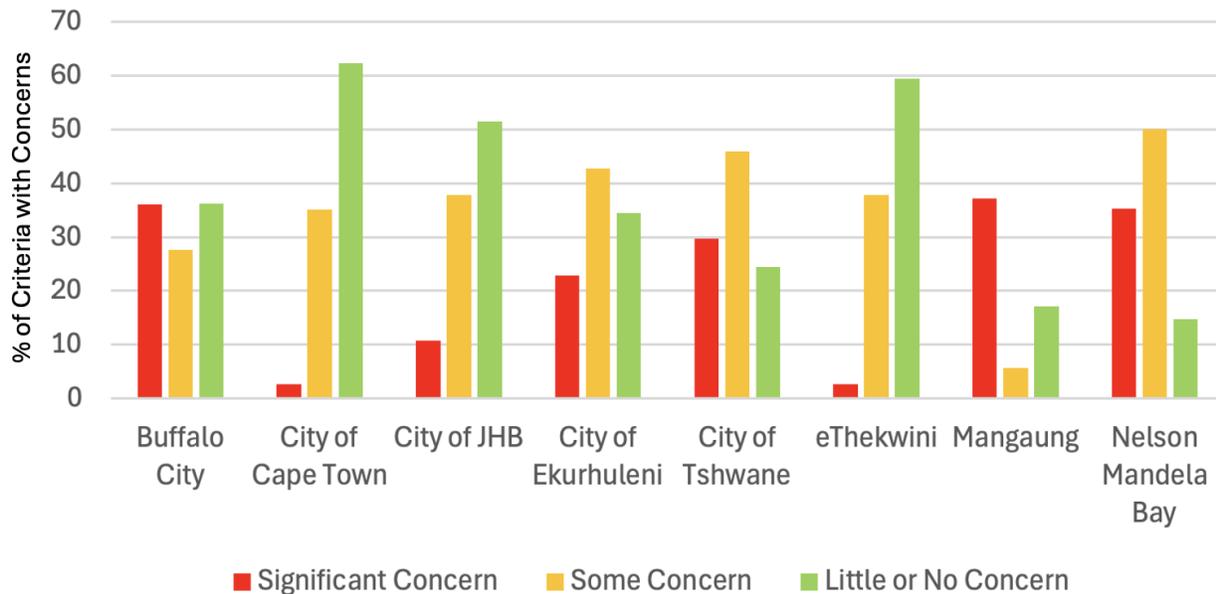


Figure 3-2. Performance evaluation in the Metro solid waste sector based on thirty-seven criteria

²³ Refer to Annexure 14 for a detailed summary.

4 ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL, HEALTH AND SAFETY EFFECTS OF THE PROGRAM

4.1 Program Environmental, Health and Safety Benefits

The potential EHS benefits of the MTSP are described in this sub-section in relation to the current functioning of the metro trading services.

4.1.1 Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)

(i) More efficient use of water as a scarce natural resource

The increasing pressure of water demands on water resources has been recognized by the South African Government, and planning of water resource development while maintaining the integrity of the resource has been ongoing for many years. The goals of the latest National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS-3) are to ensure water is protected, used, developed, managed, and controlled sustainably and equitably and that water and sanitation must support development and eliminate poverty and inequality. The NWRS-3 applies a holistic and integrated methodology, focusing on increasing water supply, reducing water demand, managing effective water and sanitation, regulating the water and sanitation sector, redistributing water for transformation, promoting international cooperation, managing water and sanitation under a changing climate, improving raw water quality, and protecting aquatic ecosystems and maintaining and restoring ecological infrastructure.

Historically the ecological reserve was not sufficiently considered, and experience of its application shows that in many cases it has effectively taken up much of what was thought to be “spare” capacity. In developing priorities for the ecological reserve, the South African Water Research Commission (2008) pointed out that its implementation is not primarily about conservation of fauna and flora (although many would argue that this is also critically important) but is based on the concept of the circular economy – without the maintenance of an ecological reserve, the ecosystems supporting clean fresh water will collapse. The WRC (2008) concisely summarizes what has become a guiding principle under the NWRS: *“Water is crucial to environmental sustainability. It sustains the natural functioning of the ecosystem resource base from which goods and services are provided for society’s use. The principal reason for protecting this resource is to maintain the ecosystem integrity at a level that ensures continued delivery of the desired ecosystem goods and services, and which ultimately leads to human benefit socially, economically and environmentally.”*

As a water-stressed country, and in the context of the threat of climate change, the conservation of water resources has become a critical priority. At National level, the National Water and Sanitation Masterplan (NWSM) highlights the water crisis that faces South Africa and warns that this is impacting on economic growth and on the well-being of all South Africans (DWS, 2018). The NWSM made urgent recommendations to reduce the risk of water shortages. Between 2018 and 2023, national water consumption continued to increase and in 2024 the DWS estimated that South Africa will face a 17% water deficit by 2030 if current trends persist. The DWS emphasizes that linear approaches to the development of water resources have reached their limit, with 98% of the country’s available water resources already developed, and that circular approaches must be implemented which recognize the linkage between water development and other sectors (DWS, 2024).

The importance of urban water conservation / water demand management (WC/WDM) as a component of the urgent action necessary to manage the water crisis is recognised in the NWSM and has been integrated into provincial and municipal policies, strategies, and legal instruments. Water Service

Authorities (WSAs) are required, through the National legislation, to measure performance related to water use targets, water losses, non-revenue water and water use efficiency. The DWS is the regulatory authority responsible for measuring the performance of WSAs pertaining to WC/WDM. DWS has developed an analytical framework for reporting by all WSAs, known as the ‘No Drop Report’, which facilitates the assessment of their core competencies and provides the basis for the analysis of trends (**Error! Reference source not found.**). Annual audits are undertaken, from which the DWS generates feedback to assist the WSAs to define risk profiles and inform plans for improvement.

Table 4-1. How DWS calculates Water Use Efficiency Performance in the WSAs.

No Drop audits use a range of KPIs to inform 5 criteria, which determine the effectiveness of WC/WDM. These are:

Criteria 1: WC/WDM status quo, plans and strategies, budgets, and implementation of projects (Water Resource Diagram, Water Balance, Council approved WC/WDM strategies and budgets)

Criteria 2: Asset management as it relates to meter replacement. Monitoring, analysis, and action of high loss District Metered Areas (DMAs) in metropolitan municipalities.

Criteria 3: Technical skills of WC/WDM team

Criteria 5: Compliance and performance. Based on the water loss (NRW) and efficiency key performance indicators (KPIs) and year-on-year improvement. Water losses are divided into commercial water losses (NRW - water used but not paid for) and physical water losses (ILI - water lost to leaks). The NRW efficiency scores are calculated as shown below. In the metros, these three scores are weighted to make up 35% of the total score.

No Drop Key Performance Areas

ILI (physical water loss) performance categories

	>8	Extremely high physical water loss
	6-8	Poor performance in physical water loss
	4-6	Average physical water loss performance
	2-4	Good physical water loss performance but some improvement may be possible subject to economic benefit
	<2	Excellent physical water loss management

NRW (%) performance categories

	>40%	Extremely poor non-revenue water management
	30-40%	Poor non-revenue water performance
	20-30%	Average performance with potential for marked improvement
	10-20%	Good performance but some improvement may be possible subject to economic benefit
	<10%	Excellent non-revenue water management

Water Use Efficiency (l/c/d) performance categories

	>300	Extremely high per capita water use
	250-300	Poor per capita water use
	200-250	Average per capita water use with potential for marked improvement
	150-200	Good per capita water use but some improvement may be possible subject to economic benefit
	<150	Excellent per capita water use management

The water use efficiency failures in the water sector have been mainly due to weak implementation. WC/WDM performance has been poor at national and metropolitan levels, with the City of Cape Town being the only MTSP metro to score an overall ‘Excellent’ on the DWS No Drop scorecard, based on

2020/2021 data (DWS, 2023b). Table 4-2 provides the most recent NRW and physical loss estimates for the MTSP metros. Only the City of Cape Town achieves an ‘average with potential for marked improvement’ performance score for NRW. All other MTSP metros score ‘poor’ or ‘extremely poor’. Physical leaks due to poor maintenance of infrastructure escalated sharply during COVID, although performance is expected to improve in the next audit, reflecting the reestablishment of maintenance routines. Three MTSP metros achieved ‘average’ physical water loss scores for 2021-2022, three were ‘poor’ and two ‘extremely poor’ (Table 4-2). The significance of these scores is underlined by the overall amount of water consumed by the eight metros, which DMS (2023a) estimates to be 53% of the total water use in South Africa.

Table 4-2. No Drop Key Performance Areas for the eight Category A metropolitan municipalities (2021-2022 data)

Metro	SIV	Revenue Water	NRW	%NRW	I/c/d	ILI
Buffalo City	65 166 097	40 626 442	24 539 655	37,7%	214	4,7
City of Cape Town	312 826 977	220 753 930	92 073 047	29,4%	161	4,0
City of Ekurhuleni	368 351 408	254 395 814	113 955 594	30,9%	257	6,4
City of Johannesburg	634 461 668	328 709 771	305 751 897	48,2%	280	9,3
City of Tshwane	361 666 588	243 780 416	117 886 172	32,6%	239	7,2
eThekweni	414 138 078	43 279 273	241 374 733	58,3%	298	26,4
Mangaung	80 813 586	52 665 080	37 534 313	46,4%	261	5,4
Nelson Mandela Bay	101 340 716	52 665 080	48 675 636	48,0%	199	7,4
Category A	2 338 765 117	1 356 974 071	981 791 047	41,4%	239	7,6

SIV: Specific import value (m³/a) NRW: Non-revenue water (m³/a) %NRW: %NRW in relation to SIV,

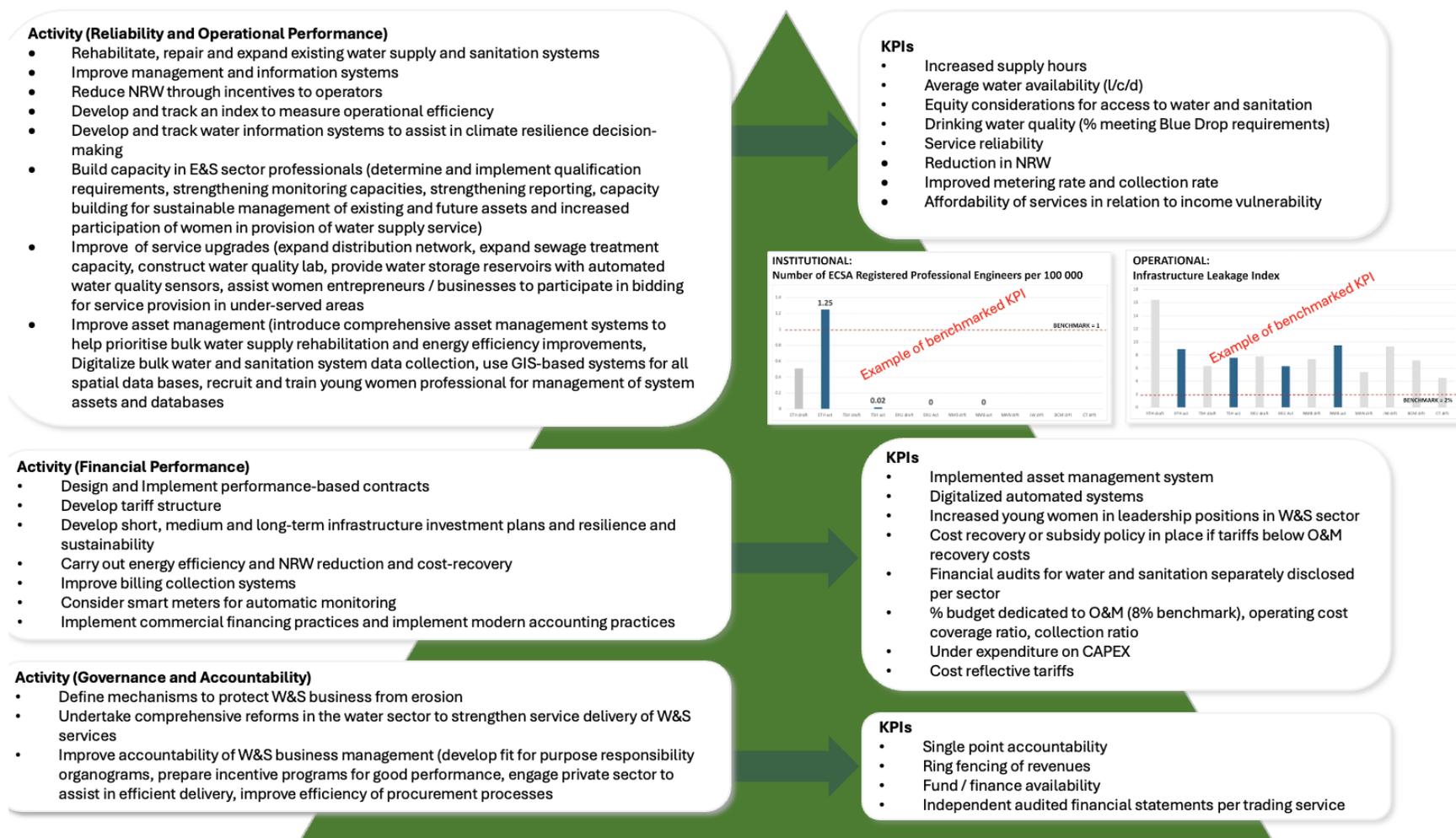
I/c/d: litres/customer/day. ILI: Physical water loss rating (see rating scale legend in Table 4-1)

Source: DWS (2023a).

The proposed MTSP for the water supply and sanitation sector is intended to improve metro performance at all levels of water efficiency management, including governance and accountability, rigorous ongoing monitoring and evaluation, improved operation of infrastructure including infrastructure repair response times, and financial performance, particularly focusing on ring fencing of water supply and sanitation costs and expenses, the determination of realistic tariffs, and reduction of NRW, which depending on the municipality presently varies between 29,4% and 58,3% of raw water used. The program does not address supply-side issues, which are primarily under the control of the National Government but instead seeks to achieve efficient use of existing water resources available to the metros through improving the efficiency of distribution and WC/WDM. The MTSP directly addresses the underlying reasons for the metros’ generally poor performance in relation to WC/WDM (as shown in Table 4-2 above), while acknowledging that different strategies will be followed for each metro, depending on individual circumstances, capacity and performance.

Details of the component design are still under development but are expected to ensure that all interventions are specifically relevant to the metro concerned. A selection of more specific activities and proposed performance indicators are presented in Figure 4-1 (the full list for the WSS sector presently available is included in Annexure 1).

Figure 4-1. Summary of Activities and KPIs for the Water and Sanitation Sector²⁴



The environmental benefits of the more efficient use of MTSP metro water are expected to be highly significant. They include:

- Much improved alignment of metro performance with South African government WC/WDM policy and legislation, and with the stated intent of metro IDPs²⁵.
- Reduced demand for potable water, per capita, minimising life cycle ecological impacts of bulk water infrastructure development. In addition to the unavoidable impacts of river regulation associated with large dams, some are likely to be in areas of high conservation value.
- Reduced demand for sanitation services, per capita, minimising life cycle ecological impacts of wastewater discharges (refer below).
- Improved climate resilience. Measurable effects of climate change on the water cycle are being felt around the world, altering the availability, quantity, and quality of water. Climate change has altered hydrological cycles and increased the timing, frequency, and intensity of water-related extremes, such as floods and droughts, making water availability more unpredictable and unreliable (World Bank, 2021).
- Overall, a significant improvement in the circular economy, supported by strengthening of metro financial and institutional performance, less financial cross subsidization from other sectors, and lower environmental and social costs of water per unit of consumption. The project team refers to the present situation as a ‘reinforcing negative loop’. The project is designed to reverse this loop, resulting in better service provision to consumers, improved quality of life and at the same time reduced per capita pressure on environmental resources.

(ii) Reduced incidence and severity of wastewater pollution

The environmental impact of treated and untreated sewage discharged into the rivers within the area of influence of the MTSP metros is a concern reflected in Metro reports, Central Government reviews and audits, news media and NGO articles and many other stakeholder comments (refer to the bibliography). The main causes are non-compliant discharges from municipal wastewater treatment works (WWTWs), and sewage spills from burst or leaking pipes, largely because of poorly maintained and aging infrastructure. The impact is exacerbated by governance issues, financial constraints, and undercapacity, as applies to other aspects of water management.

Poorly treated sewage effluent and raw sewage released into watercourses typically results in a condition known as ‘eutrophication’. This has been widely studied internationally. In its simplest definition, ‘anthropogenic’ eutrophication means the enrichment of natural waters by human activities with nutrients that are used by aquatic plants. The two most problematic nutrients resulting from inadequately treated sewage discharges are nitrogen and phosphorous. Both are essential for plant growth, but at elevated levels, and particularly in cases where discharges are into warm, shallow, waters in lakes, impoundments, estuaries and the marine environment, there may be an explosion of aquatic weed, and hypoxic (low-oxygen) conditions.

²⁵ The total water saving per capita assuming various levels of water saving in each Metro has not been calculated by the MTSP team yet but is expected to be highly significant in reducing demand for early development of further raw water supplies, even if Metros only achieve a reduction in physical water losses to ‘average’ performance, as indicated in Table 4-1.

While there are many other sources of eutrophication, including the leaching of nutrients from fertilizers applied to cultivated lands; the discharge of treated sewage effluent from metropolitan WWTWs, coupled with the more damaging effect of raw sewage releases, is a highly significant contributor. The ecological impacts of this are typically severe, resulting in reduced biodiversity in the downstream aquatic / marine environment²⁶. Cumulative life cycle impacts create a web of further social and ecological costs. Zhang (2022) describes six symptoms of eutrophication:

- Release of limiting nutrients such as phosphorus and nitrogen into the water body.
- Degradation of water quality such as the appearance of red tides or excessive foam over the surface of the water.
- Increase in the productivity of the ecosystem along with biomass of phytoplankton, macrophytes, and harmful algal blooms.
- Reduction in the water clarity and sediments are visible from a depth of few feet. Due to the greenish color of water, turbidity, and high levels of planktonic algae, the clarity of the water is drastically reduced.
- Oxygen depletion due to increased production of organic matter and formation and release of hydrogen sulfide.
- Shifts in the composition of species, for example, increased concentration of nitrogen causes new and more competitive forms to invade and compete with original ones.

Added to the problems of eutrophication is widespread municipal failure to control harmful pathogens in sanitary wastewater. Microbiological contamination is ubiquitous in many South African rivers, and while this is recognized as a public health risk, research has also shown that poorly treated sewage elevates concentrations of pathogens, endocrine disruptors, heavy metals, and pharmaceuticals in natural ecosystems and that these contamination hotspots may overlap extensively in occurrence with coral reefs, salt marshes, and fish-rich river systems (Wear et al, 2021).

The constitutional responsibility for providing water and sanitation services in South Africa rests with local government. The Department of Water and Sanitation has the power to regulate how these services are provided, to monitor and support municipalities providing water services and a duty to intervene where national norms and standards are not met. The DWS has created a system of reporting and analysis known as 'Green Drop' which provides important benchmark data about municipal wastewater management. Broadly speaking, Green Drop seeks to identify and develop the core competencies that, if strengthened, would gradually and sustainably improve the standard of wastewater management in South Africa (DWS, 2023). The intention is to align the minimum requirements and best practice to raise the bar for wastewater management.

Participation in the 'Green Drop' reporting process is compulsory, and DWS (2023) confirms that most metro participants have willingly embraced the requirements, although with varying degrees of competence. The Green Drop process, together with associated DWS initiatives (No Drop and Blue Drop) provide a robust legal basis for improving the effectiveness of water and sanitation management, provided that the requirements are fully and effectively implemented.

²⁶ See, for example, Ashworth 2021, Zhang (ed.) 2022.

Table 4-3. How DWS calculates Sanitation Performance in the WSAs using Green Drop

For the purposes of the present analysis, the Cumulative Risk Rating (CRR%) used in *Green Drop* is presented, which is the cumulative risk, based on four indicators associated with individual WWTWs in the metros.

Risk Indicator 1: Design capacity of the WWTW (the larger the works, the greater the risk).

Risk Indicator 2: Operational flow as a % of capacity (high risk if the works is operating significantly in excess of design capacity).

Risk Indicator 3: Number of non-compliant effluent quality determinants at point of discharge into the environment (determinants include pH, EC, SS, COD, NH₃-N, NO₃-N, O-PO₄, *E.coli*/Faecal coliforms, depending on specific authorizations). The number of water quality determinants in license conditions is determined in part by the catchment conditions and whether the river or tributary is listed. License conditions vary individually and while there is broad similarity in the water quality metrics required for monitoring, there may be fewer or more depending on the circumstances. Apart from the general conditions other license conditions may also be specific to the WWTWs.

Risk Indicator 4: Number of technical skills gaps (supervision, operation, maintenance).

Risk Rating

Higher % values indicate a high-risk state that requires urgent intervention to improve the overall risk rating of the collector system. WWTWs which fall in the critical-risk rating (CRR) category (90-100% CRR deviation) are earmarked for site inspections by regional DWS inspectors who may then trigger regulatory enforcement measures depending on the severity of the risk/impact

%CRR/CRR_{max} Deviation	90 – 100% Critical Risk WWTW's	
	70 - 90% High Risk WWTW's	
	50-70% Medium Risk WWTW's	
	Less 50% Low Risk WWTW's	

Table 4-4 summarizes key interim results for the MTSP metros based on Green Drop data for 2021-2022 (DWS, 2023). The %CRR deviation scores in Table 4-4 are adapted to show the percentage (%) of total operating effluent flow from the combined WWTWs in each metro that falls within the four risk rating categories. The table confirms that there is a high level of risk of poor operation in many of the Metro WWTW's with 22 (17%) in the high-risk category and 3 (2%) in the critical risk category. Regarding the number of non-compliant effluent quality determinants at point of discharge into the environment (Risk Indicator 3), which is a direct measure of environmental impact, none of the WWTWs consistently comply with all of their permit conditions and many are significantly non-compliant. Annexure 9 provides details of DWS Green Drop scores for each metro WWTP. Annexure 10 is a summary of the number of WWTWs that are compliant with water quality parameters in their license conditions.

As in the case for water use efficiency, the MTSP directly addresses the underlying causes of the gaps in the metros' performance in relation to water pollution management, while acknowledging that the project will follow different strategies for each metro, depending on individual circumstances. Details of the component design are still under development but are expected to ensure that all interventions are specifically relevant to the metro concerned. The MTSP will address a spectrum of activities under the

broad headings of governance and accountability, financial performance and reliability and operational performance (Figure 4-1), that will all contribute to the improvement of effluent quality management. **The environmental benefits** are expected to be highly significant and will include:

- Reduced pollution impacts in rivers receiving treated sewage effluent from metro WWTWs, due to improved compliance with water quality standards in the license conditions for the works.
- Reduced frequency of occurrence of significant raw sewage spills due to pipe bursts and other infrastructure failure, and the resulting impacts on downstream aquatic and estuarine habitats and species.
- Reduced life cycle impacts due to improved water quality downstream of the metro WWTWs
- Overall, a significant improvement in the circular economy, supported by strengthening of metro financial and institutional performance.

An important consideration relating to the environmental benefits of the reforms is that the grant is not intended as a shopping list for aspirational investigations and corrective actions that step outside of the framework of existing policy, legislation and permit conditions. It will be a significant achievement if the turnaround strategy of the MTSP results in financial efficiency and accountability and compliance with existing environmental standards for the WWTWs, without imposing additional demands on the metros. An illustrative example would be the City of Cape Town's marine outfalls, which are a source of friction with stakeholders along the seaboard²⁷, many of whom believe are harmful to marine life and cause risks to human health as well. The benchmark for the grant in cases such as this will be compliance with permit conditions, although the ESSA team recommends that the team consider a technical assistance component to the grant, which helps fund well-motivated scientific investigations, agreed with the metros in consultation with key stakeholders, that could improve environmental performance. These could be motivated on a case-by-case basis.

²⁷ See, for example, Cape Argus, 2022, url: <https://www.iol.co.za/capeargus/news/sewage-wars-city-of-cape-town-pressured-over-impacts-of-sewage-discharge-eed06ecd-18da-49df-a777-c5a566ff2474>.

Table 4-4. Summary Data for the MTSP Metro Wastewater Treatment Works based on the DWS November (2023) Green Drop D-PAT Report

Metro / Overall 2023 CRR% Rating	# of WWTWs	Total operating flow (all WWTWs) Kl/d	Percentage (%) of total operating flow from WWTWs with risk (CRR%) rated as				Summary of Overall Regulator Comment
			Critical	High	Med	Low	
Buffalo City 68,5%	15	120 743	40,7	33,8	8,9	16,5	All WWTWs where monitoring is undertaken (13) have compliance failures in one or more respects. Technical skills adequate at all WWTWs. No Wastewater Risk Abatement Plans (W2RAPs) in place and only one GDIP.
City of Cape Town 65,3%	26	441 170	0,0	42,2	50,9	6,9	Poor microbiological compliance at 5 WWTWs; very good compliance at 8 WWTWs. Physical/chemical non-compliance for 7 or more parameters at 7 WWTWs. Technical skills at each works generally good but some gaps noted. Most systems have W2RAPs in place and all have GDIPs.
Ekurhuleni 64,4%	17	899 012	0,0	72,6	7,63	19,8	5 WWTW high risk, 5 medium risk, 7 low risk. All works have adequate technical skills. High risk works due mainly due to operating capacity being exceeded. Water quality performance poor at 5 works. W2RAP and GDIPs in place.
City of Johannesburg 59%	6	817 407	0,0	67,6	20,6		1 WWTW high risk, 3 medium risk, 2 low risk. Three works have poor effluent quality. Process controller and supervisors are certified, and maintenance staff are well trained. Missing monitoring parameters in some cases (Nitrate). W2RAPs in place for some works and GDIPs for all works.
Tshwane 69,4%	16	560 038	0,0	40,8	59,2	0,0	None of the WWTW meet their permit conditions for wastewater quality. Eleven WWTWs operating above 90% of their design capacity. Process audits required and corrective actions through the W2RAP process. One works (Klipgat) under regulatory supervision.
eThekwini 61,5%	28	325 902	14,6	3,8	67,8	13,8	One (1) critical risk WWTW, 8 high risk, 13 medium risk, 6 low risk. Four WWTW achieved good or excellent water quality scores. Twenty-two obtained poor scores. Twenty works not compliant with supervisor, process controller and maintenance requirements and all obtained a poor score for technical skills. No W2RAP or GDIPs submitted indicative, with the risk ratings of poor overall risk management performance
Mangaung 70,8%	13	134 413	2,2	61,3	36,5	0,0	Two (2) critical risk WWTWs, 6 high risk, 5 medium risk. No flow meter data presented resulting in low confidence CRRs. Effluent quality monitoring for 8 works, all with poor quality. No microbiological monitoring. All systems obtained low scores for technical competence.
Nelson Mandela Bay 56,9%	7	150 735	0,0	6,2	87,1	6,0	Two (2) high risk WWTWs, 4 medium risk, one low risk. Design capacity information incomplete. Overall effluent quality poor for all WWTWs. All works operating without valid authorizations. Technical skills of maintenance team fully compliant. Supervisor and process controller skills partially

Note: The CRR% scores are adapted to show the percentage (%) of total operating effluent flow from the combined WWTWs in each metro that falls within the four risk rating categories

4.1.2 Electricity (Results Area 2)

(i) Reduced emission of greenhouse gasses

The MTSP study team has identified a series of electricity supply challenges that exist across most metros (Table 4-5).

Table 4-5. Common challenges across most metros

 FINANCE	 OPERATIONS	 GOVERNANCE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Profitability is negative and declining, with most metros unable to recover their operating costs • Sales are declining, despite of customer growth- businesses are declining • Rand difference between purchase and sale (available markup) is declining sharply • Lack of utility-level financial transparency, especially regarding balance sheets, cost transfers & cash flows • High or substantial dependence on grant transfers to fund CAPEX 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High technical losses due to aging infrastructure, maintenance backlogs and understaffing • High non-technical losses due to illegal connections, meter tampering, meter faults, non-allocated meters, inaccurate billing, cash collections • Long downtimes for resolution of power outages due to a lack of outage management systems that integrate with smart grids for faster fault detection and isolation • Declining power quality and network overloads due to insufficient investments and poor maintenance, lack of tools enabling electrical network visibility 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lack of complete control over the wires, retail and supporting processes • Electricity revenue collected is not ring-fenced • Decision-making authority (such over capital investment and tariff decisions), and key parts of operational performance (such as supply chain management, billing, and collection) is diffused

The metros technical and non-technical operational losses have been increasing over the past decade, exacerbating poor service delivery to existing customers, delaying the ability to provide power to vulnerable communities in rapidly urbanizing areas and causing the per unit and life cycle cost of power to rise. Table 4-6 shows the record for 2022/2023²⁸. Most of the metros are unable to distinguish between the physical and non-technical losses. The physical losses are influenced by the network configuration and voltage levels and need to be estimated by a loss load flow study. A reasonable estimate for the metros is around 4,5%²⁹ which, based on a South African grid emission factor of 0,96 tCO₂e/MWh, and annual electricity consumption by the metros of 43 589 GWh, amounts to the release of approximately 2 million tons of carbon per annum (as CO₂-e) into the atmosphere.

The MTSP is designed to reform the metros’ electricity trading services and to assist them to adapt to the rapidly changing power supply landscape. Specific electricity reforms proposed by the MTSP under governance, financial and operational categories are described in Annexure 2. The improved governance and profitability of the metro businesses is expected to result in a positive maintenance cycle, reducing technical electricity losses. **The main environmental benefit of the program, apart from a general reduction in life cycle costs due to more efficient use of resources per unit of consumption will be a reduction in carbon and other grid emissions.** Each kWh of electricity that is not wasted represents a direct carbon saving of 0,96 kg of CO₂-e³⁰. Grid emission reductions per unit of consumption will also be

²⁸ Data presented by the World Bank study team during the November 2024 Mission presentations.

²⁹ eThekweni estimates 4,5% in its business plan and Ekurhuleni, which has done a loss load study, finds similar results.

³⁰ Dept. of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (2024). South Africa’s 2022 Grid Emission Report. Government Gazette 1 November 2024. No 5498. The value quoted is the ‘Domestic Generation Grid Emission Factor’ (DGGEF) - a high GEF (e.g., >1 kg CO₂ per kWh) typically indicates that a given electricity grid is powered by carbon intensive fuel sources such as fossil fuels, while

achieved for criteria pollutants (NO₂ and SO₂) although these are not calculated for GHG purposes and average emissions per KWh are not available from Eskom³¹.

Table 4-6. Electricity billed, leakage and profit margins in the metros

Metro	Total Electricity Billed (GWh) 2022/2023	Percentage (%) Total Electricity Losses 2022/2023	Net Profit Margin (%)
Buffalo City	1 060	19,9	-17,1
City of Cape Town	7 540	11,5	-1,8
City of Ekurhuleni	9 528	16,3	-0,4
City of Johannesburg	7 956	29,7	-13,1
City of Tshwane	7 443	21,5	-3,3
eThekwini	8 786	10,9	-3,3
Mangaung	1 276	9,9	-12,7
Nelson Mandela Bay	2 522	25,3	-17,7
Total GWh (all Metros)	43 589		
Total GWh lost (2022/2023)	7 678,3		
Total CO₂-e (tons)*	6 653 229		

* South Africa's carbon emissions per kilowatt hour (kWh) of electricity are around 0.96 kg of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e). This is based on 2022 IPCC data.

4.1.3 Solid Waste (Results Area 3)

(i) Reduced pollution caused by illegal dumping

Population growth and rapid urbanization have led to sharply increasing solid waste generation in the MTSP metros, which together with institutional and financial constraints and problems, have resulted in the metropolitan councils struggling to provide and maintain basic waste removal services. The most apparent outcome has been a proliferation of illegal dumping, particularly in poorer urban areas and areas of informal settlement (Ngalo and Thondhlana, 2023³²; World Bank (2023)³³ reports that the issue is significant across all metros and lists numerous causes, including growing informal settlements (difficulty in servicing or keeping pace with inward migration patterns), transporters (to avoid travelling to landfill sites and having to pay the gate fee), waste collection backlogs (unreliable fleet), poor landfill management

GEFs closer to zero symbolize electricity grids that are supplied by renewable energy sources. The 2022 DGGEF of 0,96 tCO₂e/MWh, accurately reflects South Africa's 2022 energy mix for electricity generation. It is an improvement on the 2021 DGGEF (1.013 tCO₂e/MWh), reflecting the increasing contribution to the grid by renewable energy supplied by private power producers.

³¹ A rough calculation is 14-15 kg/GWh for SO₂ and 6-7 kg/GWh for NO₂.

³² Ngalo, N. and Thondhlana G., 2023. Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health 2023, 20, 6750. <https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph20186750>

³³ A Diagnostic of Solid Waste Management in South African Metros. 7 June 2023. Internal presentation to the National Treasury and other MTSP stakeholders.

(sites inaccessible), and limited resources to enforce bylaws and apprehend culprits. In some cases, bylaws are outdated.

Data from some of the metros and other sources about the extent of illegal waste dumping illustrates the magnitude of the problem (Table 4-7). Recent satellite image analysis in Nelson Mandela Bay municipality, for example, identified 7800 illegal dumping sites, an increase of 57% between 2015 and 2021 (Swanepoel et al 2024). All of the metros consider illegal dumping to be a critical ongoing problem.

Table 4-7. Estimates of illegal waste dumping sites in the MTSP metro

Metro	Estimated number of illegal dumping sites		Description
	Council Estimates	Third Party Estimates	
Cape Town	Acknowledgement and cost estimate	Cape {Town} etc.	COCT estimates cost of illegal dumping of solid waste to be R 225 million per year. Over 180 000 tons of illegally dumped waste cleared annually in 2022 (Cape {Town} etc.)
eThekwini	Acknowledgement but no data	Cost estimates	Acknowledgement of dumping hotspots and the /enormous challenge that illegal dumping represents (eThekwini Municipality, 20 September, 2024). Illegal dumping costs city R180 million in waste removal and rehabilitation annually. Estimated 10,8% of households not provided with waste removal services and burn or dump their waste (Catapult Connected Places, 2021). ³⁴
Tshwane	No data	670	3S Media Resource May 2021. Metro reported to spend R30 million per year in illegal dumping cleanup.
Johannesburg	-	1900	Hotspots. Reported in the Star Newspaper 9 January 2023. City spends R70 M/year on illegal dumping (WB internal report)
Ekurhuleni	Acknowledgement but no data	-	Little available information. ‘Scourge’ of illegal dumping recognised by the City ³⁵
Mangaung	Acknowledgement but no data	-	IWMP recognises failure to adequately implement bylaws regarding illegal dumping of waste. Underlying causes also recognised (governance, funding, waste collection insufficient, insufficient waste diversion, failure to prosecute offenders)
Buffalo City	-	Acknowledgement but no data	Widespread illegal dumping referenced ³⁶
Nelson Mandela Bay	-	7800	Swanepoel (2023). Satellite image analysis

³⁴ Catapult Connected Places is a UK based organization that works with six cities (Nairobi, Mombassa, Kisumu, Johannesburg, Cape Town, eThekwini) on the Urban Links Africa Programme.

³⁵ City of Ekurhuleni, 2024.

³⁶ Brown, 2020.

The MTSP acknowledges that the project will follow different strategies for each metro, depending on individual circumstances. The program will address a spectrum of activities under the broad headings of governance and accountability, financial performance and reliability and operational performance, that will all contribute to the improvement of solid waste management. The headline areas under which the MTSP will drive reform are security and vandalism, fleet management, landfill compliance and maintenance, public awareness and communication, customer interface and communication, community engagement and law enforcement, human resources, revenue management and extended producer responsibilities. In some cases, the technical assistance component of the program may support review and updating of outdated municipal waste bylaws³⁷. All these interventions will contribute to a more efficient service and a reduction in illegal waste dumping. While the program design is still being developed, an indication of the key activities and performance indicators is provided in Annexure 3.

The environmental benefits of reduced illegal dumping³⁸ are expected to be highly significant and will include:

- Reduced water pollution caused by leaching of contaminants from dumps. Illegal waste dumps may contain a range of organic and hazardous wastes such as paints, waste oils, acids, household and industrial detergents and cleaners, medical health waste, plastics, organic materials, including human and domestic animal feces, and various other general wastes. Environmental effects have been extensively reported in the press and in government and academic studies. Owusu-Asante 2019³⁹ identified illegal waste dumping in South African metros as one of the important sources of contamination contributing to the poor state of urban river health.
- Reduced plastics contamination of aquatic and marine ecosystems. While acknowledging the usefulness of plastics, their uncontrolled disposal has resulted in contamination of rivers and oceans, which has become a global issue of concern. The effect of microplastics on aquatic and marine ecosystems is a particular emerging area of international study.
- A positive reinforcement loop, which together with better metro communication about waste and the environment, will improve community attitudes towards waste management, foster pride in neighborhoods where greater agency will promote self-regulation by local people.

(ii) Reduced pollution caused by landfills

Many of South Africa's municipal landfills do not meet the requirements of their license conditions. In its latest landfill audit report of the performance of 183 municipal landfills in South Africa's nine provinces, the watchdog group AfriForum (2024)⁴⁰ found that only 14,3% of the sites achieved the pass rate of 80% compliance, which is a minimum requirement according to the audit methodology. AfriForum (2024) notes that there is a general lack of accountability for proper waste management, monitoring and licencing by local authorities. inadequate waste management practices, the collapse of infrastructure, corruption in

³⁷ pers. comm. E Dickson, World Bank MTSP team leader. January 30, 2025.

³⁸ Illegal dumping, in the present context, includes both the deliberate disposal of accumulated waste outside of designated landfills and the casual throwaway of waste by individuals, particularly plastic wastes, where it may be entrained by stormwater into urban rivers and streams.

³⁹ Water Research Commission Report: Detection and Removal of Illegal Discharges into Stormwater Systems. 2019.

⁴⁰ AfriForum is a non-profit civil rights organization. As a part of its #CleanSA initiative, AfriForum initiated an ongoing landfill site audit reporting project. This project determines the extent to which landfill sites in the municipalities across South Africa comply with the requirements of waste management legislation and their license conditions. The report is circulated to all key stakeholders.

some cases, health and safety issues, and a shortage of space for the disposal of refuse (air space), all of which contribute to poor performance. This ultimately contributes to environmental pollution and endangers the health of communities. The World Bank MTSP team draws similar conclusions, adding that metro waste disposal services are under-resourced, available data and reporting are generally not fit for purpose and there is little public reporting on compliance performance.

On average, the metro landfills and transfer stations achieve better results than the national average, but differ widely individually, from good to extremely poor. In the AfriForum audit, the metros achieved only six scores of over 80% in 19 audited results (Table 4-8). The two private landfills that are operated under agreement with the Tshwane Municipality scored best, with scores of 94% (Bon Accord) and 98% (Mooiplaats). In independent external audits, done as a requirement of license conditions, only the City of Cape Town and two of eThekweni’s landfills passed the audits with scores of over 80% (Table 4-9). Annexure 11 provides a summary of the external audit findings, underscoring the poor condition of many of the metro landfills, with frequent findings about badly maintained infrastructure, inadequately covered and compacted waste, failure to follow the approved design of the landfill, unsafe and leaking leachate ponds, mixing of uncontaminated stormwater and leachate, broken fencing and lack of security, absence of appropriate management systems and records and lack of staff training being just some of the concerns.

Table 4-8. AfriForum (2024) audit results for selected metro landfills and transfer stations

Metro	Disposal Site	Compliance (%)	Methodology
Buffalo City	East London (Roundhill)	84	The audit questionnaire consisted of 33 questions covering the most important aspects of good waste management a landfill site (and where applicable a waste transfer facility) must comply with. The questions are based on the minimum requirements, which were enforce at the time when most of the permits for the landfills were issued. Subsequently the NEMA Waste Act and associated regulations changed to waste licenses. Scores were determined by allocating one point to each question. No weighting was applied, and the scores were normalised to % compliance/non-compliance. Under each category, performance was rates as either compliant (1 point), partially compliant (1/2 point), or non-compliant (0 points).
City of Cape Town	Bellville	Closed	
	Gordon's Bay waste transfer facility	96	
City of Ekurhuleni	Alberton (Platkop)	98	
	Boksburg (Rooikraal)	Closed	
	Germiston (Simmer & Jack)	80	
	Brakpan (Weltevreden)	74	
	Kempton Park (Chloorkop)	Closed	
	Springs (Rietfontein)	Closed	
City of Johannesburg	Roodepoort	78	
City of Tshwane	Bon Accord	94	
	Bronkhorstspuit	74	
	Ga-Rankuwa	66	
	Hatherley	68	
	Mooiplaats	98	
	Shoshanguve	66	
eThekweni	Seadoone	60	

Mangaung	Bloemfontein North	18	Green highlighted WWTWs are privately operated by <i>The Waste Group</i>
	Bloemfontein South	18	
Nelson Mandela Bay	Port Elizabeth (Arlington)	76	
	Port Elizabeth Gillespie Street waste transfer facility	28	
	Port Elizabeth Hillwacht waste transfer facility	2	
	Uitenhage (Koedoeskloof)	48	

Source: AfriForum (2024).

Table 4-9. External Audits of landfill and transfer station compliance with permits and license conditions⁴¹

Metro	Audit Date	Waste Management Facility	Audit Score (%)
Tshwane	Jul 2022	Soshanguve	71
	Jul 2022	Ga-Rankuwa	52
	Jul 2022	Onderstepoort	76
	Jul 2022	Hatherley	53
	Jul 2022	Bronkhorstspuit	48
Mangaung	Feb 2024	Southern Landfill	17
	Feb 2024	Northern Landfill	41
Johannesburg	Sep 2024	Robinson Deep	66,5
	Sep 2024	Marie-Louise	68,6
	Sep 2024	Goudkoppies	65,7
	Jun 2024	Ennerdale	NS
Cape Town	May 2024	Vissershok South	90,3
	May 2024	Vissershok North	90,7
	Oct 2023	Swartklip Transfer Station	94,7
	Oct 2023	Kraaifontein IWMF	90,1
	Feb 2024	Tygerberg IWMF	87,7
	Oct 2023	Athlone Refuse Transfer Station	97,1
	May 2024	Coastal Park WDF	87,5
eThekweni	Feb 2024	Marianhill Landfill Site	90
	Sep 2024	Buffelsdraai Landfill Site	86
	Jan 2023	Bisasar Road Landfill Site	76,2
Ekurhuleni	Mar 2024	Weltevreden Landfill Site	NS
	Mar 2024	Simmer and Jack Landfill Site	54,3
	Mar2024	Platkop Landfill Site	61,6
	Mar 2024	Riefontein Landfill	NS
	Mar 2024	Rooikraal Landfill	NS

NS: Not Scored

The environmental risks and impacts of inadequately managed landfills extend well beyond the physical boundaries of the landfill, and have been documented in many academic, industry and government reports, as well as in extensive news media coverage. Landfills without effective leachate control create

⁴¹ Refer to reference list for details of external audits. Further details of audit findings are included in Annex 5. Green highlighted scores represent an acceptable result.

groundwater pollution risks, releasing toxic contaminants, with knock on effects on surface water and aquatic ecosystems. The release of methane from decomposing waste contributes to greenhouse gas emissions, undermining efforts to combat climate change. The International Solid Waste Association (ISWA, 2016) states that if current landfill trends continue, methane and CO₂ from landfills will account for 10% of all greenhouse gasses released into the atmosphere by 2025. Spontaneous combustion can also be a problem in poorly compacted landfills, resulting in the release of air pollutants including dioxins and furans, which are carcinogenic. The proliferation of pests and other disease vectors are common on poorly managed landfills, potentially spreading into surrounding communities.

The design of the MTSP addresses the root causes of poor waste management performance by removing institutional barriers and creating ring-fenced, financially viable, business units. This is expected to provide a sound basis for tackling fleet maintenance issues, service backlogs and landfill upgrading.

The environmental benefits of the program are expected to be highly significant and will include:

- Reduced groundwater pollution
- Greater availability of airspace (and lower demand for new landfill sites)
- Lower incidence of nuisance vectors
- Less odour and other gaseous emissions
- Prompter capping and rehabilitation of completed landfill cells.

Technical assistance from the program may also be used to fund investigations into new landfill sites, which take time to authorize, and must be planned and approved long in advance if a crisis in airspace availability is to be avoided.

(iii) Promotion of the waste mitigation hierarchy and circular economy

The National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS, 2020) is a legal requirement under the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008), intended to provide a road map to achieve the purposes of the Waste Act. Public and private organizations are obliged to give effect to the NWMS.

The waste minimization hierarchy (Figure 4-2) and, more broadly, the circular economy⁴² (Figure 4-3) are at the centre of the NWMS. The circular economy is an approach to reducing the environmental impact of economic activity by reusing and recycling processed materials to minimise the need to extract raw materials from the environment, and the need to dispose of waste. The NWMS strategy incorporates the waste management hierarchy and circular economy principles in accordance with the following themes⁴³:

- Waste minimisation: Forty-five percent of waste to be diverted from landfill within five years; 55 percent within ten years; and at least 70 percent within 15 years, leading to zero waste going to landfill
- Effective and sustainable waste services: All South Africans to live in clean communities with waste services that are well managed and financially sustainable
- Compliance, enforcement and awareness: Mainstreaming of waste awareness and a culture of compliance, with zero tolerance of pollution, litter, and illegal dumping.

⁴² The circular economy, as defined by the National Waste Management Strategy (DFFE, 2020), is an economy that is restorative and regenerative by design, and aims to keep products, components, and materials at their highest utility and value at all times, distinguishing between technical and biological cycles. A circular economy is built on the concept that there is no such thing as waste.

⁴³ DFFE presentation to the Parliamentary Monitoring Group, 18 February 2022.

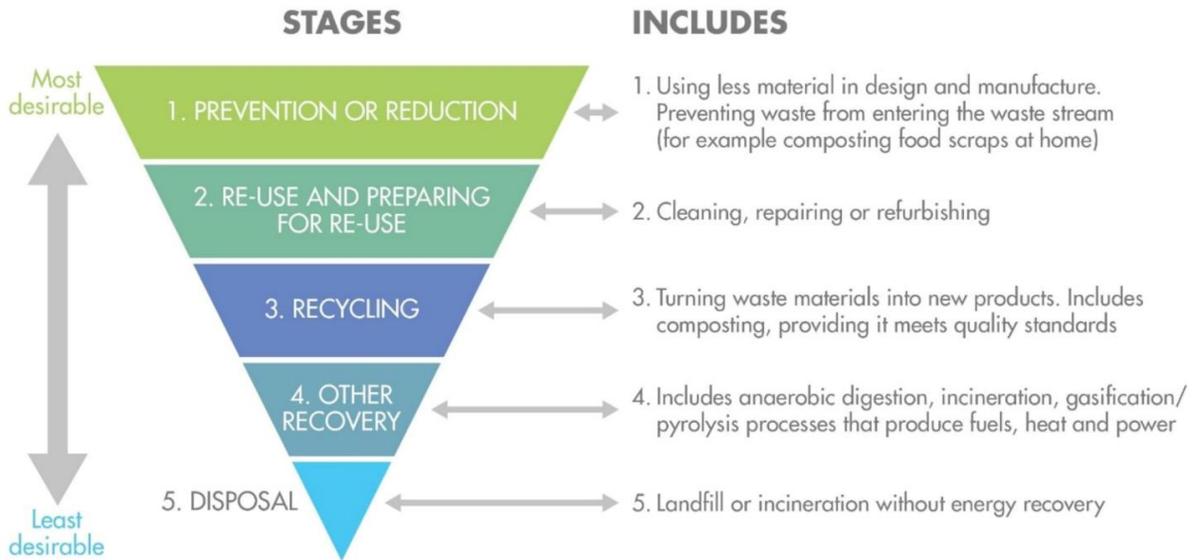


Figure 4-2. The waste mitigation hierarchy⁴⁴

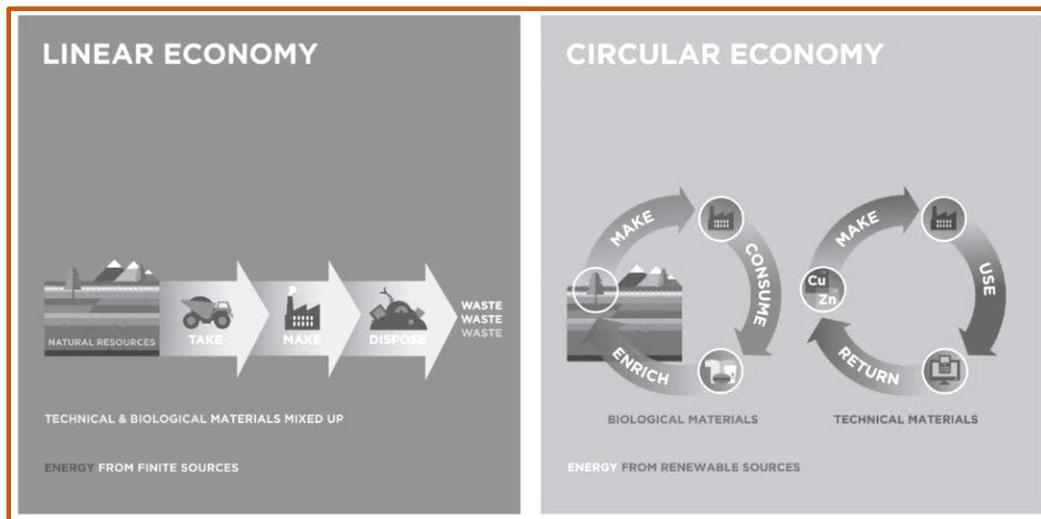


Figure 4-3. The linear vs circular economy⁴⁵

At municipal level, the objectives of the NWMP are to be implemented through the development and implementation of Integrated Waste Management Plans (IWMPs). While all the metros have developed their IWMPs, progress with implementation has been slower than hoped. Despite many individual public and private initiatives to improve progress towards a circular economy, it has still not become sufficiently mainstream to approach the targets set by the NWMS. Recent studies confirm that the South African waste economy remains predominantly linear, following the ‘take-make-dispose’ model (World Bank, 2022). Across all material types, material cycling in South Africa is estimated at 7% (Von Blottnitz & Haas, 2021); of which 5% is the result of ecological cycling of biomass and organic waste. Table 4-10 presents the percentage of total waste generated by the metros that is diverted from landfills.

⁴⁴ Source: DFFE, 2020.

⁴⁵ Source: Ellen MacArthur Foundation.

Table 4-10. Total waste disposed to and diverted from landfill in the metros

Metro	Waste Disposed (Mtpa)	Waste Diverted	Waste Diverted (as % of total waste)
Johannesburg	1 400 000 ⁴⁶	200 000	14,2%
Cape Town	1 184 832 ⁴⁷	295 056	19,9%
Ekurhuleni	-	-	-
eThekweni	1 400 000 ⁴⁸	112 000	8% ⁴⁹
Tshwane	-	-	20% ⁵⁰
Mangaung	222 852 ⁵¹	ND	ND
Buffalo City	90 539	25912 ⁵²	17,6%
Nelson Mandela Bay	-	-	-

Many reasons for the slow progress have been advanced. Contrary to how the concept is often perceived, a circular economy is about far more than simply improved waste management and recycling (the ‘mitigation hierarchy’ - although this is still a fundamental part of the solution to leakage). It instead involves a systemic shift away from the traditional linear ‘take-make-waste’ economy; and encompasses a radical transformation of the ways in which resources are perceived and used, the way products are designed, and of the relationship between producers and consumers (World Bank, 2022). This transformation involves multiple cross-sectoral actors who are to be part of implementation along the entire value chain, including product designers, mining operators, producers, distributors, consumers, collectors of end-of-life products, recyclers, inclusive of the informal sector and youth (DFFE, 2020).

The World Bank (2022) sets out 10 key messages for advancing the circular economy in South Africa. While these are particularly related to the plastic economy, they apply to all initiatives to reach the goal of zero waste:

- adopting a common vision and roadmap for the circular economy
- creating an effective enabling environment
- improved waste collection and management to ensure recovery of recyclables and elimination of leakage
- designing out unnecessary and problematic items

⁴⁶ City of Johannesburg (2022). Urban Waste Management Presentation to the Parliamentary Monitoring Group. February 19.

⁴⁷ City of Cape Town (2022). Urban Waste Management Presentation to the Parliamentary Monitoring Group. February 19. Data for December 2022, multiplied by 12 as an annual estimate. Cape Town quotes 17,5%.

⁴⁸ Google AI search.

⁴⁹ Catapult Connected Places 2021. eThekweni Waste Management. <https://cp.catapult.org.uk>.

⁵⁰ Nokele, A.K. (2020). Assessment of integrated waste management plan in the City of Tshwane (Masters Dissertation). Johannesburg: University of Johannesburg. Available from <http://hdl.handle.net/102000/0002>. Data considered by the author to have limitations due to inaccuracy of collection.

⁵¹ Mangaung (2019 -2020) Consolidated Annual Report, page 63. The 2022-2023 Annual Report has no data on total waste tonnages or diversion of waste from landfill.

⁵² Buffalo City online waste data (open data). January – September 2024 scaled up by 12/9 for an annual estimate.

- driving design for circularity
- scaling up reuse models
- further development of recycling capacity where required
- driving demand for post-consumer product
- improved communication, education and behavioral change, and
- promoting inclusivity and a just transition.

The MTSP recognizes the complexity of the issue, and the program design is limited to achieve specific measurable goals in relation to the circular economy, particularly those resulting in improved waste collection and management, recovery of recyclables and elimination of leakage. The theory of change is that until the business units that are responsible for waste management in the metros are fully functional with all the necessary capacity to maintain waste management infrastructure and monitor inputs and outputs accurately, the enabling environment required by the NWMP for an effective partnership between the metros and Producer Responsibility Organizations (PROs)⁵³ will not be in place. **The MTSP is therefore seen as a critical mechanism for de-bottlenecking the slow progress towards the goals of the circular economy as it applies to metro waste.**

4.1.4 Climate Change and Resilience⁵⁴

There has been a 57% increase in recorded weather-related disasters in South Africa over the past two decades compared to the preceding two. Disaster losses are expected to increase due to (i) direct impact of climate change on weather-related hazards, which is expected to increase temperatures as much as 3°C in the northern provinces, and severity of storms across the country; (ii) the expected increase of unplanned urban growth with poor land-use practices and housing market constraints which increase the likelihood of exposure, i.e. communities settle in risk-prone areas with poor access to services and living in vulnerable locations and poorly constructed houses; and (iii) limited consideration of climate change adaptation in urban planning and urban infrastructure planning, delivery and maintenance.

Urban areas in South Africa are subject to various climate impacts, including significant flood hazard and drought. In Gauteng City Region, settlements have continuously expanded in flood-prone areas at rapid rates. Gauteng City Region and Cape Town have the most settlement areas at risk of flooding, and the total area of exposed settlements is expected to continue to expand at varying speeds, depending on the Shared Socioeconomic Pathways (SSP) scenarios. Average precipitation in most metros is expected to decline by mid-century, but extreme precipitation may still intensify. This could exacerbate pluvial flood hazard, as drier, more degraded soil will have reduced capacity to absorb floodwater. Rising temperatures due to climate change could amplify future drought hazards by accelerating evapotranspiration. Groundwater storage remains steady, and there has been no sign of severe agricultural drought.

The Program is aligned with the goals of the Paris Agreement, consistent with the country's National Determined Contribution (NDC), South Africa's Low-Emission Development Strategy, and National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy (NCCAS). In the latest NDC submitted to the United Nations

⁵³ Producer Responsibility Organizations (PROs) in South Africa are businesses that collect fees from producers and use the funds to recycle materials. Some examples of PROs include PETCO, Polyco, and the Polystyrene Association of South Africa.

⁵⁴ This section is based on work done by the World Bank technical team and included in the PAD (February 12, 2025)

Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), South Africa commits to 31% reduction and a fixed target for greenhouse gas emissions levels of 398 510 MtCO₂e by 2025, and 350 420 MtCO₂e by 2030. The country has set the goal to reach net zero emissions by 2050 in its Low-Emission Development Strategy submitted in 2020. South Africa's updated NDC also contains its first adaptation communication in terms of Article 7 of the Paris Agreement in section 3, which serves as South Africa's adaptation NDC, and identifies water and human settlements among key climate vulnerability sectors.

Project activities will actively support the achievement of NDC targets, including NWR reduction, rehabilitation and expansion of production, pumping, treatment, and storage infrastructure to enhance water security and improve WSS systems, and the use of adequate information systems to help monitor and track climate relevant data and enhance decision-making. The project is expected to be universally aligned on mitigation. Relevant domestic legislation and policy that the project aligns with include the National Climate Change Response Policy (NCCRP) (DEA 2011a), National Development Plan (NDP) (NPC 2011), National Strategy for Sustainable Development (NSSD) (DEA 2011b), sector adaptation strategies/plans, as well as provincial and municipal adaptation strategies/plans. **The project will contribute to the country's climate change agenda throughout its three Results Areas, as they will enhance the provision of water supply and sanitation services, electricity services and solid waste management services, including the promotion of energy efficiency, which are critical for climate change responses at the municipal level.**

The Program is not at material risk of having a negative impact on the country's low-GHG emissions development pathways – it is expected that the converse will result, with a positive impact on GHG emissions. The activities financed under the Program are on the universally aligned list, including the rehabilitation and expansion of water supply and sanitation systems, non-revenue water (NRW) management, wastewater management systems, and improving energy efficiencies. The project is not going to invest in -site fossil fuel pumps or generators to operate the WSS system. **The Program will contribute to the implementation of Climate Change Action Plans at the metro level, as they include the improvement of sanitation facilities and safe disposal of sewage, leading to reduction of GHG emissions in the medium to long term.** The water supply activities under DLI 1 are expected to have net emissions of -62,588 tCO₂-eq/year, while the sanitation activities under DLI 1 are estimated to result in net emissions of -410,421 tCO₂-eq/year. The water supply activities have lifetime net emissions of -1,877,636 tCO₂-eq and gross emissions of 21,592,809 tCO₂-eq. The sanitation activities have lifetime net emissions of -12,312,637 tCO₂-eq and gross emissions of 23,465,030 tCO₂-eq. The water supply activities lead to net emissions reductions due to NRW reduction, resulting in energy efficiency gains. The sanitation activities achieve net emission reductions through collecting and treating waste that would otherwise remain untreated and would thus generate GHG emissions unabated. The NRW emission reductions are dependent on PIAPs W1, W2, W5, W7, W8, W10, and W11 to both improve the physical infrastructure and ensure proper operations and maintenance to prevent future leakages, while the sanitation emission reductions rely on PIAPs W3, W4, W6, and W9 to build, maintain, and operate the relevant sanitation system infrastructure and practices (refer to Annexure 13).

Electricity targets will contribute to climate mitigation through increased energy efficiencies, improved cost recovery, and loss reduction, increasing system resilience through enhanced network reliability. The program will finance activities relating to governance and financial transparent electricity reform program, loss control program, and rehabilitation of installation of advanced metering infrastructure (including bi-directional meters for customers with embedded renewable generation), improved revenue

management programs, and rehabilitation of the high, medium and low voltage lines to enhance their maintenance efficiency and effectiveness and to improve network reliability, all of which are universally aligned. The Program supports access to expanded, reliable and affordable electricity consumption as well as identification and quantification of technical losses across the distribution network, which leads to improved efficient energy use and reduced technical losses. The installation of meters also allows DISCOs to accurately charge customers the correct energy tariff which induces a more rational use of energy by customers, compared with unmetered customers.

SWM targets will mitigate climate impact through landfill gas flaring and/or combustion, with supplementary co-benefits from optimized SWM routes and waste diversion and recycling, with net GHG emissions reduced by 1,503,000 tCO₂e, annually, by 2031, while also enhancing adaptation by preventing waste from clogging storm drains and contaminating water sources. PIAP indicator S7 (SWM), focused on climate mitigation, tracks the annual reduction of greenhouse gas emissions, specifically CO₂e (carbon dioxide equivalent) and CH₄ (methane), from waste management operations.

The Program will strengthen resilience to extreme weather events. South Africa's metros have high exposure to climate risks, particularly more frequent droughts and extreme weather events. Results Area (RA)3 prioritizes operational performance improvements that will enhance water security, promote resilient WSS service provision, and ensure that WSS and solid waste infrastructure are resilient to flooding, drought, and other disasters. This includes reducing NRW (increasing water availability and service reliability, thus strengthening adaptive capacity of vulnerable households to drought and temperature increase), improving water network and sewer network performance (lowering water mains failures and logged blockages that result in an obstruction of system flow, improving water distribution to cope with heat stress and flood risks), and providing water storage reservoirs with quality sensors and automated distribution, along with strengthened waste management systems to prevent overflow risks during heavy rainfall events. The focus of RA3 is to incentivize climate resilience mainstreaming in WSS services, as part of comprehensive asset management systems. Climate resilience measures for the water and waste sectors are included in available metro Climate Change Plans and will be integrated into WSS project designs. The resilient design process for infrastructure rehabilitation, repair or expansion will also ensure that water and sanitation infrastructure is robust to the threats of drought and flood.⁵⁵

For SWM, planning can integrate with flood risk mapping to prioritize waste collection in flood-prone areas, expedite complaint response to issues like river blockages, and use digital reporting systems to address waste buildup to mitigate flooding risks. These efforts will reduce the potential impact of extreme events (e.g., drought, floods, storms) on water quality and waste system functionality, ensuring continuity of essential services.

Asset resilience will also be fostered through comprehensive asset management plans and asset renewal. Following climate-resilient design standards will also contribute to resilient operations of wastewater management systems by reducing potential disruptions that could lead to sewage overflows, as monitored by the indicators on water quality and sewage blockages. In the energy sector, updated Outage Management Systems and the comprehensive introduction of SCADA will enhance the networks resilience to climate-induced interruptions such as floods and high winds (monitored by service interruption indices 36 and 37). In turn, fewer disruptions in the electricity network will make the municipalities more resilient

⁵⁵ The resilient design process will follow the principles outlined in the World Bank's Resilient Water Infrastructure Design Brief, Building the Resilience of WSS Utilities to Climate Change and Other Threats, and the Decision Tree Framework.

to climate hazards such as extreme heat. The installation of meters will directly contribute to getting better data and better monitoring of electricity consumption as well as identification and quantification of technical losses across the distribution network, which leads to improved efficient energy use and reduced technical losses. The installation of meters also allows metros to accurately charge customers the correct energy tariff which induces a more rational use of energy by customers, compared with unmetered customers. Most metros have identified SWM as a priority in their city level climate action plan/ circular economy plan, to address adaptation and mitigation risks. In the SWM sector, quality assurance governed by new or repaired weighbridge and vehicle telematic assets, will help to inform flood risks, illegal dumping and broader and better-quality service coverage and delivery (e.g. PIAP indicators S2, S3 and S6).⁵⁶ Overall, the core Results Areas of the Program will target key aspects needed for adaptation and resilience, namely enhanced governance and institutional robustness of trading services, operational efficiency and reliability, and financial performance, improving the continuity and minimizing disruption of key services due to climate related impacts and extreme events. For all sectors, capacity building includes asset management and operational resilience under climate stress, to emphasize proactive climate risk management, and capacity building on sustainable WSS services during climate emergencies. Thus, risks from climate hazards have been reduced to an acceptable level and are not likely to have material impact on the operation and its development objective.

4.2 Program Environmental, Health and Safety Risks and Impacts

(i) Health and safety risks during civil and electrical construction works

The MTSP is still to define the full scope of civil construction works in the three program sectors. Some indication is provided in the menu of activities for each sector (Annexures 1-3) but these are preliminary, and the metros may only identify the specifics of many activities well into the program schedule. The principle that governs eligibility for PforR is that major works involving some substantial and all high environmental and social risks would be excluded. The type of construction work being considered under the program, while potentially medium to large scale in some instances, does not involve any activities that would create significant health and safety risks, subject to the application of Good International Industrial Practice (GIIP) by contractors. South Africa's construction industry is well versed in health and safety management, being required to comply with comprehensive construction management regulations under the OHS Act. For all projects exceeding 180 days of construction work or involving more than 1800-person work-days, or exceeding a value of R13 million, a permit must be obtained from the Department of Labour before the start of work. Contractors must prepare a health and safety plan, which must be reviewed and updated during the progress of the contract. The plan must be informed by a risk assessment, and a safety file must be maintained. Effective communication channels must be established and training provided to workers to ensure that risks are understood and managed. Employers must ensure that health and safety audits are undertaken at least every 30 days; corrective actions to clear audit findings must be implemented by the contractor.

In this context, health and safety risks of civil works under the project are considered to be moderate. It is noted, however, that the health and safety record of African countries compared with high-income countries is poor, and South Africa is no exception, with fatality rates in the construction industry

⁵⁶ Weighbridge data is the foundation for establishing a waste diversion and recycling baseline, for which the Program will benchmark results. The weighbridge is also key to establishing the correct incentives to the private sector, to divert their waste for recovery or recycling. Better security and access control (primarily driven by the weighbridge) also helps avert natural disasters, flooding risks or improper disposal that carry considerable environmental risks. See PIAP S2, S3 and S9.

approaching an order of magnitude higher than the best performing high-income countries. Trading services need to strengthen their ability to manage occupational health and safety independently of the broader metro. For the appointment of civil and electrical works contractors, requirements should include certification of the contractor under a recognized safety management system such as ISO 45001 and specific requirements for competent, qualified, health and safety managers and site staff, ongoing training, record keeping, incident reporting and auditing, as set out in the OHS regulations. For works that involve repair and replacement of existing pipeline and electricity infrastructure, these involve tasks which are within the ambit of metro's normal due diligence for the safety of municipal workers and the public, and program risks are also considered to be moderate.

(ii) Pollution caused by civil and electrical construction works

The civil and electrical maintenance, repair and expansion works, while reducing the future pollution risks caused by aging or overloaded infrastructure, may in themselves result in short term pollution risks while the works are being carried out. The significance of these risks will generally be limited, particularly if construction is managed to an international standard (GIIP). Concrete batching, trenching, pressure testing of pipes and tanks and other typical construction works are all activities that may cause site specific pollution risks. For some of the activities, such as the expansion of WWTWs, there could be a labor force of up to 500 people at peak construction, resulting in associated hygiene and sanitary pollution risks and generation of solid waste. Small hydrocarbon spills due to leaking equipment and inadequate control of fueling points and service yards are typical hazards associated with construction activities, with a risk of larger spills if diesel storage tanks are not properly contained.

These pollution risks are well known and can be managed effectively through GIIP. Subject to a proportionate level of management control, the risks are expected to be low to moderate. Given the cross-cutting responsibilities within metros for management of civil and electrical works, effective oversight and supervisory control will be necessary to ensure that the waste management hierarchy is applied in accordance with South African law and GIIP. **Pollution caused by the operation of new, expanded and rehabilitated infrastructure.**

In cases where old and damaged infrastructure is rehabilitated or replaced (such as old plant and equipment at sewage treatment works, stabilization of slopes at municipal landfills, replacement of end-of life electrical infrastructure, there may be some additional soil disturbance, runoff, dust, odor and other air emissions during the works that are likely to be minor under properly managed conditions. More substantial interventions, such as the upgrading or development of leachate collection systems, or the collection and flaring or processing of methane from landfills, while also having net positive outcomes, may result in negative impacts, depending on the circumstances, that must be screened before a financing decision is made. Depending on the selected process, leachate that is collected may be treated before disposal, with the generation of resulting hazardous residues (typically heavy metals, organic compounds, ammonia nitrogen as well as other contaminants like pharmaceuticals, plasticizers and PFAs.). For landfill gas collection systems, risks include the hazards of managing volatile flammable substances. Typical processing options include flaring (which may face significant public objection if near residential areas), use to drive turbines for energy generation, or cleaning to industrial quality for use in local industries (in which case processing plant is required). All of these interventions involve pollution risks which are contextual, depending on the location of the facility, the proposed design, the state of the existing facility and the capacity of the metro to implement the solution. Subject to appropriate design and management

the risks are unlikely to be affect eligibility for Grant investment but should be screened to verify that there are no unacceptable adverse risks.

(iii) Habitat loss and other biodiversity impacts caused by civil construction works

Most of the civil works proposed under the Grant are likely to be on land which is owned or under the control of the metros, such as existing servitudes and rights of way, and existing municipal sites for water treatment, sewage treatment, solid waste disposal and electrical supply. Where existing old or outdated infrastructure is replaced, this will typically be within the same footprint as the existing infrastructure or at least within land already zoned for that purpose and controlled by the councils. In this case, it is unlikely that any significant biodiversity risks related to habitat disturbance or threatened species would occur. In cases where major infrastructure is proposed in new locations it is possible that impacts on areas of conservation significance or threatened species could occur, but these risks are expected to be low for the following reasons:

- The legal framework through NEMA and NEM:BA and other strategic plans such as the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) provide a sound basis for the management of biodiversity in relation to spatial development in rural and urban areas
- Associated guidelines, standards and mapping are highly developed (see for example CBAs and ecological support areas as defined by SANBI and DFFE)
- Cities have all developed Biodiversity Action Plans or similar documents that are founded on the National legislation and NBSAP and which provide the spatial basis for the cities' Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs).

Thus, for any activities in urban areas that do not trigger NEMA authorizations, due to NEMA exclusions, or other National authorizations, the planning framework is sufficient to ensure that infrastructure is unlikely to be proposed in areas of high biological sensitivity and, if so, can be effectively screened on the basis of existing and readily available information.

4.3 Program Social Benefits

4.3.1 Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)

(i) Context

South Africa implements a free basic water policy by providing 6,000 liters of water per household per month without charge. As indicated this policy is part of the broader Free Basic Services initiative, aimed at improving the living conditions of low-income households. Implementation parameters are as follows:

- **Funding:** The national government allocates funds to municipalities to cover the cost of providing free basic water to eligible households as per the Free Basic Water Implementation Strategy.
- **Eligibility:** Households in metropolitan areas that are registered as indigent (low-income) are eligible for the free water allocation.
- **Infrastructure:** Municipalities are responsible for ensuring that the necessary infrastructure is in place to deliver water to these households. This includes maintaining and upgrading water supply systems.

- **Monitoring and Reporting:** Municipalities are required to monitor water usage and report on the delivery of free basic water to ensure that the policy is being effectively implemented and that the allocated funds are being used appropriately.

In addition, the Masibambane Water Services Sector Support Program has been in operation since 2001 and is currently in its first phase of operations. This focuses on capacity building, improving water supply infrastructure, and enhancing service delivery. The Program is managed by the DWS but involves multiple partners, including the Department of Provincial and Local Government (DPLG), the South African Local Government Association (SALGA), and external funders.

While a national policy and approach is in place the Municipalities have a degree of freedom to apply their own approach and standards. These is typically expressed via their Integrated Development Plan (IDP) or in an Expanded Social Package (ESP). The Free Basic Services Indigent Support Policy (as Amended 2023-2024) is also in place to give guidance. This was developed by the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA) in collaboration with other relevant government departments and stakeholders.

Although the recommended free basic water policy suggests 6,000 liters of water, for all households, the municipalities, within the policy have altitude as to how to determine applicability. Almost all municipalities require, at least in theory, a level of indigency to be demonstrated to qualify for free basic water. Further, the amount of free water allocated differs among municipalities. The free amount allocated can also differ based on demonstrated bands of indigency demonstrated by households. For example, the City of Johannesburg has three bands of indigency recognized within their ESP. and allocates up to 15,000 liters of free basic water per household per month to registered indigent households in the most impoverished band. The City of Cape Town allocates 15,000 liters of free basic water per household per month to registered indigent households and 10,500 liters of free sanitation services. The City of Tshwane allocates 12,000 liters of free basic water per month to registered indigent households. The Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality allocates 8,000 liters of free basic water per month to registered indigent households.

(ii) Social Benefits

The bulk of the Capex funding is not linked to activities that would normally trigger significant environmental risks and negative impacts. The program description in Section 1 summarizes the key objectives of the MTSP. The governance and financial reforms that are proposed for the water sector will underpin improvements in reliability and maintenance of water infrastructure. The Bank's technical teams, in consultation with the participating Government Departments and metros, have identified the drivers behind the poor institutional and financial performance and the initial actions are designed to correct these.

All of the municipalities within the program are, to a lesser or greater degree, subject to service delivery failures within the water sector. These often result in protests and social unrest as communities express their frustration and dissatisfaction. Protests sometimes become violent. As such, improving municipal water and sanitation service delivery, and securing the promised free basic access, has social and economic advantages, including the following:

- More reliable water and sanitation services improve living conditions, contributing to overall well-being and dignity.

- Access to clean water and sanitation reduces the spread of waterborne diseases, leading to healthier communities. Preventing water-related diseases reduces healthcare costs and the economic burden on families and the healthcare system.
- Improved sanitation facilities, particularly for women and girls, promote gender equality by providing safe and private spaces, reducing the risk of gender-based violence.
- Efficient water and sanitation services support economic activities, leading to job creation and economic development while improved infrastructure will attract investment and development projects, boosting local economies as well as leading to savings that can be passed on to consumers. This is particularly critical in the municipalities that are at risk. The failing water infrastructure in Johannesburg is a key regional and national, economic risk. Emergency measures, such as water tankers and temporary solutions, are often more expensive than maintaining a stable water infrastructure. Further, as has been made evident coastal municipalities – notably eThekweni - are losing significant revenue because of the continued capacity constraints inherent in their wastewater treatment works. Sewage discharge into the ocean is one of the factors having a considerable impact on tourism numbers and the economic sustainability of eThekweni.

4.3.2 Electricity (Results Area 2)

(i) Context

South Africa has a Free Basic Electricity (FBE) policy. The policy was developed by the Department of Minerals and Energy (now the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy - DMRE) in 2003. The aim is to support low-income (indigent) households by ensuring they have access to basic electricity for essential needs such as lighting, media access, ironing, and boiling water. The policy is implemented by Eskom in collaboration with local municipalities. To implement the process the indigent households are identified by local municipalities. The municipalities include these households in a list of FBE beneficiaries and submit the list to Eskom, enabling the beneficiaries to collect their FBE vouchers on a monthly basis from Eskom vending outlets. The maximum amount allowed by ESKOM is between 50kWh and 60kWh per household, depending on the municipality of residence. The customer is then charged for anything used above this limit.

The costs of the Free Basic Electricity (FBE) policy in South Africa are covered by the national government through the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE)

There are several limitations that have been identified with the system.⁵⁷ These can be summarized as follows:

- Once an indigent household has use up their free electricity allowance, they must pay for the rest of their usage at whatever the approved tariff rate is. If the household is on a pre-paid meter, they have visibility as to when they have used up your free electricity. However, households with conventional meters will not necessarily be aware of this

Accessibility to this free basic electricity, is unevenly applied. A 2021 report found that over a six-year period, about R38.3 billion disbursed through the scheme failed to reach the intended recipients. This

⁵⁷ <https://greeneconomyjournal.com/explainer/role-of-free-electricity-in-south-africas-just-transition/?form=MG0AV3>.

situation is only getting worse. While the number of indigent households officially funded is rising, the number receiving the benefit is falling.⁵⁸

Some of the municipalities tasked with administering the scheme have created barriers to access. Indigent households struggle with the bureaucracy involved, especially if they face a long journey to the relevant office. Other barriers include the requirement to reapply on a regular basis, and the need to access a smartphone to use the free electricity code.

One of the key findings of the Ledger (2021) report is that current free basic electricity situation contradicts the goals of South Africa's pro-poor transformation agenda, which emphasizes the crucial role of local government in delivering these objectives, as well as the original policy intentions for the developmental role of energy in a post-apartheid society. These outcomes also risk undermining the decarbonization targets being pursued in the shift from coal to clean energy. By neglecting the realities of the energy distribution system, poorly implemented policy is effectively creating and reinforcing two parallel energy systems: one that is clean and based on renewable energy but is limited in accessibility, and another that is largely hidden, dirty, and dangerous, which remains the only option for a large number of the poor households.

(ii) Social Benefits

As with the water and sanitation Sector Capex funding is not linked to activities that would normally trigger significant environmental risks and negative impacts. And, also in common with the water and sanitation sector all of the municipalities within the program are, to a lesser or greater degree, subject to service delivery failures within the electricity sector. Given the supply issues driven by Eskom these are not as easily linked to municipal failures. However, improving the delivery of municipal electricity services has social and economic advantages, including the following:

The bulk of the interventions associated with the electricity sector would be

- Economic growth as reliable electricity supports industrial and commercial activities. Businesses can operate more efficiently without the disruptions caused by power outages, leading to increased productivity and profitability. A stable electricity supply makes the region more attractive to investors, fostering economic growth and development. All of these increase opportunities for job creation and incomes.
- Improved quality of life as consistent power supply enhances the quality of life for residents by ensuring access to essential services such as healthcare, education, and communication.
- Public Safety as adequate lighting and functioning infrastructure contribute to public safety and reduce crime rates.

4.3.3 Solid Waste (Results Area 3)

(i) Context

The primary focus of solid waste management Capex in the eight major metropolitan areas is currently centered on upgrading infrastructure to meet permit and licensing requirements. Key improvements

⁵⁸ Ledger, T (2021); "Broken Promises: Electricity access for low-income households – good policy intentions, bad trade-offs and unintended consequences". Public Affairs Research Institute.

include installing landfill fencing, weighbridges, and repairing systems for stormwater and leachate management, such as pumps and monitoring wells. Additionally, some metros are introducing upgrades like fuel theft monitors and route optimization trackers for vehicle fleets.

Several municipalities, including Mangaung, Cape Town, Nelson Mandela Bay, Johannesburg, and Buffalo City, are prioritizing the acquisition and upgrading of onsite waste management equipment, such as dozers and excavation vehicles, to meet rising demand and address potential new or regional greenfield⁵⁹ developments for waste disposal sites. There is also a widespread push to develop or enhance transfer stations, enabling efficient waste compaction for transport to licensed disposal sites via bulk evacuation vehicles. Plans are underway to establish material recovery facilities featuring manual and mechanical sorting systems to separate waste and recover recyclables effectively.

In terms of the requirement for additional waste disposal sites, the City of Johannesburg has identified this as an urgent need in the Midrand/northern districts.

Greater detail as to the situation with respect to waste pickers and the approach followed by individual municipalities is included in Annexure 12.

(ii) Social Benefits

The social benefits of efficient and effective waste management are relatively self-evident but include:

- Improved public health through reduced pollution and carbon/methane emissions leading to cleaner air and water.
- Enhanced quality of life as cleaner environments contributes to a better outcome for residents, promoting well-being and community pride
- Savings, as the cost of waste management with enhanced efficiency, is ultimately reduced and this can be passed on to the customer base.
- Economic growth and a more efficient circular economy as efficient waste management can stimulate local economies by creating new businesses and industries related to recycling and waste processing.
- Community involvement as effective waste management encourages community participation in recycling programs and environmental initiatives, fostering a sense of responsibility and cooperation.
- Resource conservation is promoted by recycling and reusing materials and will help to conserve natural resources, reducing the need for raw material extraction and promoting sustainability.
- Job creation as waste management activities, such as collection, sorting, and recycling, create job opportunities and boost local employment rates, particularly among vulnerable and impoverished members of communities.

⁵⁹ It is unlikely that major greenfield landfill sites, if proposed, would meet the eligibility requirements for the MTSP since they would fall within the exclusion category of high environmental and social risk. Such infrastructure would probably be financed through the parallel financial commitments of the metros themselves.

The last of these listed benefits is of critical importance. The role that waste pickers play in the environmental management has been well documented in South Africa. It is reported that they are responsible for recycling up to 90% of plastic and packaging waste.⁶⁰

This reduces the waste that ends up in landfills and helps mitigate pollution. By diverting recyclable materials from landfills, waste pickers contribute to a cleaner environment and help conserve natural resources, and in so doing earn an income. Their efforts also support the circular economy, which aims to reintegrate resources into the economy to foster sustainable growth. The Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) estimates that between 60,000 and 90,000⁶¹ informal waste pickers are active and support both direct and indirect jobs in the downstream recycling and manufacturing sectors, saving municipalities between R300 million and R750 million annually in landfill costs, often at minimal expense to the government. This not only benefits the environment but also creates economic opportunities and improves livelihoods for the waste pickers themselves. These livelihoods sustain an otherwise economically inactive element of South Africa growing unemployed. People involved in waste picking are among the most - typically urban – poor. While highly variable, reports indicate that the waste pickers monthly income is around R 2000, or less than half the statutory minimum wage. Research indicates that women in particular are able to exploit the opportunities afforded by the waste picker sector and make up a substantial portion of the informal waste picker workforce.⁶² However women waste pickers typically earn significantly less per month than men and experience worse chronic health outcomes and experience exposure to personal safety and security.

Although they make critical contributions, waste pickers in South Africa largely remain politically and socially marginalized. They are often excluded from recycling and waste management decision-making processes. In recognition of this there are several efforts to integrate waste pickers into a more formalized overall waste management process. These efforts include the Waste Picker Integration Guideline produced by the DFFE and the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI) as well as the official South African Waste Picker Registration System (SAWPRS). This Guideline and its corresponding registration platform aim to improve the working conditions and livelihoods of waste pickers by integrating them into formal waste management system.⁶³

Further the recently promulgated Extended Producer Responsibility (EPR) Regulations require producers to take responsibility for the entire lifecycle of their products, including waste management. The regulations include initiatives to support waste pickers and integrate them into the recycling value chain.⁶⁴ Specifically the regulations ensure that waste pickers are recognized as key stakeholders in EPR schemes and producers are required to include them in their collection and recycling processes. This inclusion is aimed at ensuring they receive fair compensation for their services. This enhanced remuneration and beneficiation is envisaged as being delivered through a Producer Responsibility Organization (PRO). The

⁶⁰ Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (2020) National Waste Management Strategy (NWMS).

https://www.dffe.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/2020nationalwaste_managementstrategy1.pdf?form=MGOAV3

⁶¹ Estimates of the number of active waste pickers differ substantially but a number of around 60 000 to 90 000 is most often quoted.

³ Wilson, K; Kootbodien, T; Made, T, et al. (2022) “Men and women waste pickers on landfills in Johannesburg, South Africa: Divergence in Health, and Socioeconomic Status.” International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health, Vol.95(2), pp.351-363

⁶³ Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries and Department of Science and Innovation (2020). “Waste picker integration guideline for South Africa: Building the Recycling Economy and Improving Livelihoods through Integration of the Informal Sector.” : Pretoria.

⁶⁴ Extended Producer Responsibility Regulations, 2020. GN 1184 in GG 43879 of 5 November 2020 [with effect from 5 May 2021].

PRO is defined in the Regulations as a non-profit organization established by producers to support the implementation of their extended producer responsibility scheme

Giving effect to the EPR and enabling the PRO is tied to a process of registration of waste pickers. Efforts to register waste pickers in South Africa are being spearheaded by several initiatives and organizations. Initiatives include the South Africa Waste Picker Registration System (SAWPRS), which aims to create a formal registry of waste pickers to ensure that they are recognized and compensated for their contributions.⁶⁵ Several pilot projects have been conducted in different regions to test and refine the registration system.⁶⁶

Various organizations, including the South African Waste Pickers Association (SAWPA) and the African Reclaimers Organization (ARO), work with government, industry, and academia to create policy changes that benefit waste pickers.

The implications of the process of formalized integration of the waste pickers into the overall waste management stream are envisaged as leading to both better remuneration as well as greater personal security and safety for those participating in the sector.

4.4 Program Social Risks and Impacts

4.4.1 Water and Sanitation (Results Area 1)

As indicated, there is a national policy approach to free basic water and sanitation services that is aimed at benefiting vulnerable households. This is executed at municipal level. In keeping with the intention of policy the municipalities interpret this beneficiation as being accessed through households' registration as indigent. There is some differential between the municipalities in terms of thresholds of what constitutes indigence. For example, the City of Cape Town defines a household as indigent based on the total household income. To qualify for indigent support, the total household income must be R7,500 or less per month.⁶⁷ For the City of Johannesburg, the level is R 6 087.⁶⁸ In addition to differences in qualification the benefits, as discussed above, also differ between municipalities.

It is expected that the system of subsidies/free services will remain in place to support the defined indigent, however potential standardization of what constitutes levels of indigency as well as the scale of benefits could compromise the existing access of those vulnerable (indigent) households who enjoy municipal benefits that are more than national policy. Raising the threshold of subsidy/free access could be counterproductive to broader program aims in undermining the sustainability of the metropolitan areas who cannot afford additional non-revenue service delivery.

Given that civil works are envisaged there may also be some displacement risk associated in the water and sanitation sector. Displacement or livelihood impacts are most likely to be associated with network system expansion and, to a lesser extent, rehabilitation and repair of water and/or sanitation infrastructure. It is not presently clear how much network expansion is envisaged but this is a possibility given the threshold expenditure for civil works is sufficient to allow substantial works. The repair of infrastructure in densely

⁶⁵ Cities Support Programme (CSP) in National Treasury, the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI), and UNIDO provided the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) and the University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) with financial support to develop and pilot the South Africa Waste Picker Registration System SAWPRS.

⁶⁶ World Bank (2023). "Supporting Waste Picker Registration & Integration: Insights From South Africa". Washington.

⁶⁷ <https://www.capetown.gov.za/City-Connect/apply/Financial-relief-and-rebates/Individuals/Apply-for-indigent-rates-relief>.

⁶⁸ [https://joburg.org.za/Pages/2020%20Notices/May/Expanded-Social-Package-\(ESP\)-Registration.aspx](https://joburg.org.za/Pages/2020%20Notices/May/Expanded-Social-Package-(ESP)-Registration.aspx).

populated settlements, particularly in cases where there has been encroachment onto municipal assets, or where re-routes are needed to accommodate efficient and cost-effective expansion or repair, may require some temporary or permanent physical displacement or loss of livelihood.

4.4.2 Electricity (Results Area 2)

As with the water sector it is expected that the system of subsidies/free services will remain in place to support the defined indigent, however potential standardization of what constitutes levels of indigency as well as the scale of benefits could compromise the existing access of those vulnerable (indigent) households who enjoy municipal benefits that are more than national policy. Raising the threshold of subsidy/free access could be counterproductive to broader program aims in undermining the sustainability of the metropolitan areas who cannot afford additional non-revenue service delivery. As with the water sector displacement or livelihood impacts are most likely to be associated with network system expansion and, to a lesser extent, rehabilitation and repair of electricity infrastructure. It is not presently clear how much network expansion is envisaged but this is a possibility given the threshold expenditure for civil work is sufficient to allow substantial works.

4.4.3 Solid Waste (Results Area 3)

As noted above, the bulk of Capex funding is not directed toward new infrastructural developments that would typically trigger social risks and negative impacts. However, two areas warrant further discussion and consideration. The first is the identification and development of additional waste disposal sites. It appears that while most municipalities are currently only prioritizing the rehabilitation or the construction of new cells on existing landfills rather than new greenfield development, the City of Johannesburg has identified a need for additional or regional disposal sites.

However, the Concept Note states that *“No activities of high environmental and social risk will be financed. Certain types of infrastructure will be considered ineligible and placed put on a “negative” (or prescribed) investment list – these will include infrastructure items that are likely to have a significant negative social or environmental impact(s), such as construction of new landfill sites.”* This, as stated, rules out the funding of infrastructural development of this type. However, expansion of sites is not necessarily prohibited, and this may trigger social risks, including displacement.

The second potential issue is located within the risks associated with an inadequately managed rollout of the process of integration of waste pickers into the mainstream waste management environment. A great deal of research, both academic as well as Bank sponsored has recently been carried out to investigate the nature of the waste picker sector, the value that it adds to the waste management sector as well as the potential risks and challenges that it faces. Recent detailed analysis includes:

- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development / The World Bank (2023) Supporting Waste Picker Registration and Integration: Insights for South Africa.
- Global Alliance for Incinerator Alternatives (GAIA) (2021) Strengthening Waste Picker Organizing in Africa

Further, as indicated in Section 4.3.3. a set of regulation and guidelines have been promulgated by the state aimed at improving the working conditions and livelihoods of waste pickers by integrating them into formal waste management system. Critical is the Extended Producer Responsibility Regulations (EPR), 2020 published as GN 1184 in GG 43879 of 5 November 2020 [with effect from 5 May 2021].

Civic entities and directed waste picker organizations are a powerful collective in south Africa that act to safeguard the role that the sector plays. Key entities include:

- South African Waste Pickers Association (SAWPA) constituted in 2009 as a national movement to represent waste pickers across all nine provinces in South Africa.
- African Reclaimers Organization (ARO) that is based in Johannesburg, ARO and is a collective of waste reclaimers working to assert their rights and improve their working conditions. ARO is a membership-based democratic organization of reclaimers working in residential areas and landfills.
- Hlanganani MaAfrika Waste Picker as a cooperative that brings together waste pickers to collectively improve their economic opportunities.
- Ikageng Ditamating as an organization focused on supporting waste pickers through various initiatives. Previously operated as two separate groups – Ikageng was made up of women and older men collecting paper and plastic and Ditamating was made up of younger men collecting metals it was decided to unify and agreed that as a common organization all reclaimers would be able to collect all materials with profits to be shared equally.
- The International Alliance of Waste Pickers is a global network that includes South African organizations, representing waste pickers worldwide.

Recent criticism of the perceived poor practical outcomes of the EPR, as managed by the PRO, is an example.⁶⁹ The critique is largely levelled at the alleged inability of the PRO to proceed with the registration system and disburse the funds collected via the EPR levy into the hands of waste pickers. A failed system could lead to mistrust of the process and failure to increase waste picker remuneration from current low levels of return. Suspicions of the capture of the benefits of the EPR levy by existing elites and marginalization of the current waste pickers could exacerbate social tension and conflict.

Linked to this is potentially greater social conflict within the ranks of the waste pickers as they compete for a resource declining in real value. The possibility for social conflict within the increasingly resource contested nature of the South African marginalized classes should not be dismissed. There are indications that tensions within, and between, waste pickers as they compete for resources are both prevalent and increasing. For example, at the Mangaung landfill site in Bloemfontein, local waste pickers have reported being displaced and threatened by groups of undocumented immigrants, allegedly primarily from Lesotho.⁷⁰ These conflicts often involve territorial disputes and criminal activities, leading to a dangerous environment for all involved. Waste pickers are often stigmatized as either potentially threatening vagrants or even worse “quasi-criminal”, and as such private as well as municipally contracted security have a degree of latitude in dealing with them with force.⁷¹

The nature of the waste picker registration process and application of its outcomes also present a potential issue. The current system is designed to be transparent and open. Critically it is designed so as not to discriminate against foreign nationals. The registration system requires a national identification card/document but does not require that this is exclusively South African. As such, the registration system

⁶⁹ See <https://www.enca.com/shows/devi-wastepickers-treated-dirt-29-september-2024>.

⁷⁰ See <https://www.bloemfonteincourant.co.za/bfn-waste-pickers-troubles-escalate/> 11 January 2025.

⁷¹ See <https://globaldialogue.isa-sociology.org/articles/how-stigma-constrains-policies-waste-pickers-in-south-africa>.

is intentionally designed to be non-discriminatory, open and transparent. Despite this the degree to which this is positively translated into action at the level of the municipalities is not guaranteed. Over, or corrupted, regulation by municipal officials/agents within the waste integration process using their authority to discriminate against vulnerable people is a potential threat. Further constrained capacity within the municipality to be able to translate the intent of the EPR into actions that will protect and benefit the waste pickers is also evident.

To mitigate the bulk of the risks as set out above the World Bank (2023) report, as cited above, sets out key recommendations that could form the cornerstone of an approach to support the waste picker sector within the MTSP. Recommendations are in two parts. The first is the need for several components to be added to future registration campaigns and sets out the following:

- the inclusion of specific training on engaging municipal officials in future training for Registration Teams
- education for municipal officials and elected representatives on registration, integration, and their obligations to support these processes in their municipalities; and
- projects having a sufficient time frame to conduct registration as part of a broader process to establish collaborative waste picker-municipal integration working groups/committees that will develop and implement registration and integration.

Additional recommendations to enhance the overall integration process include the following:

- Training for waste pickers and other Registration Campaign Team members on how to approach and gain support from municipalities for registration should be included in the training of Registration Campaign Team members.
- SALGA should inform all municipalities of the need to support waste picker registration. It should also provide education to municipal officials and elected representatives on waste picker registration and integration to encourage their support for and proactive participation in registration and integration.
- A priority action should be the development and distribution of a series of short pamphlets for municipal officials and elected representatives on the roles of municipalities related to integration and registration, as well as how municipal registration and integration projects relate to EPR. These pamphlets could be followed by short, animated videos on each of these topics. Pamphlets and animated videos on the same topics should be produced in multiple languages for waste pickers.
- As per the Guideline on Waste Picker Integration for South Africa, registration should be part of a broader waste picker integration process overseen by a collaborative working group/committee for waste picker integration comprised of municipal and waste picker representatives.
- There is a need to develop a national Waste Picker Registration Campaign that will include education and capacity building and financial support from DFFE, SALGA and other concerned entities. This campaign should be developed through a participatory process in which the knowledge and insights of waste pickers are prioritized.

- DFFE, SALGA and PROs should provide financial and capacity building support to collaborative municipal waste picker integration working groups/ committees and their integration processes and programmes.

Lastly, the potential development of mechanization of the mooted transfer stations and material recovery facilities that would be established to consolidate and transfer waste for more efficient transportation to disposal facilities could impact the numerous waste pickers who rely on the sector for their livelihoods⁷². The development of a more mechanized approach towards solid waste management and transfer could potentially exacerbate social inequalities, as the mechanization approach will usher in greater benefits for formal workers in solid waste management, whilst potentially excluding informal, or even registered, waste pickers. Increased mechanization and efficiencies in solid waste management and transfer could potentially limit the availability of recyclable material for informal waste pickers, negatively impacting their economic livelihoods. However, this can also be potentially mitigated as evidence from South Africa and other contexts suggests that properly designed and implemented Material Recovery Facilities (MRF) can complement informal systems rather than exclude them. Many MRFs double as buy-back centers, offering improved logistics, better pricing for materials, and more professionalized engagement with waste pickers. They could even act as core waste picker registration and information centers, for example. MRFs also often end up dealing with lesser valuable plastics (e.g. "problem plastics") as a good share of polyethylene terephthalate, high density polyethylene, problem plastics, good quality cardboard, paper, glass and metal will have already "leaked" before reaching the MRF.

Greater detail as to the situation with respect to waste pickers and the approach followed by individual municipalities is included in Annexure 12 6.

⁷² Refer to Annexure 12 for a detailed analysis of the effects of the MTSP on waste pickers.

5 ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL, HEALTH AND SAFETY MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS ASSESSMENT IN RELATION TO THE CORE PRINCIPLES

5.1 Core Principle 1: General Principle of Environmental and Social Management

Program E&S management systems are designed to (a) promote E&S sustainability in the Program design; (b) avoid, minimise, or mitigate adverse impacts; and (c) promote informed decision-making relating to a Program's E&S effects

Applicability: Applicable, as the Program will support activities that have significant positive and some potentially negative E&S effects.

The MTSP is designed to improve the E&S sustainability of Metro Trading Services and impacts are expected to be overwhelmingly positive. The MTSP proposes measures to bring about institutional and financial reforms that will turn the Metro Trading Services into viable business entities, capable of providing essential services in accordance with the Metros' constitutional and other core legal obligations. Based on the requirements of the Constitution, the National Development Plan and the (National) Integrated Urban Development Framework, the IDPs and SDFs of all MTSP metros recognize the central role that municipal services play in a sustainable living environment for their citizens. The MTSP service delivery objectives are therefore fully aligned with South Africa's urban policy and legal framework at all levels of Government. Recent case law in South Africa has shown that the failure to meet this fundamental constitutional and other legal obligations can be challenged in court, resulting in redress or, if the municipality fails to do so, the dissolution of the Council and appointment of an Administrator.⁷³

The design of the MTSP is still in progress and will be tailored to meet individual metro's circumstances. In addition to the obvious social benefits of functional municipal services for all urban communities, particularly low income communities and vulnerable households, the program's institutional and financial reforms will also result in a significant reduction in organic pollution of river systems affected by raw and insufficiently treated sewage spillages and discharges, reduced pollution caused by the illegal dumping of municipal (general) and hazardous wastes, facilitation of the circular economy through improved application of the waste management hierarchy, reduced air and water pollution through better management and monitoring of municipal landfills and WWTWs, and acceleration of progress to establish extended producer responsibility for defined solid wastes, as required by regulations under the National Environmental Management: Waste Act (NEM:WA). Wastes from the plastics, electronics, electrical, lighting and paper/packaging sectors fall within the ambit of the regulations.

It will be necessary for the design team to include performance indicators that capture the key social and environmental risks and benefits of the program. Environmental risks and (negative) impacts are expected to be relatively minor, associated with the management of civil and electrical rehabilitation works in the three service sectors, although in the absence of firm proposed activities for each sector it is not possible to assess some activities that could result in significant risk and impact. For this reason, the ESSA recommends that proposals for MTSP grant finance are evaluated for eligibility against the under the World Bank PforR Policy requirements and the following thresholds:

⁷³ Declaratory Order of the High Court, 15 August, 2024. S172(1)(a) of the Constitution -breach of duties of municipality of s52(2) and s153(a) of the Constitution. The order applies to Matjhabeng Municipality in Free State Province.

Proposed activities which require investigation to determine whether it falls below the PforR Policy for exclusions includes:

- Incineration or co-processing of municipal landfill waste
- Construction and operation of greenfield (new) WWTWs or RWTPs with a capacity exceeding 300 Ml/day
- Upgrading or rehabilitation of hazardous waste landfills
- Greenfield hazardous landfills
- Construction of high voltage transmission lines or new HV substations
- Construction of any infrastructure that impacts on habitats that are defined by the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) as having 'high' sensitivity
- Construction of dams or major in-stream reservoirs
- Any activity which results in resettlement with significant adverse impacts
- Upgrading / replacement of existing substations, mini-sub, and electrical infrastructure within municipal rights of way, servitudes and municipal-owned land

To facilitate the management of environmental and social risk, each Metro should develop its own Environmental and Social Management System (ESMS) as previously mentioned, with emphasis on key risks and impacts, and the systems, procedures, capacity and training necessary to manage them. Each Metro must also ensure, through the implementation of its ESMS that all contractors and subcontractors involved in civil works have the necessary capacity and training to manage risks to their employees and the affected public.

5.2 Core Principle 2: Natural Habitats and Physical Cultural Resources

Program E&S management systems are designed to avoid, minimise, or mitigate adverse impacts on natural habitats and physical cultural resources resulting from the Program. Program activities that involve the significant conversion or degradation of critical natural habitats or critical physical cultural heritage are not eligible for PforR financing.

Applicability: Applicable as the program will support the strengthening of performance of metro trading services, with accompanying ecological benefits resulting from more efficient use of natural resources, promotion of the circular economy and reduced pollution. No negative impacts associated with the program are expected, as all physical activities will be within existing municipal infrastructure footprints.

The restriction of civil works to mainly involving rehabilitation of existing old, failing and undercapacity infrastructure within the metro areas minimizes the risk of unavoidable adverse impacts on sensitive natural habitats and physical cultural resources. For linear infrastructure, such as water pipelines, sewage pipelines and distribution power lines; maintenance, repair and upgrading works could extend beyond existing rights of way and result in impacts over the construction period but are in most cases unlikely to be disqualifying under PforR eligibility requirements, subject to the application of good international industrial practice (GIIP). Since specific activities under the program are still being considered by the exact designs of the interventions and are not yet available for full assessment in the ESSA, it is recommended that the E&S screening of the proposed infrastructure development are conducted to determine its eligible under Bank PforR Policy requirements and thresholds set out in the ESSA. High risk projects would be excluded from grant financing. Should any substantial risks be identified by the screening in relation to

natural habitats or cultural resources, these should be flagged, and if the activity is continued, should be brought to the attention of the EAP responsible for the assessment undertaken as part of the NEMA /NEM:WA regulatory process. In cases where municipalities are exempt from NEMA-related licensing, they would need to demonstrate competent oversight of work being done internally or by appointed contractors.

The operation of civil works plant and infrastructure designed to process or contain polluted wastewater or landfill gas may in itself result in some pollution risk. Such proposals would need to be individually evaluated for PforR eligibility when preliminary designs become available. A good example includes methods to manage landfill leachate which is a common problem at many of the metro landfills, which are poorly monitored and are likely to be causing both and environmental pollution and public health risk. The design solution may result in an overall reduction in pollution and health and safety risk, but depending on the process that is proposed, could result in additional risks involving air quality and effluent disposal that would need to be managed.

5.3 Core Principle 3: Public and Worker Safety

Program E&S management systems are designed to protect public and worker safety against the potential risks associated with (a) the construction and/or operation of facilities or other operational practices under the Program; (b) exposure to toxic chemicals, hazardous wastes, and otherwise dangerous materials under the Program; and (c) reconstruction or rehabilitation of infrastructure located in areas prone to natural hazards.

Applicability: Applicable, as the Program will support activities that will involve civil construction, potentially affecting public and worker safety.

The absence of a single point of accountability in the Metro Trading Services has resulted in some opacity around OHS performance, as with other aspects of the relationship between the metros and their Trading Services, with many of them being unable to fully distinguish their responsibilities for OHS costs, OHS management and oversight, safety equipment, safety training, reporting, auditing and corrective action from the broader municipal responsibilities and performance. **The reforms proposed by the Program are likely to significantly improve MTS OHS accountability at all levels**, making each service fully responsible for managing, monitoring and reporting on its own OHS performance, even though other cross-cutting entities within the municipality, such as health services or corporate services, may continue to be involved and provide support. The MTSP does not propose to restructure the chain of responsibility for health and safety services within metros, but rather to ensure that the Metro Trading Services take responsibility for managing, reporting and acting upon their own data, integrating where necessary with supporting metro units.

A practical result of financial and institutional reforms and associated operational improvements will be quicker response times to the repair of old, damaged and vandalized infrastructure, which will reduce overall public risk. Regarding SWM, infrastructure upgrades with improved security (PIAP indicators M4, S9 – Annexure 13) will ensure that unauthorized access to waste disposal sites is eliminated, reducing the public risk. Improved removal of waste from premises and reduced illegal dumping, with quicker response times to cleanup, will also minimize public health risks, particularly in informal settlements where waste collection has been almost non-existent (PIAP indicators S1, S2, S5 – Annexure 13).

The main risks directly associated with the program will be related to civil construction works. The nature of the civil construction activities that could be proposed using MTSP grant finance vary in scale from small works replacing old, damaged or leaking infrastructure, conducted by the municipalities' own dedicated work teams, to larger scale contract works, such as WWTWs or landfill rehabilitation, to a new general waste landfill or smaller WWTWs that would be likely to be built by experienced civil works contractors.

The implementation of effective health and safety management systems for workers and the public during MTSP infrastructure works will rest primarily with the municipalities and their service providers and contractors. Metros require their staff and contractors to comply with National Occupational Health and Safety legislation and regulations, municipal health and safety policies and guidelines, the status and enforcement of which varies significantly between the MTSP municipalities. South Africa has rigorous worker health and safety legislation set out in the Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) of 1993 and Compensation for Occupational injuries and Diseases Act (COIDA) of 2020, as well as specific regulations for the management of construction contracts (Section 4.2 refers). Employers have an obligation to ensure a safe working environment and conduct regular risk assessments to identify potential hazards and implement measures to mitigate OHS risk. A basis for reporting of occupational injuries and diseases is set out and for compensating employees for any work-related incidents resulting in permanent disability. Employers must also have emergency procedures in place for incidents such as fires, medical emergencies and natural disasters. The Acts apply to all organizations, including Government at all levels, parastatals and private companies. A suite of regulations and standards under the Act provide specific control measures.

The metros and their contractors generally align their approach to the above requirements, which for the reconstruction and rehabilitation of existing Program infrastructure, as well as for new infrastructure, will serve as the primary legal drivers of performance. Any additional requirements for managing risk in civil/electrical contract works are typically included in the agreements between the municipality and the Metro Trading Services, or between the Metro Trading Services and their contractors.

None of the MTSP civil works proposals are likely to involve circumstances where there is a higher-than-average level of occupational health and safety risk, as it applies to the civil construction industry in South Africa.

If any of the civil works proposed by the metros involves potential worker exposure to hazardous or toxic wastes during construction or operation (the construction and operation of systems to manage municipal landfill leachate being an example), then appropriate health and safety measures to protect workers must be included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual for the facility.

For the Program to demonstrate compliance with the core principle of worker and public safety during construction projects, and during the operation of projects built under the Program, it is recommended that Metro Trading Services be required to:

- Develop and maintain an Environmental and Social Management System inclusive of health and safety requirements
- Employ a competent, trained, OHS manager to coordinate all aspects of OHS and community safety related to the MTS
- Demonstrate capability to manage OHS and community safety, in accordance with an analysis of the risks likely to be encountered during the works that are undertaken
- Have all construction workers sign a code of conduct that satisfies World Bank requirements

- Provide initial and ongoing safety training to employees, contractors and subcontractors to identify and minimize the risk of the tasks they undertake that could impact on their field staff or the public
- Provide accurate and prompt incident data to the metro’s corporate safety unit and to the MTSP
- Ensure that all contractors fully comply with the requirements of the OHS Act and its regulations for construction health and safety
- Prepare specific OHS procedures for the operation of works undertaken with financing from the MTSP, in line with GIIP, for inclusion where relevant in operations manuals.
- Develop and maintain an Emergency Preparedness and Response Plan which provides the framework for managing emergencies efficiently.

Each MTS must organize its health and safety systems to integrate effectively with requirements, guidelines and templates from the Metro; to fully comply with the regulations for contractors under the OHS Act; and to meet the health and safety requirements set out in the World Bank Group EHS Guidelines (2007). The ability of the Program to evaluate the effectiveness of OHS management improvement will depend on the proposed KPIs, which must provide a basis for evaluating the overall OHS performance of each Trading Service. These should include both leading and lagging indicators. Metro officials in the Trading Services will benefit from tailored capacity building interventions, in addition to support from the PMU, in the implementation of critical reforms across the governance, operational and financial thematic areas. The Technical Assistance (TA) and Capacity Building to be delivered by the PMU is envisaged to cover several focal areas, including tools for PIAP implementation, sector specific interventions, human resource and general operational support⁷⁴.

5.4 Core Principle 4: Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources

Program E&S systems manage land acquisition and loss of access to natural resources in a way that avoids or minimises displacement, and assists affected people in improving, or at minimum restoring, their livelihoods and living standards.

Applicability: Applicable as the rehabilitation, repair and expansion of infrastructure in the three MTSP sectors could trigger some displacement.

While most proposed infrastructure development under the MTSP is likely to be brownfields, construction of greenfield infrastructure is not excluded, and projects such as an expanded or new landfill site or a bulk water storage reservoir could be submitted for PforR financing. In such cases, or in cases of urban renewal in informal settlements, displacement or loss of livelihood could occur, the risk of which would depend on circumstances and the way it is managed.

Displacement or livelihood impacts are most likely to be associated with network system expansion and, to a lesser extent, rehabilitation and repair of MTSP infrastructure. It is not presently clear how much network expansion is envisaged. The repair of infrastructure in densely populated settlements, particularly in cases where there has been encroachment onto municipal assets, or where re-routes are needed to accommodate efficient and cost-effective expansion or repair, may require some temporary or permanent physical displacement or loss of livelihood.

⁷⁴ Referenced in the Project Appraisal Document, February 12, 2025, pages 9&10

South Africa has legislation in place that would act as a primary safeguard that serves to ensure that alternatives to displacement are considered prior to project authorization, and that vulnerable people without formal residential rights are not arbitrarily evicted. The Constitution of 1996 (Section 26 (3)) prevents arbitrary eviction and mandates that it is court ordered and only with sufficient demonstration of need. The Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act (Act 19 of 1998). This ensures also that eviction is governed by a court authorized process that is based on a demonstrated needs and describes methods for court process. The Housing Act & Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 makes provision for the National Housing Code of 2009. The Housing Code as a policy document sets out the need for local government (in this case the Metros) to provide emergency accommodation under defined circumstances. Section 2.3.1 sets out the conditions that would require emergency accommodation. Eviction of people without formal rights generated by need for development purposes would essentially fall under this provision.

Considering that any displacement or livelihood impacts are likely to be very limited or can be made limited by specificity in the PforR rules for the Program, the risk is considered moderate, subject to compliance with the requirements of the law. To ensure proper proactive management of the resettlement and livelihood recovery process the scale of the permissible scale of resettlement under PforR must be decided in consultation with National Treasury and the World Bank before a decision is taken to proceed.

South African legislation makes provision for compensation to be at market value, but it also considers other factors to ensure that compensation is just and equitable. The Expropriation Act 13 of 2024 specifies that compensation should reflect an equitable balance between the public interest and the interests of those affected. Factors considered include:

- The current use of property
- The history of the acquisition and use of property
- The market value of the property
- The extent of direct state investment and subsidy in the property
- The purpose of the expropriation

While this approach aims to ensure fairness in the expropriation process the law has yet to be tested and there are concerns, within some quarters, that the application of the law could compromise the principle of market or replacement value being the primary driving consideration for equitable compensation. The legislation does not allow for transitional expenses and/or livelihood restoration and additional resources would need to be mobilized to support the requirement so as to meet Bank principles. The previous Expropriation Act of 1975 (Section 12 (2)) made provision for an allowance in excess of the market determined amount of compensation to provide a “top up/disturbance allowance”. This was colloquially known as a “solatium”. In law, "solatium" refers to compensation or damages, especially for injury to the feelings or emotional distress, rather than for physical or financial harm. It's derived from the Latin word "solacium" meaning "solace" or "comfort. The current Act does not allow for such an amount. Section 12 (2) (a) states “In determining the amount of compensation to be paid in terms of this Act, the expropriating authority must not, unless there are special circumstances in which it would be just and equitable to do so, take account of the fact that the property has been taken without the consent of the owner or holder of a right”.

Further, the Expropriation Act 13 of 2024 does not make explicit the need to consider person who have no formal or customary rights over the land they occupy. Their right to consider rights of residence and

housing – as opposed to the land- would however be considered under the National Housing Code of 2009, as set out above. The Expropriation Act 13 of 2024 does not refer to the need for a grievance mechanism. Vulnerable people are not considered, as a distinct entity, by national legislation in the context of compensation for compulsory land acquisition.

5.5 Core Principle 5: Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups

Program E&S systems give due consideration to the cultural appropriateness of, and equitable access to, program benefits, giving special attention to rights and interests of Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities and to the needs or concerns of vulnerable groups.

Applicability: Applicable as Vulnerable entities may be exposed

In the context of South Africa, the indigenous groups, as defined in the World Bank's ESF, comprise approximately 1% of the total population. Collectively, this group is known as Khoi-San and comprise the San and the Khoikhoi people. The main San groups live mostly in the Kalahari region, and parts of Kimberley, while the Khoikhoi, who include the Nama, live mainly in the Northern Cape Province; the Koranna live mainly in Kimberley and the Free State province; the Griqua in the Western Cape, Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, Free State and KwaZulu-Natal provinces; and the Cape Khoekhoe in the Western Cape and Eastern Cape, with growing pockets in the Gauteng and Free State provinces. While people of this heritage may live within the MTS areas, their traditional livelihood and way of life is not linked to the functioning of the municipal services and is unlikely to be impacted by Program activities.

However, based on initial screening of program activities, there are other groups such as women, undocumented foreigners, retired workers and unemployed youth, who do not meet the Indigenous Peoples criteria but are present in the MTSP areas, and due to cultural differences, may need additional support to benefit from the Program. The most likely activity where support would be needed is associated with the waste pickers. In common with some of the observations made in Section 4.3 and 4.4, the management of the municipalities to protect such people is not guaranteed. Some municipalities will have constrained capacity to translate the intent of the current waste picker integration guidelines into actions that will protect and benefit the vulnerable. The development of a common actionable approach that is consistent with the guidelines for waster picker integration into the formal waste management process is recommended. This should be developed in collaboration with all the participating metros.

Further, although vulnerable households enjoy access to subsidies for water, sanitation and electricity these are unevenly applied across the metropolitan areas. Although not explicit in the current format of the program, an embedded universal approach across the municipalities to subsidies/free services and a common matrix for measurement of satisfactory implementation potentially has vulnerability consequences.

It is expected that the system of subsidies/free services will remain in place to support disadvantaged groups, however the potential standardization could compromise the existing access of those vulnerable (indigent) households who enjoy municipal benefits that are in excess of national policy. Raising the threshold of subsidy/free access could be counterproductive to broader program aims in undermining the sustainability of the metropolitan areas who cannot afford additional non-revenue service delivery.

A recommended action to deal with the potential vulnerability aspect of potential re-alignment of the free basic services approach to water, sanitation and electricity is to develop a set of indicators that measure municipality performance against the policy intentions as set out in the Free Basic Services Indigent Support Policy and unlock incentives. A precursor to this would be a review of the performances of the eight municipalities and development of individual action plans to address weaknesses or enhance strengths.

5.6 Core Principle 6: Social Conflict

Program E&S systems avoids exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial disputes.

Applicability: Applicable, as there is a history and current context of social conflict resulting from use of security forces as well as resource competition fuelled attacks and competition for access to income generating resources within both the water and solid waste sectors

The physical infrastructure to be supported will not be in post-conflict areas or areas subject to territorial disputes. However, as discussed in Section 4.4, there are aspects of the proposed activities that, if not managed at a municipal level, have the potential to replicate or promote inherent social conflicts. An example is the dispute between waste pickers and the City of eThekweni at the Bufflesdraai landfill site. This issue is typically driven by instructions given to municipal security staff to protect the landfill site against perceived threats by waste pickers. Although not strictly at odds with a reformist agenda, as proposed by the Program, the lack of alignment between the vision that is expressed by some municipal officials and a waste picker integration approach could replicate conflict for resources in the waste sector. This is potentially exacerbated, again at a municipal level, by some municipalities - or at least some staff – deliberately mis-using the waste picker registration process as an opportunity to restrict waste picker activities. Played out against a background of intensified competition for resources and increased opportunity for elite capture this could increase social conflict in competition for waste-generated resources and revenues. Mitigation for this impact is to ensure that there is a joint vision across and within the municipalities of the role that waste pickers can play in an integrated overall waste management system, coupled with clear procedural guidelines linked to job descriptions (including security guards, effective training of all personnel, appropriate ongoing communication with waste pickers and a monitoring and auditing mechanism that provides the opportunity for adaptive management.

An unintended consequence of improved security of water supply could be increased social conflict linked to the so called “water tanker mafia”. There are reports of some water tank owners sabotaging water infrastructure so as to further their water sale operations within poorer and marginal communities. Better security of water supply could increase conflict between these criminal elements and municipal staff who combine with the community members who try to protect the infrastructure.

5.7 Summary SWOT Analysis

Table 5-1 provides a summary of the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and risks of the MTSP program in the South African context. While the Table 5-1 makes an overall assessment of the expected E&S risk under each Core Principle, it is emphasized that these ratings are provisional and that individual proposals, once fully defined by the metros, are screened for environmental and social risk before financing is approved under the program.

Table 5-1. SWOT analysis of environmental and social risk of the MTSP rated according to the ESSA Core Principles

Core Principle 1: Promote E&S Sustainability, avoid, minimize, mitigate adverse impacts and promote informed decision making	
Environmental and social management procedures and processes are designed to:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) promote environmental and social sustainability in Program design. b) avoid, minimize, or mitigate against adverse impacts; and promote informed decision-making relating to a Program’s environmental and social effects. 	
Program procedures will:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Operate within an adequate legal and regulatory framework to guide environmental and social impact assessments at the Program level. b) Incorporate recognized elements of environmental and social assessment good practice, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • early screening of potential effects of projects with potentially significant risks. • consideration of strategic, technical, and site alternatives (including the “no action” alternative). • explicit assessment of potentially induced cumulative, and trans-boundary impacts. • identification of measures to mitigate adverse environmental or social impacts that cannot be otherwise avoided or minimized. • clear articulation of institutional responsibilities and resources to support implementation of plans. • Responsiveness and accountability through stakeholder consultation, timely dissemination of Program information, and responsive grievance redress measures. 	
Applicability –APPLICABLE	
<p>Core Principle 1 is relevant and applicable in terms of environmental, health and social (EHS) risks affecting the Program. The program will initially fund institutional and financial reforms in Metro Trading Services. The benefits of these reforms across each service sector (water & sanitation, waste, electricity) will be improved performance at all levels, including overall environmental and social sustainability of the service, such as improved service provision to customers, reduction in inequitable service distribution, and reduced pollution (e.g.: illegal dumping, poor wastewater quality, groundwater pollution from landfills).</p>	
<p>STRENGTHS of existing laws, systems and procedures in support of sustainability goals are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Environmental legislation governing the screening of projects, determination of applicable IA instruments, requirements for public consultation and licensing is comprehensive. • Specific requirements in environmental legislation ensures most infrastructure upgrades and closure (decommissioning) of facilities are subject to IA processes, including screening and an appropriate level of assessment 	<p>WEAKNESSES in existing laws, systems and procedures in support of sustainable goals are:⁷⁵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The capacity of some of the Metros to manage E&S risks is limited due to lack of adequate and qualified staff, budgetary constraints, limited understanding of the law by public servants and the public. • Some of the Metros lack enough and qualified human capacity and adequate budgets to support Environmental and Social Management Systems (ESMS) of the Program.

⁷⁵ Note that the MTSP is designed to address many of these weaknesses.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conditions of authorization under NEMA-related (NEMA, NEM:WA, NEM:AQA and NWA) legislation are typically comprehensive and include general and specific compliance requirements. • There is provision in law for penalties for continual non-compliance and for suspension and replacement of the management authority in severe cases. • There is evidence of increasingly effective monitoring and application of the law by Inspectors (Blue Drop, No Drop, Green Drop), and DFFE (through the Environmental Management Inspectorate (Green Scorpions) • All metros are required to provide quarterly updated data on solid waste disposal into the National data management system, administered by DFFE • Prosecutions are becoming more common for continued non-conformance (strengthening of National regulatory bodies) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is insufficient consistent capacity building of Metros on ESHS management to ensure compliance to license requirements and other required environmental and social standards when implementing their mandates. • In some Metros, financial constraints affecting service provision results in low priority for ESHS management / pollution control / security of infrastructure. • There is insufficient penalty for lack of adherence to license conditions, national environmental regulations and good practices in water, sanitation and waste management, including e-waste management. • Public participation is in place in most Metros but often at a fairly superficial level. Fully articulated GRMs with meaningful responses is widely lacking. • Weak coordination in some Metros to deliver their respective ESHS mandates is due to limited financial and human resources, lack of interdepartmental coordination, silo mandates, and no clear entity/single point of accountability to oversee the coordination and take responsibility for results. • There are long delays in data gathering and evaluation of compliance by regulatory authorities, meaning that action plans respond to outdated information
<p>OPPORTUNITIES arising from the MTSP program:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assisting implementing agencies to prepare and implement appropriate protocols on stakeholder engagement, grievance management, inclusion of VMGs and other disadvantaged groups etc., screening checklists, manuals, etc., to comply with the ESHS legislation • Assisting implementing agencies to integrate ESHS requirements into procurement processes • Developing and including specific ESHS KPIs that must be monitored and audited • Encouraging compliance by linking E&S performance to submission of credible monitoring results for fund disbursement • Allowing E&S performance improvement in stages in acknowledgement of the need for institutional and financial reforms to be accomplished first (as a root cause of poor ESHS performance) • Including in Trading Service institutional reforms a requirement to manage E&S performance under the Metro ESMS. • Ensuring that independent auditors appointed to review Trading Services performance include skilled professionals competent to verify performance in relation to E&S KPIs (e.g.: pollution indicators, compliance with EA instruments) 	<p>RISKS arising from the MTSP program :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inadequate mainstreaming of existing ESHS risk management in the E&S protocols to be developed under the Program. • Insufficient allocation of budgets and human resource capacity for ESHS risk management during Program planning and implementation. • Limited supervision, monitoring and reporting on ESHS risk management impeding identification and execution of corrective action plans. <p>LEVEL OF RISK: MODERATE</p>

Core Principle 2: Natural habitats and physical cultural resources	
Environmental and social management procedures and processes are designed to avoid, minimize or mitigate adverse impacts on natural habitats and physical cultural resources	
Applicability –APPLICABLE Core Principle 2 is considered applicable mainly in the positive sense, since the program is designed to improve metro performance across a range of pollution indicators, such as effluent quality from WWTWs and management of landfill leachate from municipal landfills. Most activities will take place in areas owned or under the control of the municipalities.	
STRENGTHS of existing laws, systems and procedures that protect habitats of conservation significance, threatened species and biodiversity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> National regulations and license conditions for major polluting infrastructure are in place National Government is increasingly involved in monitoring performance of major polluters, including Metro services such as WWTWs and landfills, and are intervening when non-compliance is established through monitoring and auditing. Protection of areas of significant biodiversity / conservation value is enshrined in NEMA. It is a requirement to utilize the National Web-based Environmental Screening Tool as a first step in NEMA applications. The screening tool provides maps of all areas of conservation significance, countrywide. Stakeholder involvement, including an active and independent media, NGOs, universities and other stakeholders are vocal in South Africa and respond rapidly to proposed developments that have significantly negative biodiversity / pollution implications. 	WEAKNESSES of existing laws, systems and procedures that protect habitats of conservation significance, threatened species and biodiversity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> National Government remains under-resourced to monitor and act upon failure of metros to meet license conditions with respect to pollution Poor institutional capacity of some metros to identify and manage pollution hazards is caused by failing/undercapacity wastewater and landfill infrastructure Inadequate prioritisation and funding of appropriate, sustainable, engineering solutions to bring wastewater, water treatment residues (WTR), leachate discharges into line with license conditions and GIIP (most metros)
OPPORTUNITIES arising from the MTSP program: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Support of National Treasury and the environmental regulatory authorities (DFE, DWS) to ensure that any major infrastructure financed by the project is effectively screened for risks to the natural environment, complies with licensing requirements, and implements effective mitigation to minimize impacts. Encouragement of consistent, effective monitoring and evaluation of pollution control efficiency of WWTWs, disposal of water treatment residues, leachate discharges from landfills 	RISKS arising from the MTSP program: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insufficient allocation of budgets and human resource capacity for pollution risk management during Program planning and implementation Inadequate supervision of major brownfields civil works projects to manage pollution risks. Construction and operational risks if major potentially polluting projects are considered (e.g.: landfills, major WWTWs) <p>LEVEL OF RISK: MODERATE</p>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strengthening of pollution control performance through institutional and financial reforms, as a basis for operational improvement. • Encouragement of metros, in a staged process, to fully comply with license conditions related to pollution management • Improvement of the system of pollution monitoring through annual auditing of metro performance against results-based KPIs 	
---	--

<p>Core Principle 3: Public and Workers Safety</p>	
<p>Program E&S management systems are designed to protect public and worker safety against the potential risks associated with</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the construction and/or operation of facilities or other operational practices under the Program; b) exposure to toxic chemicals, hazardous wastes, and otherwise dangerous materials under the Program; and c) reconstruction or rehabilitation of infrastructure located in areas prone to natural hazards. 	
<p>Program procedures;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promotes community, individual, and worker health, safety, and security through the safe design, construction, operation, and maintenance of Program activities; or, in carrying out activities that may be dependent on existing infrastructure, incorporate safety measures, inspections, or remedial works as appropriate. • Promote measures to address child and forced labour. • Promote the use of recognized good practice in the production, management, storage, transport, and disposal of hazardous materials generated under the Program activities. • promotes the use of integrated pest management practices to manage or reduce pests or disease vectors, and provides training for workers involved in the production, procurement, storage, transport, use, and disposal of hazardous chemicals in accordance with international guidelines and conventions. • Include adequate measures to avoid, minimize, or mitigate community, individual, and worker risks when the Program activities are in areas prone to natural hazards such as floods, hurricanes, earthquakes, or other severe weather or climate events. 	
<p>Applicability –APPLICABLE</p> <p>Core Principle 3 is considered applicable as the program will involve the financing of some civil works contracts in which occupational health and safety must be managed. The program’s support of existing operations will be aimed at improving the performance of old and dysfunctional vehicles, equipment and infrastructure, which is expected to reduce any OHS risks for employees that currently exist.</p>	
<p>STRENGTHS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OHS legislation (OHSA, 1993) and associated regulations provide the management framework for OHS in South Africa • The OHSA requires the employer (including all Government employers) to provide and maintain a work environment that is safe and without risk to the health of employees 	<p>WEAKNESSES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aspects of community/public health are not covered adequately in South African legislation and practices. • OHS legislation does not apply to informal workers (e.g: waste pickers) • OHS Inspectors, empowered under the OSHA, concentrate on industry and generally neglect municipal compliance.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Construction regulations (Regulation 84, 2014) under the OHS Act provide comprehensive legal requirements for minimizing health and safety risks to workers involved in construction activities, specifying legal obligations for the primary contractor and the client. • Contractors must prepare a health and safety plan, which must be reviewed and updated during the progress of the contract; include a risk assessment to inform the health and safety plan; maintain a health and safety file; communicate effectively with workers about risks; • Employers must ensure that health and safety audits are undertaken at least every 30 days; corrective actions to clear audit findings must be implemented by the contractor • Contractors are required to appoint health and safety officers to assist in the oversight of health and safety on construction work sites. • For all projects exceeding 180 days of construction work, or involving more than 1800-person work-days, or exceeding a value of R13 million, a permit must be obtained from the Department of Labour before the start of works • All employers/contractors are required to register employees for compensation under the COIDA Act (Act 130 of 1993 as amended) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There are insufficient inspectors per capita to adequately cover all workers in South Africa. • The legislation is complex and not fully integrated. Recommendations to integrate the legislation have not yet been implemented • Workers are generally insufficiently aware of health and safety hazards, particularly concerning exposure to workplace safety in hazard-prone areas • Worker grievance mechanisms are generally functional through their safety representatives but are insufficiently channeled towards preventative rather than reactive safety measures. • Community forum meetings to discuss and collaborate on issues relating to municipal infrastructure (e.g.: landfill sites) are neglected by some metros. • Municipal transparency about incidents is inconsistent and in some instances poor⁷⁶.
<p>OPPORTUNITIES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide training to municipalities on OHS planning and implementation for large civil works • Provide guidelines / support to municipalities for small works conducted internally by municipal workers • Include specific KPIs in the program related to OHS performance on civil works funded by the project 	<p>RISKS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improper management and limited enforcement of public and worker safety resulting in physical injuries, including loss of life to the workers and public at and near construction sites. • Non-compliance by Implementing agencies, suppliers / consultants / contractors on OHS and community safety issues, and inaction by IAs to enforce OHS contractual obligations on civil works. • Inadequate worker and public safety provision for service renewal (e.g: water and sewer line replacement / upgrading; clearing of illegal dump sites) involving municipal teams <p>LEVEL OF RISK: MODERATE</p>

⁷⁶ For example, a recent incident (28 February, 2025) in which Pikitup, JHB Metro’s waste service provider, reversed over and killed a member of the public has been poorly communicated, with neither the Metro nor Pikitup responding to requests for information, resulting in a complaint lodged in Council by a local MP (James Lorimer, MP for Linden).

Core Principle 4: Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources	
Environmental and social management procedures and processes are designed to.	
Manage land acquisition and loss of access to natural resources in a way that avoids or minimizes displacement and assist affected people in improving or at the minimum resorting, their livelihoods and living standards	
Program procedures will:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Avoid or minimize land acquisition and related adverse impacts b) Identify and address economic or social impacts caused by land acquisition or loss of access to natural resources, including those affecting people who may lack full legal rights to resources they use or occupy c) Provide compensation sufficient to purchase replacement assets or equivalent value and to meet any necessary transitional expenses, paid before taking land or restricting access d) Provide supplemental livelihood improvement or restoration measures if taking of land causes loss of income-generating opportunities e) Restore or replace public infrastructure and community services that may be adversely affected by the program 	
Applicability –APPLICABLE	
While most physical development under the PforR is expected to be within areas owned or controlled by the Municipalities, there may be cases of renewal outside of these areas which involve displacement. There may also be civil works within the municipal areas that would involve displacement or land and resource access restriction . The dividing line separating acceptable and unacceptable displacement under the instrument is not clearly defined, and minor displacement or loss of livelihood may be considered, depending on circumstances and the way it is managed. This may be particularly evident in service upgrades or water, sanitation and electricity network expansion in informal settlement areas.	
STRENGTHS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • South Africa has relatively comprehensive legislation in place that would act as a safeguard that serves to ensure that alternatives to displacement are considered prior to project authorization, and that vulnerable people without formal residential rights are not arbitrarily evicted. • The Constitution of 1996 (Section 26 (3)) prevents arbitrary eviction and mandates that it is court ordered and only with sufficient demonstration of need. • The Expropriation Act 2024 promotes consultative negotiation for compensation where expropriation is pending. • The Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act (Act 19 of 1998). This ensures also that eviction is governed by a court authorized process that is based on a demonstrated needs and describes methods for court process. • The Housing Act & Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 makes provision for the National Housing Code of 2009. The Housing Code as a policy document sets out the need for local government (in this case the Metros) to provide emergency accommodation under defined circumstances. Eviction of 	WEAKNESSES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • While legislation is in place and there is an active civil society sector this is not a guarantee that state agencies will always act in the broader interest of human rights. This appears to particularly an issue when those impacted by state actions are potentially undocumented migrants and occupying lands or livelihoods spaces defined as illegal. • The ability/will of the municipal entities to provide emergency accommodation under circumstances that call for this to be done is often lacking. • Current expropriation legislation is very new and as yet untested. • The Expropriation Act 13 of 2024 does not refer to the need for a grievance mechanism linked to compulsory land acquisition. • Vulnerable people are not considered, as a distinct entity, by national legislation in the context of compensation for compulsory land acquisition.

<p>people without formal rights generated by need for development purposes would essentially fall under this provision.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Freedom of the press and of rights to transparent disclosure of information is embedded in law. Against this backdrop South Africa has an active civil society sector that serves as a watch dog with respect to ensuring that legal rights are protected. 	
<p>OPPORTUNITIES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Undertake meaningful consultations with all segments of the public, who may be displaced impacted as per national legal requirements. Enhance the functionality and effectiveness of the institutional grievance mechanisms, to ensure they are accessible and culturally appropriate, ensure anonymous and confidential reporting and handling of complaints Enforce the provisions of the Housing Act & Local Government: Municipal Systems Act and the National Housing Code to provide emergency accommodation under circumstances that warrant this step. 	<p>RISKS: While displacement or livelihood impacts are likely to be limited or can be made even more so by specificity in the PforR rules for the Program, the risk is considered Substantial, subject to compliance with the requirements of the law. The Substantial rating is linked to the threshold amounts allowed for civil works which enables spending that is sufficient for substantial works.</p> <p>LEVEL OF RISK: SUBSTANTIAL</p>

<p>Core Principle 5: Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups</p>	
<p>Environmental and social management procedures and processes are designed to give due consideration to the cultural appropriateness of, and equitable access to, program benefits, giving special attention to the rights and interests of Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities, and to the needs or concerns of vulnerable groups.</p>	
<p>Program procedures will:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Undertake meaningful consultations if the Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities or ethnic or racial groups are potentially affected (positively or negatively), to determine whether there is broad community support for the PforR Program activities. Ensure that Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities can participate in devising opportunities to benefit from exploitation of customary resources and indigenous knowledge, the latter (indigenous knowledge) to include the consent of Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities. Give attention to groups vulnerable to hardship or discrimination, including, as relevant, the poor, the disabled, women and children, the elderly, ethnic minorities, racial groups, or other marginalized groups; and if necessary, take special measures to promote equitable access to PforR Program benefits. 	
<p>Applicability – Applicable as Vulnerable entities may be exposed. The Program will not be explicitly implemented in areas where Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan Africa Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities exist. However, based on initial screening of program activities, there are other groups such as women, undocumented foreigners, retired workers and unemployed youth, who do not meet the Indigenous Peoples criteria but are present in the MTSP areas, and due to cultural differences, may need additional support to benefit from the Program. The most likely activity where support would be needed is associated with the waste pickers.</p>	
<p>STRENGTHS</p>	<p>WEAKNESSES</p>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • South Africa has a generally “pro poor” national governmental strategy and as such the needs of marginalized entities are protected in law and provided for in a range of social benefits. • The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 provides a framework for municipalities to progressively achieve social and economic upliftment of local communities. This includes ensuring universal access to essential services that are affordable to all. Ensuring that municipalities consider the needs of the poor and disadvantaged when setting service tariffs and credit control policies is a key component of the Act. • South Africa has a Free Basic Electricity (FBE) policy. The aim is to support low-income (indigent) households by ensuring they have access to basic electricity for essential needs such as lighting, media access, ironing, and boiling water. • It is expected that the system of subsidies/free electricity, water and sanitation services that municipalities provide will remain in place to support disadvantaged groups. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sporadic non-compliance by municipalities to the required national principles and values on inclusiveness, equity, equality, social justice, non-discrimination, protection of the marginalized, good governance, transparency and accountability and promotion of human rights and sustainable development. This is largely associated with the degree to which the indigent polices differ across the municipalities and the degree to which they are accessibly available for those who qualify. • Beneficiation associated with programmes such as adherence to guidelines for wage pickers inclusion into waste management programmes is not consistently applied. • The existing stakeholder engagement, grievance resolution, and feedback mechanisms are not positioned to address challenges that are specific to vulnerable groupings as they focus on issues that affect the mainstream society.
<p>OPPORTUNITIES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A recommended action to deal with the potential vulnerability aspect of potential re-alignment of the free basic services approach to water, sanitation and electricity is to develop a set of indicators that measure municipality performance against the policy intentions as set out in the Free Basic Services Indigent Support Policy and unlock incentives. A precursor to this would be a review of the performances of the eight municipalities and development of individual action plans to address weaknesses or enhance strengths. • Undertake meaningful consultations with all segments of the public, who may be displaced impacted as per national policy objectives. • Enhance the functionality and effectiveness of the institutional grievance mechanisms, to ensure they are accessible and culturally appropriate, ensure anonymous and confidential reporting and handling of complaints 	<p>RISKS. The risk is associated with failure to act rather than actions that will be undertaken that would jeopardize those deemed marginal/vulnerable or further entrench vulnerability and marginality.</p> <p>LEVEL OF RISK – LOW</p>

Core Principle 6: Social Conflict	
Environmental and social management procedures and processes are designed to avoid exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial disputes.	
Program procedures will:	
Consider conflict risks, including distributional equity and cultural sensitivities.	
Applicability – Applicable, as there is a history and current context of social conflict resulting from use of security forces as well as and competition for access to income generating resources within both the water and solid waste sectors-	
<p>STRENGTHS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • South Africa is not a post conflict country or a fragile state. 	<p>WEAKNESSES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Played out against a background of competition for income generating resources and increased opportunity for elite capture and revenues, and if not correctly managed at a municipal level, there is the potential to replicate or promote inherent social conflicts this could increase social conflict in competition for waste-generated resources This issue is typically driven by instructions given to municipal security staff to protect the landfill site against perceived threats by waste pickers. • This is potentially exacerbated, again at a municipal level, by some municipalities - or at least some staff – deliberately mis-using the waste picker registration process as an opportunity to restrict waste picker activities. • An unintended consequence of improved security of water supply could be increased social conflict linked to the so called “water tanker mafia”. There are reports of some water tank owners sabotaging water infrastructure to further their water sale operations within poorer and marginal communities. Better security of water supply could increase conflict between these criminal elements and municipal staff who combine with the community members who try to protect the infrastructure.
<p>OPPORTUNITIES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An opportunity is to ensure that there is a joint vision across and within the municipalities of the role that waste pickers can play in an integrated overall waste management system, coupled with clear procedural guidelines linked to job descriptions (including security guards), effective training of all personnel, appropriate ongoing communication with waste pickers and a monitoring and auditing mechanism that provides the opportunity for adaptive management. 	<p>RISKS. The risk is conducted at the municipal level that is not aligned with the objectives of inclusive waste management strategies or threats to criminal activities.</p> <p>LEVEL OF RISK – LOW</p>

6 CONCLUSIONS

- (i) The environmental and social impact of the MTSP will be **overwhelmingly beneficial**. The program directly addresses the root causes of the failure of the three metropolitan trading service sectors to deliver a service which is efficient, equitable, and environmentally and socially sustainable. The program is consequently focused on institutional, financial and structural reform, while recognizing that incentives are better than punitive measures to promote positive change. The program also recognizes that the metros have widely different performance levels, institutional capacity and appetite for change, and that the reform agenda for each municipality will need to be individually tailored to its circumstances.
- (ii) The main environmental and social risks of the program will be related to the funding of civil works which may in some cases include major works. The program has not yet defined specific projects for funding and in the absence of this, the ESSA provides boundary thresholds.
- (iii) Subject to the screening referred to in (ii) above, and the application of GIIP based on proven methodologies, the construction and operation of infrastructure approved under the Program is not expected to result in significant adverse environmental and social risk.
- (iv) The policy and regulatory regime related to the trading services is generally satisfactory at National level. South Africa has a sophisticated and effective framework in this regard at the higher levels of Government. Consequently, the E&S benefits of the program are largely not dependent on policy or regulatory reforms and should be achievable by applying existing policies, laws, norms and standards. At municipal level, however, the consistency of bylaws and management plans and their alignment with current sustainability objectives varies between the metros and may need to be further considered on a case-to-case basis. The updating of bylaws relating to the implementation of the waste hierarchy requires specific attention in most Metros.
- (v) Any gap-filling measures identified to enhance the in-country systems and capacities to manage environmental and social (E&S) outcomes must be incorporated in the Program design once the activities have been clearly defined for each Metro.
- (vi) Specifically and related to (v) above, where the Borrower must ensure that any displacement triggered by civil works ensures that, compensation sufficient to purchase replacement property of equivalent value and to meet any necessary transitional expenses, is paid prior to land taking or access restriction execution; support (transitional expenses) for people losing their residence, land, and/or business, including if this loss is temporary and impacts their livelihood is provided; additional enhancement or restoration measures if the land taking results in a loss of income-generating opportunities (e.g., loss of agricultural production or employment) is provided; mechanism to Identify and address economic or social impacts caused by land acquisition or loss of access to natural resources, including those affecting people who do not have legal rights to the resources they use or occupy are put in place; restoration or replacement public infrastructure and community services that may be affected by the Program is effected; affected communities are consulted in an inclusive manner, including women and vulnerable groups, and these consultations must be documented; a project specific grievance mechanism is in place; a budget or funding source specifically dedicated to compensation payments and other assistance is created.

- (vii) The project team wishes to avoid MTSP reforms that place unnecessary additional monitoring and reporting burdens on the metros where existing performance indicators, already applied by the metros, are satisfactory. From an environmental perspective, the DWS Green Drop, Blue Drop and No Drop reporting methodologies provide examples of performance indicators that are fully aligned with legal and policy requirements for metro water and sanitation management. There will nevertheless be some rationalization needed, since these reporting requirements consolidate various environmental and other performance indicators into a risk-based metric that may duplicate or conflict with other MTSP metrics.
- (viii) There are no overarching or universal social metrics that coincide with the program. As indicated, different metros have varying indicators for determination of indigency. A discussion with the NT as well as the metros as to a process for synchronization of measures of indices is necessary to ensure that free basic water, sanitation and electricity access is equitable as well as sustainably applied. This would ensure more effective measurement of governance outputs. Further the development of a common approach that is consistent with the guidelines for waste picker integration into the formal waste management process is recommended. As indicated, this should be developed with active participation of the participating metros.
- (ix) Some activities undertaken by the Metro Trading Services require licenses and permits which may include conditions of approval. Managing policy and legal compliance will be more effective if these requirements are consolidated into a register, developed and maintained for each metro service.
- (x) A staged approach to environmental compliance should be adopted to avoid disincentivizing the metros in the initial period of the 6-year tenure of the grant. Much of the E&S improvement (demonstrated by outcomes indicators) will be dependent on reform in the institutional and financial components of the project (demonstrated by input indicators), and E&S progress can thus only be expected after the business turnaround strategy begins to show results.
- (xi) The reforms will not remedy cases where existing permit conditions or general regulations do not fully protect the environment from harm. Disposal of treated sewage effluent from large WWTWs provides an example where the nutrient loads may be so high that even the special standard for o-Phosphate is insufficient to prevent eutrophication of downstream waters, particularly when impounded. The ESSA supports the MTSP team's objective of avoiding 'aspirational' KPIs which are not grounded in existing policies, laws or other council commitments.
- (xii) With reference to item (viii) above, the design team should consider a technical assistance component to the grant, which helps fund well-motivated scientific investigations, agreed with the metros in consultation with key stakeholders, that could improve environmental performance.
- (xiii) Provision for E&S implementation support should be made in the MTSP, taking into account the diverse range of environmental and social performance requirements that will apply to the program, and the need to ensure that these are uniformly understood and consistently applied by the metros. This could include embedded E&S expertise in the Task Team and/or additional capacity in the National Treasury Cities Support Program. Responsibilities of E&S specialists would involve reviewing implementation progress; carrying out institutional capacity building; monitoring the development and performance of trading service environmental and social management systems; monitoring changes in Program risks as well as compliance with the provisions of legal covenants; and adapting management practice in a manner consistent with PforR principles to improve

program implementation or to respond to unanticipated implementation challenges. In cases where the South African legal framework and norms and standards are not fully articulated, such as urban resettlement.

- (xiv) Service provision is the most public facing of municipal functions. While there are wide differences between the metros in their ability and willingness to capture and address concerns and complaints, all would benefit from improved communication strategies about their service, designed not as PR but as an integral part of internal performance review. KPIs that encourage councils to use public communication as an effective strategy for improvement should be considered. There are a diverse set of national, provincial as well as metropolitan portals that serve as a mechanism for grievances to be lodged. While these exist the degree to which they are functional and trigger a mandatory response process differs greatly. A program-wide grievance mechanism to be adopted by all metro activities under the program could be considered. This should be based around a portal that is accessible, well known and appropriately advertised, managed by dedicated resources and with a protocol that tracks grievances while taking responsibility for responding. The format for usage at metro level should be designed by the National Treasury's Cities Support Program and also replicated as a central portal within the National Treasury PMU.
- (xv) The rules for projects implemented under the World Bank PforR instrument are broadly stated in relation to activities that could cause environmental or social harm. There are limitations on the procurements of works, goods and services that would be considered to be 'high value' contracts, with 'high value' for civil works is defined as anything more than \$50 million. In the context of the World Bank MTSP grant, this would not constrain even very substantial civil works. There are also restrictions on financing of any activities that are likely to result in high or substantial E&S risks and impacts. It is recommended that the proposed activities should be screened to determine eligibility against the World Bank PforR Policy requirements and thresholds set out in the ESSA.
- (xvi) Key performance indicators must be clearly defined and measurable, and wherever possible, avoid overlap with other KPIs. In cases where recognized scientific methodologies are required to provide accurate, credible, results these should be specified to provide consistency across metros. Where South African norms and standards are applicable, these are to be preferred. It is recommended that the sector documentation for each metro's services includes supporting definitions for the KPIs in addition to any interim benchmarks that are determined to allow for phased improvements in compliance.
- (xvii) The effectiveness of the Program reforms in reducing greenhouse gas emissions should be tracked annually, using methodologies aligned with the IPCC GHG reporting guidelines.
- (xviii) Climate resilience is to be built into the design of new and upgraded infrastructure with reference to best international practice and, in particular, the Guideline on Mainstreaming Climate Responsiveness and Resilience into Urban Planning prepared by the South African Council for Scientific Research (CSIR) on behalf of the National Treasury Cities Support Program.

- (xix) Each Metro must develop and implement an ESMS, following recognized international standards and guidelines such as ISO 14001⁷⁷ and International Financing Corporation (IFC) guidelines⁷⁸.
- (xx) The Independent Verification Agent responsible for annual External audits must include environmental and social specialists who are competent to judge whether the applicable data supporting KPIs is credible, and that performance benchmarks have been met.

⁷⁷ ISO 14001:2015 Environmental Management System. Edition 3.

⁷⁸ IFC (2015) ESMS Implementation Handbook.

7 ACTIONS TO INCLUDE IN THE PROGRAM ACTION PLAN (PAP) AND PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT ACTION PLAN (PIAP)

This section summarizes the measures that the ESSA team recommends be included in the Program Action Plan and the Performance Improvement Action Plan (PIAP)- which should be executed during program implementation to address the gaps identified above between the program and the PforR core principles and key elements, as well as to address any capacity shortcomings.

Table 7-1 lists the actions, the responsible party(s), the deadline for completion and the expected action, either as part of the PAP or the PIAP.

Table 7-1. Contribution to the Program Action Plan (PAP) and Program Implementation Action Plan (PIAP).

SN.	Action description	Where to be Addressed	Responsible party	Deadline	Expected Output / Verification
Environmental and Social (ES)Actions					
ES-1	Develop & implement functional ESMS, including requirements for MTS capacity improvement.	PAP/PIAP	Metros	One year after effectiveness	ESMS Manual and Procedures
ES-2	Develop and implement a Grievance Redress Mechanism (GRM) at Program level	PAP/PIAP	GAU and Municipalities	6 months after program effectiveness	GRM is in place and functioning
ES-3	Assign E&S responsibilities in the TSC team to support metros during implementation.	PAP/PIAP	NT	6 months after program effectiveness	Responsibilities assigned to experienced Trading Services Coordination (TSC) staff

8 CONSULTATIONS AND DISCLOSURE

Meetings to collaborate with key stakeholders and to disclose the preliminary ESSA findings have been held. The first was a meeting with CSP and was largely attended (on-line) by representatives from National Treasury and the World Bank design team (Annexure 5). The intention of the meeting was to disclose material to be shared with the eight Metropolitan entities in a subsequent online meeting.

An online meeting was held on January 21, 2025, with all eight of the participating municipalities. Representatives of each municipality were present including members of MSTP line departments as well as senior management. Notes of the meeting are set out in Annexure 6. The slide pack in Annexure 7 was presented, including the key findings and recommendations of the ESSA. This was followed by a discussion with participants. No material issues arose that would change the findings and recommendations of the ESSA.

REFERENCES

Adom, K.A. & Simatele, M.D., 2021. Analysis of public policies and programmes towards water security in post-apartheid South Africa. Water Policy Vol 23 Issue 3.

Afriforum 2024.

Ashworth, J. 2021. The deadly effects of sewage pollution on nature. The Trustees of The Natural History Museum, London.

Bowmans, 2020. Bowmans Guide – Environmental laws in South Africa (2020) Source: <https://www.bowmanslaw.com/wp-content/uploads/2020/06/GUIDE-SA-Environmental-Digital-2020.05.26.pdf>

Brown, D. 2020. Identifying the causes of widespread illegal dumping in Buffalo City metropolitan Municipality and innovative waste management mechanisms. Thesis for Masters in Business Administration, Nelson Mandela University, August 2020.

Cape {Town} etc. 2023. Newsletter. <https://www.capetownetc.com/newsletter/>

Catapult Connected Places, 2021. eThekweni Waste Management. <https://cp.catapult.org.uk>

City of Cape Town, 2022. Urban Waste Management Presentation to the Parliamentary Monitoring Group. February 19.

City of Johannesburg, 2022. Urban Waste Management Presentation to the Parliamentary Monitoring Group. February 19.

CSIR, 2020. South African Municipal Waste Management Systems: Challenges and Solutions. <https://wedocs.unep.org/bitstream/handle/20.500.11822/33287/SAM.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y>

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. Robinson Deep Waste Disposal Audit Report. Rev. 1 Final. September 2024. Prepared on behalf of Pickitup Johannesburg SOC Ltd.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. Marie-Louise Waste Disposal Audit Report. Rev. 1 Final. September 2024. Prepared on behalf of Pickitup Johannesburg SOC Ltd.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. Goudkoppies Waste Disposal Audit Report. Rev. 1 Final. September 2024. Prepared on behalf of Pickitup Johannesburg SOC Ltd.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Vissershok South WDF Audit Report. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. May 2024.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Vissershok North WDF Audit Report. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1. May 2024.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Swartklip Refuse Transfer Station. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1. November, 2023

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Kraaifontain Integrated Waste Management Facility. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1, November, 2023

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Coastal Park WDF Audit. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1, May, 2024.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Tygerberg IWMF. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1, March, 2024.

Delta Built Environment Consultants Pty Ltd. 2024. 25C, 2022, 2023 External Environmental Compliance Audits at Waste Management Facilities: Athlone RTS. Prepared on behalf of City of Cape Town. Final Report Rev. 1, November, 2023.

Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries and Department of Science and Innovation, 2020. "Waste picker integration guideline for South Africa: Building the Recycling Economy and Improving Livelihoods through Integration of the Informal Sector" : Pretoria.

Department of Forestry and Fisheries and Environment (DFFE), 2022. Republic of South Africa. A circular Economy Guideline for the Waste Sector – A Driving Force Towards Sustainable Consumption and Production.

Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE), 2020. National Waste Management Strategy. https://www.dffe.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/2020/nationalwaste_management_strategy1.pdf?form=MG0AV3

Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment. Extended Producer Responsibility Regulations, 2020. GN 1184 in GG 43879 of 5 November 2020 (with effect from 5 May 2021)

Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE), 2024. South Africa's 2022 Grid Emission Report. Government Gazette 1 November 2024. No 5498.

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), 2024. National State of Water Report 2023. Integrated Water Resource Studies Report Number WII/IWRS/NSoW 2023 PRETORIA, South Africa.

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), 2023. Green Drop Watch Report.

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), 2023a. Green Drop Progress Assessment Report (D-PAT).

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), 2023b. No Drop Report – National.

DIGES Group, 2024. External Environmental Compliance Audit – Weltevreden Park Landfill - Quarter 2023/24. Prepared on behalf of City of Ekurhuleni. Final Report, March 26, 2024.

DIGES Group, 2024. External Environmental Compliance Audit – Simmer and Jack Landfill - Quarter 2023/24. Prepared on behalf of City of Ekurhuleni. Final Report, March 26, 2024.

DIGES Group, 2024. External Environmental Compliance Audit – Rooikraal Landfill - Quarter 2023/24. Prepared on behalf of City of Ekurhuleni. Final Report, March 25, 2024.

DIGES Group, 2024. External Environmental Compliance Audit – Rietfontein Landfill - Quarter 2023/24. Prepared on behalf of City of Ekurhuleni. Final Report, March 26, 2024.

DIGES Group, 2024. External Environmental Compliance Audit – Platkop Landfill - Quarter 2023/24. Prepared on behalf of City of Ekurhuleni. Final Report, March 25, 2024.

Ellen MacArthur Foundation. Circular Economy: Concept. Retrieved from www.elenmacarthur-foundation.org/circular-economy/overview/concept

EnviroXellence, 2022. Annual Waste Audit for Soshanguve Landfill Site in City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality of Gauteng Province. July, 2022.

EnviroXellence, 2022. Annual Waste Audit for Onderstepoort Landfill Site in City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality of Gauteng Province. July, 2022.

EnviroXellence, 2022. Annual Waste Audit for Hatherley Landfill Site in City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality of Gauteng Province. July, 2022.

EnviroXellence, 2022. Annual Waste Audit for Garankuwa Landfill Site in City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality of Gauteng Province. July, 2022.

EnviroXellence, 2022. Annual Waste Audit for Bronkhorstspuit Landfill Site in City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality of Gauteng Province. July, 2022.

Envitech Solutions, 2024. Permit Compliance Audit for the Mariannhill Landfill Site. Prepared on behalf of Ethekewini Municipality. Permit Number B33/2/1920/27/1/P241. February, 2024.

Envitech Solutions, 2024. Waste Management License Compliance Audit for the Lovu Landfill Site. Prepared on behalf of Ethekewini Municipality. Permit Number DM/S24G/0003/2019. February, 2024.

Envitech Solutions, 2023. Permit Compliance Audit for the Bisasar Road Landfill Site. Prepared on behalf of Ethekewini Municipality. Permit Number 16/2/7/U602/D1/Z1/P23. January, 2023.

Envitech Solutions, 2024. Waste Management License Compliance Audit for the Buffelsdraai Landfill Site. Prepared on behalf of Ethekewini Municipality. Permit Number DM/WML/0001/2020/REVIEW1. September, 2024.

[Ethekewini Municipality. News Release 20 September, 2024.](#) "City officials develop plan of action following inspection of illegal dumpsite at 1 Dennis Shepstone Road." Issued by eThekewini Municipality's Communication Unit.

City of Ekurhuleni, 2024. Waste Management Press Release, 8 November 2024. <https://www.ekurhuleni.gov.za/press-releases/service-delivery/waste-management/dump-garden-waste-at-the-citys-mini-dumpsites/>

City of Ekurhuleni, 2022-2026. Integrated Waste Management Plan.

International Solid Waste Association (ISWA) 2016. A Roadmap for Closing Waste Dumpsites – the World's most Polluted Places.

Local Government Environmental Indaba (LGEI) Report, 2023. <https://www.dffe.gov.za/sites/default/files/reports/localgovernmentenvironmentindaba2023nov20.pdf>.

Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality 2016. Environmental Implementation and management plan for Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality (Volume 1 of 4). <https://www.mangaung.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2022/05/EIMP.pdf>

Mangaung (2019 -2020) Consolidated Annual Report.

Mathebula 2014. The Role of Municipalities in Enforcing Environmental Laws: South African Perspective. Mediterranean Journal of Social Science. MCSER Publishing, Rome-Italy. Vol 5 No 23, November 2014.

Mokonyama, S, Schalkwyk, M. & Rajagopaul, R. 2017. Guidelines and Good Practices for Water Treatment Residues, Handling, Disposal and Re-use in South Africa. Report to the Water Research Commission. WRC Report No. TT 738/17. December, 2017.

Ngalo, N. and Thondhlana G., 2023. Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health 2023, 20, 6750. <https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph20186750>

Nokele, A.K. (2020). Assessment of integrated waste management plan in the City of Tshwane (Masters Dissertation). Johannesburg: University of Johannesburg. Available from <http://hdl.handle.net/102000/0002>.

NTC Environmental Services. 2015. Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality Northern Landfill Site External Audit Report. Permit Reference Number 16/2/7/C522/D1/Z2/P478. November, 2015.

NTC Environmental Services. 2015. Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality Southern Landfill Site External Audit Report. November, 2015.

Owusu-Asante 2019. Water Research Commission Report: *Detection and Removal of Illegal Discharges into Stormwater Systems. 2019.*

Schenck C J; Nell C M, Grobler L; Blaauw P F. 2022. *Waste Management, Littering and Illegal Dumping: A Literature Review. Clean cities and towns: Understanding societal behaviour in order to reduce and divert waste going to landfills.* Prepared for the Department of Science and Innovation. CSIR/IU/WRIU/2018/019.

Smallwood, J. 2024. *The Long Overdue Overhaul of South African Construction Health and Safety.* Nelson Mandela University. https://cdn.ymaws.com/www.saiosh.co.za/resource/resmgr/docs/2024_folder_4/260524_the_long_overdue_over.pdf

Swanepoel S and Marlin D 2024. Mapping illegal dumping in Nelson Mandela Bay Metro: A study using image interpretation. Elsevier Volume 36, November. No. 101302

Vaverikova DV, Maxianová A, Winkler J, Adamcová D, Podlasec A 2019. Environmental consequences and the role of illegal waste dumps and their impact on land degradation. Elsevier Land use Policy, Volume 89, December. No. 104234

Von Blottnitz, H. & Haas W., 2021. How is South Africa utilizing its Resources to Drive Development? Waste Research and Innovation Roadmap. Presentation. CSIR / Department of Science and Innovation. June 30, 2021.

Water Research Commission Report, 2019. *Detection and Removal of Illegal Discharges into Stormwater Systems.*

Wilson, K; Kootbodien, T; Made, T, *et al.* (2022) “Men and women waste pickers on landfills in Johannesburg, South Africa: Divergence in Health, and Socioeconomic Status.” *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*, Vol.95(2), pp.351-363

World Bank, 2021. Climate Change Action Plan 2021-2025. Supporting green, resilient and inclusive development.

World Bank, 2022. Advancing Circular Economy in South Africa. Supported by funding from PROBLUE (<https://www.worldbank.org/en/programs/problue>).

World Bank, 2022. Bank Directive – Program for Results (PforR) Financing. March 08, 2022.

World Bank 2023. A Diagnostic of Solid Waste Management in South African Metros. 7 June 2023. Internal presentation to the National Treasury and other MTSP stakeholders

World Bank (2023). “Supporting Waste Picker Registration & Integration: Insights From South Africa”. Washington.

Wear, SL , Acuna V & McDonald R. Sewage pollution, declining ecosystem health, and cross-sector collaboration. *Biological Conservation* 255 (2021) 109010.

Zhang, T (ed).2022. Treatment of Sewage – Recent advances, new perspectives and applications. ISBN978-1-83969-825-5.

Annexures

Annexure	Title
1	Water and Sanitation Sector Menu of MTSP Activities
2	Electricity Sector Menu of MTSP Activities
3	Waste Sector Menu of MTSP Activities
4	Preliminary Screening of MTSP Results Areas
5	SCP National Treasury Meeting
6	Meeting with the Eight Metropolitan Stakeholders
7	Slide Pack Presented at the Metropolitan Stakeholder Meeting
8	Relevant legal framework on Environmental and Social Aspects of the MTSP
9	Summary of Green Drop Report Scores for 2023 (DWS, 2023)
10	Metro WWTW compliance with effluent quality discharge requirements
11	Summary of Recent Metro Waste Audit Findings / Recommendations
12	An Analysis on the Implications of the MTSP for Waste Pickers
13	PIAP Indicators Definition Sheet: Accountability Performance, Financial Performance, and Operational Performance Indicators for WSS, Electricity and SWM (from the PAD)
14	Summary of Metro Performance indicators for Solid Waste Management

Annexure 1: Water and Sanitation Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

PforR MENU OF ACTIVITIES: WATER SUPPLY & SANITATION SECTOR	
<i>DRAFT AUGUST 21 2024</i>	
I. GOVERNANCE & ACCOUNTABILITY	
ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	EXPECTED RESULTS [potential indicators]
1. Develop and implement a Turnaround Strategy and PIAP with performance targets to strengthen the sector’s governance	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Define mechanisms to protect the autonomy of the W&S business from erosion Comprehensive reforms of the water sector to strengthen service delivery arrangements of the W&S sector 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single point accountability achieved (<i>CEO fully responsible for HR, procurement, IT, fleet etc</i>) Ring fencing of revenues achieved Funds availability, assessment of the regulation process, and degree of public participation in the formulation of specific water projects Separate audited financial statement for each trading service Agreements between WSP and WSA established and operational
• Improve accountability of W&S business management	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop/confirm a fit-for-purpose organogram to manage the W&S business Prepare incentive frameworks and embed in HR policies, including performance incentives for both staff and contractors Engage private sector for improving W&S service delivery based on principles of performance incentives Improve efficiency in procurement processes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adoption of new organogram Reduction in number of days/months from procurement initiation to contract issuance Modification and implementation of HR policies
3. Strengthen the M&E system to comprehensively track service delivery, operational and financial performance	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop utility systems and databases to collect performance data, including disaggregated performance data of service delivery of for various customer groups (including poor and vulnerable sections). Develop and follow a protocol for regular reporting and disclosure of performance. Develop and implement a Grievance Redress Mechanism and customer feedback mechanism. Design and implement an annual customer survey to assess satisfaction with service delivery and involvement of women in identifying and addressing issues. Prepare operational, financial performance and corporate compliance reporting mechanisms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased number of customers satisfied with service Information systems created and operational Develop and implementation of GRM Improvement in working operating ratio

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop a performance scorecard to evaluate based on a) customer service, b) financial performance and efficiency, c) organizational processes and modernization, and d) implementation of the investment plan. 	
4. Improve disclosure of W&S service performance	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prepare and publish a detailed Annual Report, including Audited Financial Statements and Citizen Report Card results. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Annual publication of the financial statements and annual report
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Publicly disclose audited financial statements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Quantity and quality of freely accessible information concerning the water and sanitation system
II.RELIABILITY & OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE	
ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY	EXPECTED RESULTS [potential indicators]
1. Rehabilitation, repair and expansion of existing water supply and sanitation systems	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rehabilitation and/or expansion of production, pumping, treatment, and storage infrastructure; distribution and sewerage networks; standpipes; and household connections 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased supply hours (average hours per day) Increased water availability (average liters/per capita/day) Equity consideration for access to water and sanitation services
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Development of associated studies and works supervision. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Assets out of service and selected to be repaired as a priority 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Works related to improving transmission and Capacity distribution network 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implementation of automation and digitization 	
2. Improvement of management and information systems	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implementation of software for improved facilities for on-line payments, to improve billing and collection 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drinking water quality (<i>Blue drop, % meeting requirement</i>) Waste water effluent quality (<i>Green Drop, % meeting requirements</i>) Service reliability (<i>% time availability which includes access</i>) Customer database, asset management and maintenance management systems in place and operational Reduction in Nonrevenue water (NRW in % from Blue Drop) Improved collection rate % Improved metering rate (customers metered, for water supply only) % Assess affordability of the W&S services through share of W&S related expenses (monthly W&S bills and connection costs) of various household groups, with a special focus on the poorest quintile.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop and track an index to measure operational efficiency 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduction of Non-revenue water (NRW) through incentives to operators through their remuneration formula 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Development of adequate information systems based on a water information system to help monitor and track climate relevant data and enhance decision-making and inform climate-informed policies and strategies. 	
3. Capacity building of W&S sector professionals	

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development of a specific curriculum to train local W&S professionals, including (i) the development of adequate information systems based on a water information system; and (ii) strengthening monitoring capacities of service delivery (interface with regional operators according to contractual provisions), including for the regional operators and other providers of water services, as well as the publication of service monitoring reports 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Degree of training of water managers, satisfaction in water departments, and transparency in contracting processes. • Degree of involvement of institutional and individual actors in interaction spaces for public engagement with water departments
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation of capacity building for sustainable management of existing and future assets, emphasizing the participation of women in the provision of water supply services. 	
<p>4. Implementation of service upgrades</p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organize continuous water supply initiatives in demonstration zones 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased number of customers satisfied with service
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expand distribution network for 24/7 supply 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digital monitoring systems to track and report service delivery and efficiency
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expand sewerage network and treatment capacity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grievances satisfactorily resolved with seven days, %
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Construct a water quality lab for more frequent and accurate quality monitoring. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Percentage of sewage blockage complaints addressed within 48 hours (%)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide water storage reservoirs with water quality sensors and automated distribution arrangements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Energy Efficiency for wastewater treatment, pumping systems (both for water and wastewater) kWhr/m3
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement performance-based contracts to help improve and maintain service standards (including criteria linked to climate-related elements for efficient energy and water use). 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organize technical workshops and information dissemination campaigns for women entrepreneurs, women-owned businesses to encourage bids from localized women business owners for the water supply and sewer network to be added in uncovered areas. 	
<p>5. Improvement of asset management</p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduce comprehensive asset management systems to help categorize and rehabilitate existing bulk water assets and implement energy efficiency improvements (<i>Utilities of the Future program of the World Bank to provide support</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation of comprehensive asset management • W&S sector digitalized • Increased young women in leadership positions in the W&S sector
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digitalization of water supply and sanitation systems including electromagnetic/ultrasonic bulk meters, flow control valves, pressure reducing valves and measuring instruments like pressure gauges. <i>This system will also be compatible</i> 	

<p><i>with the Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) system being provided for bulk water operation.</i></p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Build critical digital assets using geospatial data like a Geographic Information System (GIS)-linked customer database, asset database, billing and collection database, IT applications for accounting, costing and budgeting and customer relations. 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recruit and train young women professionals in utilization and management of digital assets, systems and databases in the W&S sector 	
<p>III. FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE</p>	
<p>ACTIVITY/SUB-ACTIVITY</p>	<p>EXPECTED RESULTS [potential indicators]</p>
<p>1. Improvement of W&S service sustainability</p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Design and implementation of performance-based contracts to improve the quality and the sustainability of the water supply and sanitation services 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EBITDA margin % (for utility) R & M cost recovery. Excludes interest, principal repayments, depreciation and tax (if any). Revenues and costs should be on accrual basis. Revenue write off policy to recognize uncollected bills should be in place. Indication of level of debt and existing plan to reduce it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine the cost of supply of W&S services 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development and application of tariffs and a tariff policy for sustainable and affordable water supply services 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subsidy policy in place if tariffs are set below O & M cost recovery levels. <i>(Subsidies to be considered only if they are budgeted in advance and are regularly transferred to a ring fenced water supply account. Subsidies that are accounted for balancing the revenue and costs will not be considered in EBITDA calculations).</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop agreements for costs and contributions for services/revenues between corporate and the W&S business 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water and wastewater accounts audited independently and disclosed
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop short-, medium- and long-term investment plans that incorporate resilience and sustainability objectives 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • % of budget on O&M (8% benchmark)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carry out energy efficiency, NRW reduction and cost-recovery improvement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Operating cost coverage ratio
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consider the upgrade the existing mechanical meters to Smart Meters for automatic meter reading and real time monitoring of water consumption 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collection ratio
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement metering of connections and improved billing and collection systems 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Under-expenditure on capex (execution of % of last years' capex plan)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation of key policy measures required for financial sustainability: (i) volumetric tariff for all customers, (ii) annual indexation and automatic adjustment of tariff for change in input costs and (iii) timely release of subsidies as budgeted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cost reflective tariff - progress • % of budget officially assigned/dedicated to O&M
<p>2. Improvement of financing practices of the W&S sector</p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement commercial principles for revenue management and cost recovery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improved financing practices adopted in the sector
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modernize accounting practices including (a) accounting, budgeting and cash management policies and systems, (b) migrating to industry standard accounting systems (Tally or equivalent) and (c) internal audit. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Energy cost reduction
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Financial training of water supply and sanitation professionals. 	

Annexure 2: Electricity Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

MENU OF ACTIVITIES: ENERGY SERVICES <i>Draft for Review</i>	
GOVERNANCE & ACCOUNTABILITY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop and approve a Turnaround Strategy including a Performance Improvement Plan (PIP) and a Funded Investment Plan (FIP), to help meet technical, operational and financial performance targets. The PIP will formally identify priority measures and help inform shareholders’ medium-term commitments. The performance targets include, among other things, the rollout of smart meters, improved infrastructure protection mechanisms and streamlined maintenance processes.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prepare incentive frameworks and embed them in HR policies. In particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ develop an annual performance review linked to remuneration for staff, ○ identify skills deficiencies and future skill requirements through assessments and surveys, ○ develop customized training and mentorship programs for employees, ○ establish a feedback platform for employees.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engage private sector for improving energy service delivery based on principles of performance incentives.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improve procurement processes to increase efficiency and mitigate cost increases.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strengthen existing M&E systems to comprehensively track service delivery, operational, financial, and customer satisfaction metrics. Develop centralized utility systems and databases to collect performance and billing data. Establish a protocol for regular reporting and disclosure of performance. The disaggregated performance of service delivery to different customer groups, including poor and vulnerable groups, will be collected.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simplify administrative procedure and streamline operations by automating repetitive tasks and fostering collaboration across different departments and units.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Establish methods for setting well-defined and transparent tariffs.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disclosure of performance: publish a detailed annual report, including audited financial statements and the results of the citizen report card. Develop a performance scorecard based on customer service, financial performance and efficiency, organizational processes and modernization, and the implementation of the investment plan.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Establish an independent business unit with integrated support services and a single point of management accountability to account for electricity service delivery, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ the appointment of the Electricity Head to be responsible for the implementation of the Turnaround Strategy, ○ the establishment of the Turnaround Strategy Change Management Team to support the Head in implementing the strategy.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increase the integration of renewable energy by aligning operational policies with national regulations and establishing a renewable energy department.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improve project management processes by establishing a Project Management Office (PMO) to centralize project oversight, implementing standardized project management methodologies and tools, and by conducting regular project performance evaluation reviews.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enhance customer engagement and response by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ upgrading customer contact center systems (Interactive Voice Response, chatbots, call-routing technologies), ○ organizing educational campaigns to inform customers about new billing processes, ○ implementing real-time customer feedback, ○ conducting annual customer surveys to assess satisfaction with service delivery, ○ supporting the inclusion of women in identifying and addressing issues.

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce discrepancies in customer billing by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ establishing smart meters across customer bases, ○ establishing regular audits and cross-checks to identify billing discrepancies.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce technical and non-technical losses to 8%.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce downtime and improve resolution of power outages by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ implementing outage management systems integrated with smart grids, ○ distributing maintenance teams strategically to cover larger regions efficiently, ○ analyzing historical outage data to fix common faults points.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce operational inefficiencies and premature asset failure by implementing a comprehensive asset management system with predictive 97 maintenance and minimizing work-in-progress delays.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Streamline maintenance processes to reduce downtime and improve asset performance by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ implementing a Condition-Based Maintenance (CBM) program, ○ developing a predictive maintenance schedule and deploying condition monitoring devices on critical assets, ○ training maintenance teams on CBM procedures and provide them with a digital maintenance manual, ○ optimizing stores inventory and spare parts management by implementing a predictive spare parts ordering system and by establishing partnerships with reliable suppliers.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enhance infrastructure protection measures to mitigate risks of damage and theft. In particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ implement integrated security solutions and surveillance cameras and alarm systems at critical infrastructure sites, ○ increase public awareness on infrastructure protection, ○ collaborate with local communities and law enforcement agencies to support reporting of suspicious activities, ○ implement design modifications, upgrade fencing and access control mechanisms, and explore innovative solutions (e.g. smart tagging) to deter theft and vandalism, ○ conduct regular security audits and assessments.
FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promote the adoption of innovative technologies and sustainable practices to modernize infrastructure and address environmental concerns. In particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ launch a pilot program to explore feasibility and benefits from the integration of renewable energy sources into the electricity network, ○ collaborate with research institutes and industry partners to identify emerging technologies such as smart grid or energy storage systems solutions to improve grid resilience, ○ implement initiatives to promote energy efficiency such as public awareness campaigns, incentives for energy-efficient appliances and demand-side management programs.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Optimize the lifecycle management of assets by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ developing and implementing an asset management policy, and outline clear objectives, strategies and responsibilities respectively, ○ investing in an Enterprise Asset Management System (EAMS) to centralize asset data.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Streamline cost recovery and improve financial oversight with an integrated financial dashboard, enhanced revenue protection programs and alignment of budgets with core businesses processes.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engage with the National Treasury to ensure access to grant funding.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Revise business models to improve revenue generation ability and sustainability.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enhance data quality and utilization to better inform decision-making in asset management. In particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ upgrade existing data management systems, ○ train staff on data collection, analysis and interpretation techniques, ○ establish Key Performance Indicators (KPI) for maintenance, ○ develop dashboards and reporting tools to track and review KPIs in real-time, ○ implement data governance policies and procedures to ensure data protection, ○ establish role-based access control to restrict unauthorized access to the data, ○ conduct regular data audits and compliance assessments to maintain data quality.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modernize accounting practices and publicly disclose its audited financial statements. In particular: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ update accounting, budgeting and cash management policies and systems, ○ migrate to an industry standard accounting system (Tally or equivalent), ○ modernize internal audit practices.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement commercial principles for revenue management and cost recovery.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement metering of connections and improved billing and collection systems.

Annexure 3: Waste Sector Menu of MTSP Activities

Indicator	Description	Verification Process	
		Method	Metric
Governance and Institutional Performance			
Contract Management	Percentage of contracts with valid Service Level Agreements, including Performance Reporting by service provider and related Penalty Provisions	Number of Valid, Signed Contracts, including Penalty Provisions / Total Number of Contracts	% of Number (Increase)
Vacancies	Vacant positions as a percentage of the total number of staff on the solid waste sector Organograms	Number of Vacant Positions / Total Number of Positions	% of Number (Decrease)
Data Reporting	Waste Data reported as per Waste Classification and Management Regulations and shared with Regulator or Minister	Assessment of Reporting of Data to Minister (Regulator's platform: SAWIS), as per Frequencies and Categories Regulated Composite Indicator: 1: Yes / No 2: Quantitative Assessment of Submission Frequencies & Categories	1: Yes / No 2: % Increase of Submissions x Completeness of Required Categories
Data Management	Efficient and accurate data collection in the tonnages of solid waste being handled (managed). This aligns with the need for infrastructure such as weighbridges. System of capturing the data should be live/daily reporting per facility. Web based dashboard reporting system is preferred. Person(s) at Metro to be responsible for such a role.	Composite Indicator: 1: Yes / No 2: Qualitative Assessment of Reporting System & Confirmation of Data Management Personnel	% of Number (Increase)
Collection and Transportation Logistics Optimisation Study	Solid Waste Collection and Transport (incl. Long-Haul) Optimisation, ensuring efficient collection routes, maximum use of appropriate collection options, efficient positioning of transfer stations and any treatment/disposal facilities.	1: Completed Study (Yes / No) 2: Qualitative Assessment of Implemented Recommendations	1: Yes / No 2: Implementation of Findings
Service Provision Institutional Model (Study)	Assessment of institution and creation of a Institutional Model to Confirm most suitable and applicable Business Case for Solid Waste sector Proactiveness/ Operational efficiency (in-house vs outsourced responsibilities, KPIs, Delegation Agreement, Contracts & Contract Management, Investments)	Investigation into and Development of a Service Provision Institutional Model 1: Completed Study (Yes / No) 2: Qualitative Assessment of Implemented Recommendations	1: Yes / No 2: % Increase
Enforcement	Provision for Enforcement made in By-Laws (Littering, Illegal Dumping, Separation at Source, etc.)	Composite Indicator: 1: Yes / No (Qualitative) whether provision made in By-Law & 2: Quantitative Assessment of Incidents Submitted to Metro Enforcement (not prosecution)	1: Yes/No 2: % Increase
Fleet & Plant Quality of Service	Structure in-place to ensure Skilled and Competent Individuals (Artisans) are available to the Solid Waste Sector for servicing and maintenance of fleet (Collection, Yellow Plant and Blue Plant - if applicable)	Organisational structure includes the identification of suitably skills person(s) whom are readily available to attend to repairs and maintenance of mechanical plant	1: Yes/No 2: % Decrease in Vehicle Servicing Turnaround Times

Allocation of Key Roles and Responsibilities	<p>Within the Solid Waste Sector, Metro to ensure that Suitably Qualified and Competent Persons have been Clearly allocated Clear Roles and Responsibilities for the following Key Functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Collection Fleet Management - On-site Plant and Equipment Management - Data Management - Environmental Management - Occupational Health and Safety - Waste Minimisation - PRO Management and Engagement <p>Organisation and Structure to Clearly Allocate and make reference to Roles and Responsibilities associated with Key Functions within the Solid Waste Sector - Metro to avail internal agreement of commitment</p>	% of Key Roles Filled and Commitments Provided	% Increase
Operational Performance			
Operational Weighbridges	All landfills and transfer stations to have operational weighbridge(s) (bi-annually calibrated and certified for trade), with back-up power supply and off-site data storage	% of Facilities compliant where weighbridge(s) have been operational for minimum 95% of time	% of Number (Increase)
Accessibility to Waste Services in Formal Areas	Coverage of Passive Collection Services to Public in Formal Areas (Drop-offs)	Decrease in Average Distance Travel by Public to Waste Receiving Services/Facilities $\frac{[(\text{OLD Distance} - \text{NEW Distance}) / \text{OLD Distance}] \times 100}{}$	% km Decrease
Accessibility to Waste Services in Informal Areas	Coverage of Passive Collection Services to Public in Informal Areas (Waste Containers, Skips, etc.)	Decrease in Average Distance Travel by Public to Waste Receiving Services/Facilities $\frac{[(\text{OLD Distance} - \text{NEW Distance}) / \text{OLD Distance}] \times 100}{}$	% km Decrease
#NAME?	Diversion of Materials from Disposal (Landfill) and which are being Beneficiated / Utilised - Show Inclusion of relevant PRO's into Planning and Intervention	% Increase in Quantity of Waste Materials Diverted - Based on WACS if no Baseline $\frac{[(\text{NEW Quantity Diverted} - \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}) \times \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}] \times 100}{}$	% in Quantity (Increase)
E-Waste Diversion	Diversion of E-Waste from Disposal (Landfill) and which are being Beneficiated - Show inclusion of relevant PRO's into planning and intervention	% Increase in Quantity of E-Waste Recyclables Diverted - Based on WACS if no Baseline $\frac{[(\text{NEW Quantity Diverted} - \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}) \times \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}] \times 100}{}$	% in Quantity (Increase)
Organic Diversion	Diversion of Organics Disposal (Landfill) - Show inclusion of the private sector involvement and associated investment (enabling environment).	% Increase in Quantity of Organic Waste Diverted - Based on WACS if no Baseline $\frac{[(\text{NEW Quantity Diverted} - \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}) \times \text{OLD Quantity Diverted}] \times 100}{}$	% in Quantity (Increase)
Illegal Dumping	Formal record keeping of illegal dumping reported, together with dates and data of material dumped (general character, approximate volume/tonnage) plus location (for GIS mapping of hot spots)	% Decrease in Reports of Illegal Dumping (Requires that formal reporting service be established for public use) $\frac{[(\text{OLD No. of Reportings} - \text{NEW No. of Reportings}) / \text{OLD No. of Reportings}] \times 100}{}$	% of Number (Decrease)
Facilities to have Operating	To ensure that all Facilities by the Metro have been licensed or registered for	% of Facilities who are legally registered/ licensed	% of Number (Increase)

License/Registration	operational use and the registration and/or license is valid.		
Facility Compliance Rating Against License	Compliance Against License Conditions for ALL Licensed and Audited Facilities (Internal & External Audits)	Composite Indicator: % Increase in Average Rating across Facilities (Weight: Landfills = 80%, Transfer Stations = 20%) IF No. Non-Compliances \geq No. Partial Compliance + No. Compliance results in VOID - Additionally, IF Directive Issued by Competent Authority for Site, that Site Compliance Contribution is VOID until Resolved (Requires Confirmation from Competent Authority)	1: Yes / No 2: % Ratings (Increase)
Facility Preparedness	Optimised Facility Preparedness by ensuring that all: - Site Operating Plans are in-place & valid (less than 1 year old) - Environmental Management Plans are in-place, valid (less than 3-years old) & applicable (to most recent license/registration conditions) - Emergency Preparedness and Response Plans are in-place , valid (less than 1 year old) & applicable (to most recent license/registration conditions) For all Landfills & Transfer Stations	1: Yes / No 2: % Increase in Facilities with Updated and Valid Plans $\left[\frac{\text{NEW No. of Updated \& Valid Plans} - \text{OLD No. of Updated \& Valid Plans}}{\text{OLD No. of Updated \& Valid Plans}} \right] \times 100$	1: Yes / No 2: % Increase
Landfill Operations	Improved Site Operations for Optimised Use of Airspace, Environmental Protection and on-site Safety to Staff, Customers and Public - requires the following monitoring (with frequency indicated): - Compaction Density Assessments (Bi-Annual), threshold: - Waste Age 0 - 6 months ($\geq 650\text{kg/m}^3$) - Waste Age 0 - 1 year ($\geq 850\text{kg/m}^3$) - Waste Age 1 - 5 years ($\geq 950\text{kg/m}^3$) - Waste Age > 5 years ($\geq 1000\text{kg/m}^3$) - Slope Stability Assessments (Bi-Annual), threshold: - Factor of Safety for Non-Seismic Scenarios (≥ 1.5) - Factor of Safety for Seismic Scenarios (≥ 1.1) - Landscape Maintenance - Rehabilitation and Removal of Alien Vegetation - Occupational Health & Safety Assessments (Bi-Ennial), threshold: - As per Regulated Thresholds	Composite Indicator: Weighted Categories (all 25%) - Bi-Annual Compaction Density (% of Waste Samples (based on age) at acceptable Densities) - Bi-Annual Slope Stability (% of Slopes at acceptable FoSs), min. 6 Slopes assessed / landfill IF previous assessment identified slopes at risk of failure and no effort to remediate observed = landfill is VOID & 0% automatically scored - Bi-Annual Landscape Maintenance (Increase / Decrease in Areas of Concern (Erosion, Embankments, Litter & Vegetation)) - Occupational Health and Safety (% of Regulated Assessments / Surveys Undertaken)	% Increase
Landfill Airspace Availability (Ultimate & Current)	Ultimate: Minimum Remaining = 10 years Actual: Minimum Remaining = 8 years A calculation undertaken, using airspace modelling and consumption data (weighbridge/topographic surveys), plus estimated growth/reduction values in waste generation (population growth, diversion & beneficiation), to determine the remaining airspace (life) of all the disposal Facilities (cumulative - integrated system) available to the Metro (to ignore private Facilities).	Ultimate > 10 years & Actual > 8 years	% Increase

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Progressive Rehabilitation, Closure and End-Use Plan	Development and Implementation of Progressive Rehabilitation, Closure and End-Use Plan for disposal sites, presenting the phased progressive rehabilitation of waste body, limiting water ingress (thus leachate production), environmental & social impacts, licensing and preparation for Closure and End-Use of Landfill which includes future responsibilities (Monitoring and Reporting).	Quantitative and Qualitative Assessments: 1: Yes / No 2: Alignment with Sequencing of Events	Yes / No
Financial Performance			
Total Operating Cost per Tonne of Waste Disposed	A measure of overall cost efficiency that can be used to monitor performance improvement or benchmark against others. Cost to include total operating cost of the solid waste department, including depreciation and finance charges.	Annual operating expenditure (as reported in Schedule A2), divided by reported tonnage of waste disposed.	R/ton
Total Operating Cost for Collections per Tonne of Waste Collected	A measure of collection efficiency. Costs to include all collection services provided to households, informal and formal, whether provided by the municipality or contractors on their behalf. Includes transfer station and haulage costs, but excludes any disposal, separation or alternative treatment costs. Excludes any public cleansing, street sweeping and illegal dumping costs.	Annual operating expenditure for collections, divided by reported tonnage of waste collected.	R/ton
Total Operating Cost for Disposal per Tonne of Waste Disposed	A measure of disposal cost efficiency that can be used to monitor performance improvement or benchmark against others. Costs to include all disposal or alternative treatment costs, but exclude transfer stations, haulage and waste minimisation.	Annual operating expenditure for disposal, divided by reported tonnage of waste disposed.	R/ton
Total Service Charge Revenue per Tonne of Waste Disposed (Billing)	A measure of revenue coverage with overlap with cost coverage ratio, but useful for benchmarking (Monthly Fee for Collection / Removal and Transport) - Is the rate reflective	Annual service charges revenue for waste management (as reported in Schedule A4), divided by reported tonnage of waste disposed.	R/ton
Operating Cost Coverage Ratio	Measures the degree to which waste charges revenue (excluding subsidies and transfers from rates) covers operating expenditure	Annual service charges revenue for waste management (as reported in Schedule A4), divided by annual waste management expenditure (as reported in Schedule A2).	Unitless Ratio
Net Operating Surplus / Deficit	Measurement of Financial Viability as a Going Concern	Total Refuse Revenue less Total Refuse Expenditure/Total Refuse Revenue × 100	%
Growth in number of billed residential customers per 100 000 population	Measurement of revenue completeness. Most useful for benchmarking between metros, but incentivises adding customers to the billing database.	(Total number of residential customer accounts at financial year end - Total number of residential consumer accounts at previous financial year end) / total population x 100 000	customers per 100,000 population
Growth in number of billed non-residential customers per 100 000 population	Measurement of competitiveness with the private sector.	(Total number of non-residential accounts at financial year end - Total number of non-residential consumer accounts at previous financial year end)/ total population x 100 000	customers per 100,000 population
Cash from Operations (Free Cash Flow)	Measure of Cash Available for Investments - only applicable if separate income statements are produced	(Cash and Cash Equivalents - Unspent Conditional Grants - Overdraft) + Short Term Investment) / Monthly Fixed Operational Expenditure excluding (Depreciation, Amortisation, Provision for Bad Debts, Impairment and Loss on Disposal of Assets)	Months

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Days of Cash on Hand	Liquidity Measure - Ability to cover costs and pay creditors	Cash and cash equivalents (Schedule A6) / (annual operating expenditure (Schedule A2) less depreciation and debt impairment) * 365	Days
Debtor Days After Provisions	Measure of Debt Management - Only Applicable if Solid Waste Department has control of Debtor Management	((Gross Debtors - Bad debt Provision)/ Actual Billed Revenue)) x 365	Days
Debt (Total Borrowings) / Revenue	Measure of manageable debt, but can also indicate space for borrowing - only to be used where specific debt is allocated to the solid waste function.	(Overdraft + Current Finance Lease Obligation + Non current Finance Lease Obligation + Short Term Borrowings + Long term borrowing) / (Total Operating Revenue - Operational Conditional Grants) x 100	%
Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful and Unauthorised Expenditure / Total Operating Expenditure	Measure of Supply Chain Management Controls - only to be used if the Solid Waste department has control of SCM Processes	(Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful and Unauthorised Expenditure) / Total Operating Expenditure x100	%
Capital Expenditure Budget Implementation	Measure of capital project implementation effectiveness - only to be used if the solid waste department has control of SCM processes.	Actual capital Expenditure / Budget Capital Expenditure x 100	%
Repairs and Maintenance as a % of Property, Plant and Equipment, Investment Property (Carrying Value)	Measure of adequate expenditure on asset maintenance	Total Repairs and Maintenance Expenditure/ Property, Plant and Equipment and Investment Property(Carrying value) x 100	%
Remuneration as % of Total Operating Expenditure	Measure of staffing efficiency (read together with contracted services)	Employee Related Costs /Total Operating Expenditure x100	
Contracted Services as % of Total Operating Expenditure	Measure of internal control and mitigating factor against staff numbers (read together with remuneration)	Contracted Services /Total Operating Expenditure x100	
Alternative Revenue / Total Revenue	Measures revenues from alternative sources, including landfill gas utilisation, recycling, composting, clean development mechanism, concessions as a percentage of total revenue	(Total revenue - service charge revenue - grants - contributions from rates) / Total revenue	%
Other / Cross-Cutting Issues			
Single Point of Accountability	Does the head of department report to the accounting officer, and does that person have control over the 7 areas outlined in the 7 boc utility framework?	Yes / No	Yes / No
Climate Change Resilience at Municipal Facilities	Emission Reduction through capture and processing (min. Flaring)	% Increase in Carbon Credits Reported and Associated Revenue Generated	% Increase in Carbon Credits & Revenue
Climate Change Resilience for logistics	Emissions calculation and monitoring of all fleet used in sector (operations vehicles used at disposal facilities, transfer facilities and collections), including those contracted out, based on actual vehicle usage (mileage) and vehicle type, plus planning to reduce emissions by selective fleet/type.	% Reduction in total carbon emissions specific to all operating fleet used in sector, year-on-year.	% Decrease
Alternative Energy	Combustion of LFG for Energy Production	% Increase MWh Generated from LFG	% Average MWh/Month (Increase)

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Waste Characterisation Studies	Characterisation studies to be done on waste being managed. Intention is to understand the composition of the waste (material types) being managed and disposed/ transferred and that generated at household. Study to be done twice a year (wet/dry season).	Wet and Dry Season Waste Characterisation Studies for entire Metro, must not be older than 5 years	Yes / No
Awareness and Education of Waste Generators	Awareness and education campaigns to Educate and to Keep "Live" the topic of waste diversion from landfill, safe living environment, avoidance of waste generation at source, which must include avoidance of Illegal Dumping	Composite Assessment: Qualitative Assessment of Sector Investment and Effort based on Number of Education Campaigns for Landfill Avoidance and promotion of Separation at Source	% of Number (Increase)
Extended Producer Responsibility Framework	Producer Responsibility Organisation Engagement Framework, with formal record of meetings/sessions, together with agreed milestones (targets) for collaboration and promotion of waste collection and diversion.	Development of a PRO Engagement Framework with Business Conditions with PROs (to contain SLAs)	Yes / No
Enabling Environment for Alternative Waste Management	Engage with and allow for Enabling Environment with PROs to align market demand (and development of demand) with waste minimisation opportunities at the Metro. Evidence being formal record of meetings/sessions, together with agreed milestones (targets).	Composite Indicator: 1: Evidence of Engagement & Collaboration to Enable Environment for Alternative Waste Management 2: Increase in Collaborations	1: Yes / No 2: % Number (Increase)
Separation at Source	Implementation of a Source Separation Programme (<i>by Metro/ via Contract or declaration by private recycler doing collection</i>).	Composite Indicator: 1: Yes / No 2: Increase in No of Households which Service is Offered	1: Yes / No 2: % Number (Increase)
SMME Development	Inclusion of private sector SMME to share in operation of collection systems and transfer facilities, promotes labour involvement and job creation potential.	Increase in Contracts with SMMEs	% of Number (Increase)
Informal Sector & Waste Picker Integration	Inclusion of Informal Sector and Waste Pickers (Reclaimers), by creating an Enabling Environment from which they may have Access to Materials and a Safer Working Environment	Qualitative Assessment: Evidence of increased integration of Informal Sector and Waste Pickers	Yes / No
Creation of enabling environment for private sector investment	Metro to create a business opportunity to allow for private sector investment into waste diversion and beneficiation projects.	Number of Contracts concluded with Private Sector which unlocks private sector investment	Number
Waste Flow and Service Delivery Reporting	Waste Quantity Reporting, as per the following criteria: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Tonnes of Municipal Solid Waste sent to Landfill/Capita - Tonnes of Municipal Solid Waste Diverted from Landfill/Capita Tonnes (Total) of Municipal Solid Waste Collected/Capita Service Delivery Reporting, as per the following criteria: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Percentage of Households with Basic Refuse Removal Services or Better - Percentage of Recognised Informal Settlements Receiving Basic Waste Removal Services - Percentage of Scheduled Waste Collection Service Points Experiencing Collection Delays of > 1 Day 	% of Circular 88 Reporting Requirements being undertaken as per Deadlines prescribed (Tier 1 - Tier 3) SAWIS Reporting of data	% Increase

Annexure 4: Preliminary Screening of MTSP Activities

		Results Area 1: Water and Sanitation Sector								
No.	PforR Results Area	Risks and Impacts that would prohibit the activity (RA) from being undertaken under PforR								
		Significant conversion or degradation of critical natural habitats or critical cultural heritage sites	Air, water, or soil contamination leading to significant adverse impacts on the health of ecosystems	Workplace conditions that expose workers to significant risks to health and personal safety	Land acquisition and/or resettlement of a scale or nature that will have significant adverse impacts on affected people, or the use of forced evictions	Large-scale changes in land use or access to land and/or natural resources	Adverse E&S impacts covering large geographical areas, including transboundary impacts, or global impacts such as greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions	Significant cumulative, induced, or indirect impacts	Activities that involve the use of forced or child labor	Marginalization of, discrimination against, or conflict within or among, social (including ethnic and racial) groups
1: Governance and Accountability										
1.1	Develop mechanisms to protect WS business from erosion	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1.2	Undertake comprehensive reforms in the water sector to strengthen service delivery of W&S services	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1.3	Improve accountability of W&S business management									
1.3.1	Develop fit for purpose responsibility organograms	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1.3.2	Prepare incentive programs for good performance	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1.3.3	Engage private sector to assist in efficient delivery	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
1.3.4	Improve efficiency of procurement processes	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2: Financial Performance										
2.1	Design and implement performance based contracts	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.2	Develop tariff structure	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.3	Develop short, medium and long term infrastructure investment plans and resilience and sustainability	x	o	o	o	x	x	o	x	x
2.4	Carry out energy efficiency and NRW reduction and cost-recovery	x	o	o	o	x	x	o	x	x
2.5	Improve billing collection system	x	o	o	x	x	x	o	x	x
2.6	Consider smart meters for automatic monitoring	x	o	o	o	x	x	o	x	x
2.7	Implement commercial financing practices and implement modern accounting practices	x	o	o	o	x	x	o	x	x
3: Reliability and Operational Performance										
3.1	Rehabilitate, repair and expand existing water supply and sanitation systems	x	o	o	o	x	x	o	x	x
3.2	Improve management and information systems	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.3	Reduce NRW through incentives to operators	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.4	Develop and track an index to measure operational efficiency	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.5	Develop and track water information systems to assist in climate resilience decision-making	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.6	Build capacity in E&S sector professionals									
3.6.1	Determine and implement qualification requirements	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.6.2	Strengthening monitoring capacities	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.6.3	Strengthening reporting	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.6.4	Capacity building for sustainable management of existing and future assets	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.6.5	increased participation of women in provision of water supply service	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.7	Improve service upgrades									

	Improve procurement processes to increase efficiency and mitigate cost increases	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Strengthen existing M&E systems to comprehensively track service delivery, operational, financial, and customer satisfaction metrics	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Develop centralized utility systems and databases to collect performance and billing data	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Establish a protocol for regular reporting and disclosure of performance. Include reporting of service delivery to poor and vulnerable groups	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Simplify administrative procedure and streamline operations by automating repetitive tasks and fostering collaboration across different departments and units	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Establish methods for setting well-defined and transparent tariffs	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Publish a detailed annual report, including audited financial statements and the results of the citizen report card	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Develop a performance scorecard based on customer service, financial performance and efficiency, organizational processes and modernization, and the implementation of the investment plan	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Establish an independent business unit with integrated support services and a single point of management accountability to account for electricity service delivery	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Increase the integration of renewable energy by aligning operational policies with national regulations and establishing a renewable energy department	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Improve project management processes by establishing a Project Management Office (PMO) to centralize project oversight, implementing standardized project management methodologies and tools, and by conducting regular project performance evaluation reviews	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Enhance customer engagement and response by (i) upgrading customer contact center systems (interactive voice response, chatbots, call-routing technologies), (ii) organizing educational campaigns to inform customers about new billing processes (iii) implementing real-time customer feedback (iv) conducting annual customer surveys to assess satisfaction with service delivery (v) supporting the inclusion of women in identifying and addressing issues	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	Reduce discrepancies in customer billing by (i) establishing smart meters across customer bases (ii) establishing regular audits and cross-checks to identify billing discrepancies	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2: Operational Performance										
2.1	Reduce discrepancies in customer billing by:									
2.1.1	Establishing smart meters across customer bases	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.1.2	Establishing regular audits and cross-checks to identify billing discrepancies	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

2.2	Reduce technical and non-technical losses to 8%.	x	o	o	o	x	x	x	x	o
2.3	Reduce downtime and improve resolution of power outages by:									
2.3.1	Implementing outage management systems integrated with smart grids	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.3.2	Distributing maintenance teams strategically to cover larger regions efficiently	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.3.3	Analyzing historical outage data to fix common faults points	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.4	Reduce operational inefficiencies and premature asset failure by implementing a comprehensive asset management system with predictive maintenance and minimizing work-in-progress delays	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.5	Streamline maintenance processes to reduce downtime and improve asset performance by:									
2.5.1	Implementing a Condition-Based Maintenance (CBM) program	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.5.2	Developing a predictive maintenance schedule and deploying condition monitoring devices on critical assets	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.5.3	Training maintenance teams on CBM procedures and provide them with a digital maintenance manual	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.5.4	Optimizing stores inventory and spare parts management by implementing a predictive spare parts ordering system and by establishing partnerships with reliable suppliers	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.6	Enhance infrastructure protection measures to mitigate risks of damage and theft. In particular:									
2.6.1	Implement integrated security solutions and surveillance cameras and alarm systems at critical infrastructure sites	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.6.2	Increase public awareness on infrastructure protection	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.6.3	Collaborate with local communities and law enforcement agencies to support reporting of suspicious activities	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.6.4	Implement design modifications, upgrade fencing and access control mechanisms, and explore innovative solutions (e.g. smart tagging) to deter theft and vandalism	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.6.5	Conduct regular security audits and assessments	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.7	Promote the adoption of innovative technologies and sustainable practices to modernize infrastructure and address environmental concerns. In particular:									
2.7.1	Launch a pilot program to explore feasibility and benefits from the integration of renewable energy sources into the electricity network	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.7.2	Collaborate with research institutes and industry partners to identify emerging technologies such as smart grid or energy storage systems solutions to improve grid resilience	x	o	o	x	x	x	x	x	o
2.7.3	implement initiatives to promote energy efficiency such as public awareness campaigns, incentives for energy-efficient appliances and demand-side management programs	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Key										
X	The impact described will not arise or is highly unlikely to arise									

2.2	Implement system to measure cost of collection per ton of waste. Costs to include all collection services but exclude any disposal costs	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.3	Implement system to measure cost of disposal per ton of waste. Costs to include all disposal services or alternative treatment costs, but excluded transfer stations, haulage and waste minimization.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.4	Determine total service charge revenue per ton of waste disposed	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.5	Determine operating cost coverage ratio	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.6	Measure and report net operating surplus / deficit	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.7	Measure and report net operating	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.8	Measure and report growth in number of billed residential customers per 100 000 population	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.9	Measure growth in number of billed non-residential customers per 100 000 population	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.10	Determine free flow cash (cash available from operations) for use in investments	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.11	Determine days of cash on hand (liquidity measure)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.12	Determine debtor days after provisions	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.13	Determine total borrowing / revenue	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.14	Determine irregular / fruitless and wasteful unauthorised expenditure / total operating expenditure	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.15	Determine capital project implementation effectiveness (if waste dept. has control of SCM processes)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.16	Measure repairs and maintenance data as a % of property, plant and equipment investment (asset maintenance)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.17	Determine staff remuneration as a % of total operating expenditure (measure of staffing efficiency)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.18	Determine contracted services as a % of total operating expenditure (measure of internal control and mitigation against staff numbers)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
2.19	Determine revenue from alternative sources such as landfill gas, recycling, composting, clean development mechanism, etc.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3: Cross Cutting / Other										
3.1	Establish single point of accountability	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.2	Determine climate change resilience at municipal facilities (measure emission reduction through capture and processing - min. flating)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.3	Climate change resilience - calculate emissions and monitor all fleet vehicles used in sector, plus planning to reduce emissions by selective fleet / type	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.4	Alternative Energy - combustion of LFG for Energy Production	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.5	Waste characterisation studies to understand composition of waste being managed.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

3.6	Awareness and education campaigns to Educate and to Keep "Live" the topic of waste diversion from landfill, safe living environment, avoidance of waste generation at source, which must include avoidance of illegal dumping	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.7	Producer Responsibility Organisation Engagement Framework, with formal record of meetings/sessions, together with agreed milestones (targets) for collaboration and promotion of waste collection and diversion.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.8	Engage with and allow for Enabling Environment with PROs to align market demand (and development of demand) with waste minimisation opportunities at the Metro. Evidence being formal record of meetings/sessions, together with agreed milestones (targets).	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.9	Implementation of a Source Separation Programme (by Metro/ via Contract or declaration by private recycler doing collection).	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.10	Inclusion of private sector SMME to share in operation of collection systems and transfer facilities, promotes labour involvement and job creation potential.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.11	Inclusion of private sector SMME to share in operation of collection systems and transfer facilities, promotes labour involvement and job creation potential.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.12	Inclusion of informal sector and waste pickers (reclaimers), by creating an enabling environment from which they may have access to materials and a safer working environment	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.13	Metro to create a business opportunity to allow for private sector investment into waste diversion and beneficiation projects.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
3.14	Waste flow and service deliver reporting according to specified criteria - Percentage of Households with Basic Refuse Removal Services or Better - Percentage of Recognised Informal Settlements Receiving Basic Waste Removal Services - Percentage of Scheduled Waste Collection Service Points Experiencing Collection Delays of > 1 Day	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4: Operational										
4.1	All landfills and transfer stations to have operational weighbridge(s) (bi-annually calibrated and certified for trade), with back-up power supply and off-site data storage	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.2	Accessibility of waste services in informal areas - coverage of passive collection services to public informal areas (drop-offs)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.3	Accessibility of waste services in formal areas - coverage of passive collection services to public informal areas(Waste containers, skips, etc.)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.4	Diversion of Waste Materials from landfill (other than organics and e-Waste), i.e. greens beneficiated, inerts utilised, as well as plastics, paper, glass, textiles and metals	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

4.5	Diversion of e-waste from disposal (landfill) and which are being beneficiated - inclusion of relevant PRO's into planning and intervention	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.6	Diversion of organics from disposal (landfill) - inclusion of the private sector involvement and associated investment (enabling environment).	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.7	Formal record keeping of illegal dumping reported, together with dates and data of material dumped (general character, approximate volume/tonnage) plus location (for GIS mapping of hot spots)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.8	All facilities operated by the Metro licensed or registered for operational use and the registration and/or license is valid.	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.9	Compliance against license conditions for all licensed and audited facilities (internal & external audits)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.10	Optimised facility preparedness by ensuring that all:									
4.10.1	Site Operating Plans are in-place & valid (less than 1 year old)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.10.2	Environmental Management Plans are in-place, valid (less than 3-years old) & applicable (to most recent license/registration conditions)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.10.3	Emergency Preparedness and Response Plans are in-place, valid (less than 1 year old) & applicable (to most recent license/registration conditions)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.11	Improved landfill operations for optimised use of airspace, environmental protection and safety for staff, customers and public. Requires actions to achieve and monitoring of (i) compaction density, slope stability, landscape rehabilitation and removal, OHS	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.12	Landfill airspace - determination of remaining airspace (life) of all the disposal facilities (cumulative - integrated system) available to the metros	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
4.13	Development and implementation of progressive rehabilitation, closure and end-use plan for disposal sites, presenting the phased progressive rehabilitation of waste body, limiting water ingress (thus leachate production), environmental & social impacts, licensing and preparation for closure and end-use of landfill which includes future responsibilities (monitoring and reporting	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Key										
X	The impact described will not arise or is highly unlikely to arise									
O	The impact described could arise but is unlikely given the limited scale of the RA and subject to implementation of good international industrial practice (GIIP) - compliance with which may require some local capacity building and training									
Note	A number of Results Areas are specifically designed to enhance positive outcomes in relation to the potential impacts described (e.g: social conflicts; rehabilitation of landfills) and to enhance the capacity of the responsible institutions. This is not acknowledged in the table which is designed only to screen Results Areas for significant negative E&S risks and impacts									

Annexure 5: SCP National Treasury Meeting

Date: 20 January 2025

Attendees:

Sheenagh Bruce	World Bank
Sibongile Mazibuko	National Treasury
Anthea Stephens	National Treasury
Sydney Maesela	National Treasury
Juanita Whitfield	World Bank
Aimonchok Tashieva	World Bank
Collen Masango	World Bank
Mark Wood	Consultant World Bank
Greg Huggins	Consultant World Bank
Neil McCloud	National Treasury
Diego Juan Rodriguez	World Bank

Meeting notes:

- **Meeting Introduction:** The World Bank facilitated the meeting, introducing the Bank team and consulting team members.
- **Purpose of the Session:** The Bank Team explained the purpose of the session, which was to provide an overview of the key findings of the environmental and social systems assessment prepared by consultants Mark Wood and Greg Huggins.
 - **Session Purpose:** The Bank Team explained that the session aimed to provide an overview of the key findings from the environmental and social systems assessment (ESSA) prepared by consultants. The goal was to gather input on the findings before presenting them to the metros.
 - **Consultants' Role:** The Bank Team highlighted that the consultants prepared the ESSA and would present the draft findings. The team sought feedback on the findings to refine the presentation for the metros.
- **Presentation Overview:** The Bank Team presented the environmental and social systems assessment, discussing the context, risks, and recommendations for the P4R project.
 - **ESSA Context:** The Bank team provided an introduction to the ESSA, explaining its purpose within the P4R financing framework. He emphasized that the ESSA is not an environmental impact assessment but focuses on the acceptability of the proposed program.
 - **Risk Categories:** The Bank team discussed the risk categories used in the ESSA, highlighting the distinction between high, substantial, moderate, and low risks. He explained that high-risk programs are not eligible for P4R financing, while moderate and low-risk programs are.

- **Exclusions:** The Bank team outlined activities typically excluded from P4R programs, such as those impacting critical natural habitats or involving large-scale water infrastructure. He provided examples to illustrate these exclusions.
- **ESSA Principles:** The Bank team explained the six principles used in the ESSA to assess the program, including environmental and social sustainability, natural habitats, public and worker safety, and social conflict. He detailed how the program aligns with these principles.
- **Environmental and Social Risks:** The Bank team highlighted the importance of financial and institutional reform for the success of the program and discussed the environmental risks associated with the program, including the management of civil and electrical rehabilitation works.
 - **Financial Reform:** The Bank team emphasized that financial and institutional reform is crucial for the program's success. He noted that without these reforms, the expected benefits, including environmental and social improvements, are unlikely to materialize.
 - **Environmental Risks:** The Bank team discussed the environmental risks associated with the program, focusing on the management of civil and electrical rehabilitation works. He noted that these risks are expected to be relatively minor and manageable through good engineering practices.
 - **Performance Indicators:** The Bank team highlighted the importance of performance indicators in determining the program's success. He mentioned ongoing discussions with the design team to ensure the indicators are meaningful, measurable, and avoid duplication.
- **Social Risks and Benefits:** The Bank team discussed the social risks and benefits of the program, including potential displacement, the integration of waste pickers, and the need for consistent measures of indigency across municipalities.
 - **Potential Displacement:** The Bank team addressed the potential for minor displacement or loss of livelihood due to infrastructure development, particularly in informal settlements. He emphasized that proper management can mitigate these risks.
 - **Waste Pickers:** The Bank team discussed the integration of waste pickers into the formal waste management system. He noted that different municipalities have varying capacities to implement guidelines, and a common approach is needed to protect and benefit vulnerable groups.
 - **Indigency Measures:** The Bank team highlighted the need for consistent measures of indigency across municipalities. He pointed out that different definitions and applications of subsidies for water, sanitation, and electricity can lead to inequities and sustainability issues.

- **Recommendations:** The Bank team and Greg Huggins provided recommendations, including the need for clear performance indicators, a common approach to waste picker integration, and the development of environmental and social management systems.
 - **Performance Indicators:** The Bank team recommended that performance indicators be clearly defined and measurable, avoiding overlap with other KPIs. They emphasized the importance of consistency across metros and the use of recognized scientific methodologies.
 - **Waste Picker Integration:** They recommended developing a common approach to waste picker integration, involving active participation from all metros. This approach should align with existing guidelines to ensure protection and benefit for vulnerable groups.
 - **Management Systems:** They suggested that trading services develop simple environmental and social management systems to manage activities under the program. Existing systems can be adapted to include the program's requirements.
 - **Staged Compliance:** The Bank team recommended a staged approach to environmental and social compliance to avoid disincentivizing metros. They noted that improvements would depend on the program's financial and institutional reforms.
- **Discussion and Questions:** CSP raised questions about the implications of the findings and recommendations for the P4R process, and the timing of the process given the undefined nature of the projects.
 - **CSP Question:** CSP asked about the implications of the findings and recommendations for the P4R process, specifically whether they would be requirements or recommendations. The bank team clarified that the recommendations are not embedded as requirements in legal agreements but are part of the ESSA document.
 - **CSP Question:** CSP inquired about the timing of the process, given that the projects are not yet defined. The bank team explained that the ESSA assesses the capacity and systems to handle the program's risks and that high-risk projects are not expected to be financed downstream.
- **Next Steps:** The team agreed to share the draft presentation and make any necessary changes before the session with the metros, and to continue discussions on the concerns raised by CSP and the Bank team.

Follow-up tasks:

- **Presentation Sharing:** Share the draft presentation with CSP team for comments and changes before the meeting with metros. (Bank Team)
- **ESSA Recommendations:** Discuss and finalize the approach to reflect thresholds and boundaries in the ESSA document with the broader team. (Bank Team)

- **ESSA Presentation:** Modify the introduction of the ESSA presentation to ensure clarity on the inclusion of large projects. (Ban team)
- **ESSA Document:** Develop the final table in the ESSA document to include measures, responsible parties, deadlines, and completion indicators. (Bank team)
- **ESSA Discussion:** Take the discussion on the receptiveness of counterparts to various requirements offline with the team. (Bank team)

Annexure 6: Minutes of Meeting with the Eight Metropolitan Stakeholders Date: 21 January 2025

Attendees

Name	Organization
Sydney Maesela	Treasury
Tiyani G. Sambo	Tshwane Metro
Sheenagh Bruce	World Bank
Anisha Dharumrajh	Tshwane Metro
Sindiswa Simelane (External)	Ethekwini Metro
Motlanalo MZ. Mautla (External)	Ekurhuleni Metro
Mark Wood (External)	Consultant World Bank
Greg Huggins (External)	Consultant World Bank
Abel Malaka	Tshwane Metro
Albertus G. Van Zyl	Tshwane Metro
Juanita Whitfield	World Bank
Office of the COO	Tshwane Metro
Ndivho Lukhwareni	Tshwane Metro
Bongani S. Khoza	Tshwane Metro
Aimonchok Tashieva	World Bank
Tshwane Metro	Tshwane Metro
Louis N. Makhubele	Tshwane Metro
Yubanthren Tyrin Naidoo	City of Johannesburg
Thokozani Maseko (External)	Ekurhuleni Metro
Lubabalo Matakane (External)	Ekurhuleni Metro
Thuthuka Mzimela	City of Johannesburg
Daniel Sullivan	City of Cape Town
Revelation I. Masobeng (External)	Mangaung Metro
Paledi Marota	Tshwane Metro
Tsholofelo Koopedi (External)	Ekurhuleni Metro
Office of GSO	Tshwane Metro
Otega Sithole (External)	Ekurhuleni Metro
Nokuthula N. Chakane (External)	Mangaung Metro
Anton M. Groenewald	Tshwane Metro
Lebo Molefe	City of Johannesburg
Andre Roux	City of Cape Town

Meeting notes:

- **Meeting Introduction:** The World Bank facilitated the meeting, introducing the Bank team and consulting team members.
- **Purpose of the Session:** The Bank Team explained the purpose of the session, which was to provide an overview of the key findings of the environmental and social systems assessment prepared by consultants Mark Wood and Greg Huggins.
 - **Session Purpose:** The Bank Team explained that the session aimed to provide an overview of the key findings from the environmental and social systems assessment

(ESSA) prepared by consultants. The goal was to gather input on the findings before presenting them to the metros.

- **Consultants' Role:** The Bank Team highlighted that the consultants prepared the ESSA and would present the draft findings. The team sought feedback on the findings to refine the presentation for the metros.
- **Presentation Overview:** The Bank Team presented the environmental and social systems assessment, discussing the context, risks, and recommendations for the P4R project.
 - **ESSA Context:** The Bank team introduced the ESSA, explaining its purpose within the P4R financing framework. He emphasized that the ESSA is not an environmental impact assessment but focuses on the acceptability of the proposed program.
 - **Risk Categories:** The Bank team discussed the risk categories used in the ESSA, highlighting the distinction between high, substantial, moderate, and low risks. He explained that high-risk programs are not eligible for P4R financing, while moderate and low-risk programs are.
 - **Exclusions:** The Bank team outlined activities typically excluded from P4R programs, such as those impacting on critical natural habitats or involving large-scale water infrastructure. He provided examples to illustrate these exclusions.
 - **ESSA Principles:** The Bank team explained the six principles used in the ESSA to assess the program, including environmental and social sustainability, natural habitats, public and worker safety, and social conflict. He detailed how the program aligns with these principles.
- **Environmental and Social Risks:** The Bank team highlighted the importance of financial and institutional reform for the success of the program and discussed the environmental risks associated with the program, including the management of civil and electrical rehabilitation works.
 - **Financial Reform:** The Bank team emphasized that financial and institutional reform is crucial for the program's success. He noted that without these reforms, the expected benefits, including environmental and social improvements, are unlikely to materialize.
 - **Environmental Risks:** The Bank team discussed the environmental risks associated with the program, focusing on the management of civil and electrical rehabilitation works. He noted that these risks are expected to be relatively minor and manageable through good engineering practices.
 - **Performance Indicators:** The Bank team highlighted the importance of performance indicators in determining the program's success. He mentioned ongoing discussions with the design team to ensure the indicators are meaningful, measurable, and avoid duplication.

- **Social Risks and Benefits:** The Bank team discussed the social risks and benefits of the program, including potential displacement, the integration of waste pickers, and the need for consistent measures of indigency across municipalities.
 - **Potential Displacement:** The Bank team addressed the potential for minor displacement or loss of livelihood due to infrastructure development, particularly in informal settlements. He emphasized that proper management can mitigate these risks.
 - **Waste Pickers:** The Bank team discussed the integration of waste pickers into the formal waste management system. He noted that different municipalities have varying capacities to implement guidelines, and a common approach is needed to protect and benefit vulnerable groups.
 - **Indigency Measures:** The Bank team highlighted the need for consistent measures of indigency across municipalities. He pointed out that different definitions and applications of subsidies for water, sanitation, and electricity can lead to inequities and sustainability issues.
- **Recommendations:** The Bank team and Greg Huggins provided recommendations, including the need for clear performance indicators, a common approach to waste picker integration, and the development of environmental and social management systems.
 - **Performance Indicators:** The Bank team recommended that performance indicators be clearly defined and measurable, avoiding overlap with other KPIs. They emphasized the importance of consistency across metros and the use of recognized scientific methodologies.
 - **Waste Picker Integration:** They recommended developing a common approach to waste picker integration, involving active participation from all metros. This approach should align with existing guidelines to ensure protection and benefit for vulnerable groups.
 - **Management Systems:** They suggested that trading services develop simple environmental and social management systems to manage activities under the program. Existing systems can be adapted to include the program's requirements.
 - **Staged Compliance:** The Bank team recommended a staged approach to environmental and social compliance to avoid disincentivizing metros. They noted that improvements would depend on the program's financial and institutional reforms.

The floor was opened for questions:

Tshwane Metro noted that they have a risk analysis in place for their services that are sent to Treasury but that they do not include environmental or social aspects. They wished to know if they need to update these risk assessments to include the broader social and environmental system required. The metro noted that environmental compliance requirements and systems are covered in law in South Africa. They sought guidance on what more needed to be done to be able to comply. They made the point that the Metros all differ and standardizing an ESMP could be challenging. Tshwane also said that

standards being applied for environmental and social management should not be such that they stifle development.

City of Johannesburg said they were busy working on the performance action plan for the MTSP reform program and wanted to know if the ESSA requirements would be included as a requirement of the current performance action plan. They said that revising the performance action plan to include new requirements would be difficult now given the time frame.

World Bank team said that several of the environmental and social requirements are already in the KPI's in the performance review document. Treasury will look at the ESSA and decide if additional indicators need to be included in the coming years. The ESSA includes recommendations, but these are recommendations only at this stage. Treasury is aware of pressures on the metros to develop the performance review. The ESSA does not undermine A1 and A2 documents already developed. It should be noted that the current South African legislative policy is robust and as such further requirements for performance indicators is not necessarily envisaged. Bank emphasized the risk-based nature of the ESAA. They emphasized that the risks identified were moderate.

ANNEXURE 7: Slide Pack Presented at the Metropolitan Stakeholder Meeting

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program Program for Results

DRAFT

ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIAL SYSTEMS
ASSESSMENT (ESSA)

Summary Presentation

January 15, 2025



Index

1. ESSA Risk Rating – Overview
2. Six Core E&S Principles
3. Key Findings and Recommendations

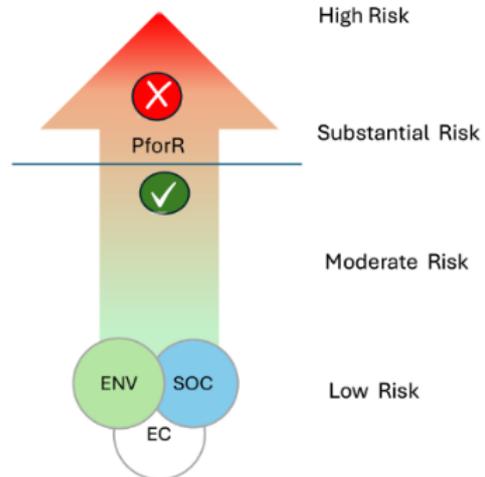


5



ESSA Risk Rating - Overview

- Purpose of the ESSA in PforR financing
- World Bank E&S Risk Categories – “High, Substantial, Moderate, Low”.
- MSTP program risk rated as “**moderate**”, determined against the six Core Principles of the World Bank Policy and Directive for PforR.
- Risk to “physical cultural resources” not applicable. No envisaged greenfield infrastructure development.
- Biophysical impacts will be significant, but these are **overwhelmingly positive** and as such do not pose a risk.



Activities not supported under PforR

Activities likely to have with high negative risks (including cumulative or induced risk) on:

- Critical natural habitats or critical cultural heritage sites
- Air, water, or soil causing human or ecological harm
- Workplace health and safety
- Land acquisition and/or resettlement
- Large geographical areas, including transboundary impacts, or global impacts such as greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions
- Forced or child labor
- Marginalization of, discrimination against, or conflict within or among, social (including ethnic and racial, vulnerable groups

Examples

- Power plants
- Major transport infrastructure (e.g: new highways, urban metro systems, railways, and ports)
- Mining and extractive industries
- Commercial logging
- Large-scale water (surface and groundwater) resource infrastructure, including (e.g: large dams, bulk water conveyance, activities negatively affecting water quality or availability)
- Manufacturing or industrial processing facilities



Activities not supported under PforR

Activities likely to have with high negative risks (including cumulative or induced risk) on:

- Critical natural habitats or critical cultural heritage sites
- Air, water, or soil causing human or ecological harm
- Workplace health and safety
- Land acquisition and/or resettlement
- Large geographical areas, including transboundary impacts, or global impacts such as greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions
- Forced or child labor
- Marginalization of, discrimination against, or conflict within or among, social (including ethnic and racial, vulnerable groups

Examples

- Power plants
- Major transport infrastructure (e.g: new highways, urban metro systems, railways, and ports)
- Mining and extractive industries
- Commercial logging
- Large-scale water (surface and groundwater) resource infrastructure, including (e.g: large dams, bulk water conveyance, activities negatively affecting water quality or availability)
- Manufacturing or industrial processing facilities



Principle 2 – Natural Habitats

Program E&S management systems are designed to avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse impacts on natural habitats resulting from the program. Program activities that involve the significant conversion or degradation of critical natural habitats are not eligible for PforR financing

- Impacts on natural habitats will be overwhelmingly positive
- Reduced wastage of water will delay the need for additional storage capacity, improving efficiency of use and reducing ecological impacts in often sensitive aquatic ecosystems
- Reduced pollution of river systems due to improved WWTW performance will enhance downstream ecological function. Eutrophication and other toxic pollutants released by urban sewage systems are a major cause of aquatic impacts on river systems
- Improved capability to implement the waste hierarchy will strengthen the circular economy, minimising resource wastage
- Support of the municipalities and primary plastic producers will enhance implementation of primary producer responsibilities in terms of plastic recycling
- Reduced wastage of electricity will improve efficiency of use, per capita, reducing overall demand with its direct and indirect environmental costs

Principle 3 - Protection of Public and Worker Safety

Program E&S management systems are designed to protect public and worker safety against the potential risks associated with (a) the construction and/or operation of facilities or other operational practices under the program; (b) exposure to toxic chemicals, hazardous wastes, and otherwise dangerous materials under the Program; and (c) reconstruction or rehabilitation of infrastructure located in areas prone to natural hazards

- RSA has rigorous worker health and safety legislation (OHSA Act and COIDA).
- The metros generally align their approach to the requirements of the OHSA and COIDA.
- The MTSP reforms proposed are likely to improve accountability, making each service responsible for managing, monitoring and reporting on its own OHS performance, even in cases where it depends on other Metro departments for some of the inputs.
- The ability of the program to evaluate the effectiveness of OHS management improvement will depend on the proposed KPIs. It may be necessary to provide greater support to the weaker municipalities in this regard, and to make provision for staged benchmarks for improvement.



Principle 4 - Land Acquisition and Loss of Access to Natural Resources

Program E&S systems manage land acquisition and loss of access to natural resources in a way that avoids or minimizes displacement, and assists affected people in improving, or at minimum restoring, their livelihoods and living standards.

- No greenfield infrastructure development is currently envisaged, or would be permitted under the PforR instrument rule, however minor displacement or loss of livelihood may be considered, depending on circumstances and the way it is managed.
- Displacement or livelihood impacts are most likely to be associated with network system expansion and, to a lesser extent, rehabilitation and repair of MTSP infrastructure.
- South Africa has legislation in place to ensure that alternatives to displacement are considered prior to project authorization, and that vulnerable people without formal residential rights are not arbitrarily evicted (PIE). As displacement or livelihood impacts are likely to be very limited, the risk is considered moderate.



Principle 5 - Indigenous Peoples and Vulnerable Groups

Program E&S systems give due consideration to the cultural appropriateness of, and equitable access to, program benefits, giving special attention to rights and interests of Indigenous Peoples and to the needs or concerns of vulnerable groups

- In the context of South Africa, the indigenous groups, as defined in the World Bank, are not applicable
- However, there are other groups such as women, undocumented foreigners, retired workers and unemployed youth, who do not meet the Indigenous Peoples criteria but are present in the MTSP areas and may need additional support to benefit from the Program.
- The most likely activity where support would be needed is associated with the waste pickers. Some municipalities will have limited capacity to translate the intent of the current waste picker integration guidelines into actions that will protect and benefit the vulnerable.
- Although vulnerable households enjoy access to subsidies for water, sanitation and electricity these are unevenly applied across the metropolitan areas. Although not explicit in the current format of the program, an embedded universal approach across the municipalities to subsidies/free services and a common matrix for measurement of satisfactory implementation potentially has vulnerability consequences.



Principle 6 - Social Conflict

Program E&S systems avoids exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial disputes

- The requirement is to avoid exacerbating social conflict, especially in fragile states, post-conflict areas, or areas subject to territorial dispute.
- South Africa is not a post-conflict areas or subject to territorial disputes.
- However, there are aspects of the proposed activities that, if not managed, have the potential to replicate or promote inherent social conflicts. An example are reported dispute between waste pickers and municipal security staff to protect the landfill site against perceived threats by waste pickers. Although not at odds with a reformist agenda, the lack of alignment between the vision expressed by some municipal officials and a waste picker integration approach could replicate conflict for resources in the waste sector. Against a background of poverty/social tensions and increased opportunity for elite capture this could increase social conflict in competition for waste-generated resources and revenues.
- An unintended consequence of improved security of water supply could be increased social conflict linked to the so called “water tanker mafia” with a sabotage agenda. Better security of water supply could increase conflict between these criminal elements and municipal staff who combine with the community members who try to protect the infrastructure.





Key Findings and Recommendations

11



Key Findings and Recommendations

- The environmental and social impact of the MTSP will be **overwhelmingly beneficial**. The program directly addresses the root causes of the failure of the three metropolitan trading service sectors to deliver a service which is efficient, equitable, and environmentally and socially sustainable.
- The project team wishes to avoid MTSP reforms that place unnecessary **additional monitoring and reporting burdens** on the metros where existing performance indicators, already applied by the metros, are satisfactory. There will be some rationalization needed, since these reporting requirements consolidate various environmental and other performance indicators into a risk-based metric that may duplicate or conflict with other MTSP metrics.
- Key performance indicators must be **clearly defined and measurable**, and wherever possible, avoid overlap with other KPIs. In cases where recognized scientific methodologies are required to provide accurate, credible, results these should be specified to provide consistency across metros. Where South African norms and standards are applicable, these are to be preferred. It is recommended that the sector documentation for each metro's services includes **supporting definitions for the KPIs**.

12



Key Findings and Recommendations

- There are **no overarching or universal social metrics that coincide with the program**. Different metros have varying indicators for determination of indigency. A discussion with the NT as well as the metros as to a process for synchronization of measures of indices so as to ensure that free basic water, sanitation and electricity access is equitable as well as sustainably applied should be considered.
- The development of a common approach that is **consistent with the guidelines for waste picker integration** into the formal waste management process is recommended. This should be developed with active participation of all of the participating metros.
- Some activities undertaken by the Metro Trading Services require licenses and permits which may include conditions of approval. Managing policy and legal compliance will be more effective if these **requirements are consolidated into a register**, developed and maintained for each metro service.

Key Findings and Recommendations

- A **staged approach to environmental and social compliance** should be adopted to avoid disincentivizing the metros in the initial period of the 6-year tenure of the grant. Much of the E&S improvement (demonstrated by outcomes indicators) will be dependent on reform in the institutional and financial components of the project (demonstrated by input indicators) for effect to be in place.
- Service provision is the most public facing of municipal functions. While there are differences between the metros in their ability and willingness to capture and address concerns and complaints, all would benefit from **improved communication strategies** about their service. A program wide grievance mechanism to be adopted by all metros for the purposes of the services being considered could be considered.



Key Findings and Recommendations

- All trading services must develop and implement an **Environmental and Social Management System** (ESMS), following IFC guidelines and a recognized international standard such as ISO 14001.

- External audit teams are to include **environmental and social specialists** who are competent to judge whether the applicable data supporting KPIs is credible, and that performance benchmarks have been met.

12

- Key performance indicators must be clearly defined and measurable, and wherever possible, avoid overlap with other KPIs. In cases where recognized scientific methodologies are required to provide accurate, credible, results these should be specified to provide consistency across metros. Where South African norms and standards are applicable, these are to be preferred. It is recommended that the sector documentation for each metro's services includes supporting definitions for the KPIs in addition to any interim benchmarks that are determined to allow for phased improvements in compliance.



Annexure 8: Relevant legal framework on Environmental and Social Aspects of the MTSP

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
National Policies, Legislation and Regulations		
<p>The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)</p>	<p>Chapter 2 Section 24 – enshrines environmental rights. Section 24 sets out the protection of the right of every person to a healthy environment. This includes environmental protection from pollution and degradation, and other aspects related to the environment that may cause harm to the health and wellbeing of citizens.</p> <p>The Constitution requires all organs of state to take legislative and other measures to give effect to environmental rights. It further contains objectives related to local government in terms of ensuring the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner and to promote a safe and healthy environment. It clearly allocates the duty for air pollution, noise pollution, refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste and cleansing to local governments (municipalities).</p> <p>Section 25 of the Constitution addresses issues of property rights and lays the ground for just expropriation of property in terms of the law. It states that, expropriation shall be subject to compensation, the amount of which and the time and manner of payment of which have either been agreed to by those affected or decided or approved by a court. The amount of the compensation and the time and manner of payment must be just and equitable, reflecting an equitable balance between the public interest and the interests of those affected, having regard to all relevant circumstances.</p>	<p>The Constitution is relevant as it enshrines environmental rights and requires all organs of state to ensure legislation and other measures are put in place to ensure environmental protection.</p>
<p>National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) amended</p>	<p>The NEMA is the overarching act for environmental matters in South Africa. It provides for co-operative environmental governance based on the principles set out in the Constitution that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to his or her health and wellbeing, it further enables the administration and enforcement of other environmental management laws.</p> <p>Chapter 1 of NEMA contains environmental management principles for environmental management in South Africa and applies to organs of the state that may significantly impact on the environment. It sets out the application of the mitigation hierarchy of avoid, minimize, mitigate and offset and the need for municipalities to ensure that their Integrated Development Plans comply with the principles set out in Chapter 1 of NEMA.</p>	<p>The act is relevant. It provides the framework for environmental management in all spheres of the government. It sets out the preparation of management plans to delineate and align responsibilities and oversight. It further requires environmental risks to be identified and mitigated through the relevant instruments required as per the EIA regulations.</p>

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	<p>Chapter 3 requires the preparation of environmental implementation and management plans at National and provincial level. The purpose of the environmental implementation plans is to coordinate and harmonize environmental policy, plans, programs and decisions to minimise duplications. It describes the policies, plans and programs that may significantly affect the environment and how the various entities will ensure compliance with norms and standards.</p> <p>NEMA further sets out requirements for enforcement of compliance through the Environmental Management Inspectorates appointed in all spheres of the government and or through the establishment of environmental bylaws for municipalities setting out measures to audit, monitor and ensure compliance, reporting and furnishing of information to provincial and national governments.</p>	
<p>EIA Regulations of 2014 (as amended) and associated listed activities</p>	<p>The purpose of the EIA Regulations is to regulate the procedure and criteria related to the preparation, evaluation, submission, processing and consideration of, and decision on, applications for environmental authorisations for the commencement of activities, which requires the preparation of an environmental impact assessment, in order to avoid or mitigate detrimental impacts on the environment, and to optimise positive environmental impacts.</p> <p>The regulations contain a list of activities, which are preserved to have a potential to cause an adverse impact on the environment, for which an environmental impact assessment need to be prepared and submitted to the relevant environmental authority.</p>	<p>Activities will be undertaken within urban perimeters, and within existing footprint of infrastructure, therefore it is unlikely that the activities will trigger a listed activity which requires the preparation of an environmental impact assessment. However, the act is still regarded relevant, and activities will need to be screened against the listed notices.</p> <p>Most activities within urban areas, specifically associated with municipal services are exempted from EIA processes except for waste water treatment plants which requires a basic assessment for 2,000 to 15,000 cubic meters through put and a full EIA for 15,000 cubic meter through put</p>
<p>National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998)</p>	<p>Provides for the protection, use, development, conservation, management, and control of water resources in a sustainable and equitable manner. It stipulates that the National government is the custodian of water resources in South Africa, while responsibilities for water services are delegated to municipalities under the Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997).</p>	<p>The act is relevant as it provides for the provision of conservation and protection of water resources at a national level.</p>
<p>Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997)</p>	<p>To provide a regulatory framework for local authorities to supply water and sanitation services in their respective areas. The responsibility for water services is delegated to district and metropolitan municipalities (Water Service Authorities). Among others, the responsibility of water service authorities is to prepare water</p>	<p>The act is relevant as it mandates metros to protect and conserve water resources as part of their duty as water service authorities.</p>

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	<p>services development plans to progressively ensure efficient, affordable, economical and sustainable access to water, develop bylaws and standards (quality limits, monitoring and reporting) and manage performance, and promote consumer education and communication on aspects of health and hygiene, water conservation and demand management etc.</p>	
<p>National Environmental Management: Waste Act (Act 59 of 2008)</p>	<p>A municipality must exercise its executive authority to deliver waste management services, including waste removal, waste storage and waste disposal services, in a manner that does not conflict with section 7 or 8 of the Act.</p> <p>Each municipality must exercise its executive authority and perform its duty in relation to waste services, including waste collection, waste storage and waste disposal services, by—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ adhering to all national and provincial norms and standards; ▪ integrating its waste management plans with its integrated development plans; ▪ ensuring access for all to such services; ▪ providing such services at an affordable price, in line with its tariff policy referred to in Chapter 8 of the Municipal Systems Act; ▪ ensuring sustainable services through effective and efficient management; ▪ keeping separate financial statements, including a balance sheet of the services provided. <p>In exercising its executive authority a municipality may furthermore, amongst other things, set—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ local standards for the separation, compacting and storage of solid waste that is collected as part of the municipal service or that is disposed of at a municipal waste disposal facility; ▪ local standards for the management of solid waste that is disposed of by the municipality or at a waste disposal facility owned by the municipality, including requirements in respect of the avoidance and minimisation of the generation of waste and the re-use, recycling and recovery of solid waste; ▪ local standards in respect of the directing of solid waste that is collected as part of the municipal service or that is disposed of by the municipality or at a municipal waste disposal facility to specific waste treatment and disposal facilities; and local standards in respect of the control of litter. 	<p>The Act is relevant as the Program will support the improvement of waste service delivery in the metros.</p>

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	<p>Designation of waste management officers - Each municipality authorised to carry out waste management services by the Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act No. 117 of 1998), must designate in writing a waste management officer from its administration to be responsible for co-ordinating matters pertaining to waste management in that municipality.</p> <p>Integrated Waste Management plans - Municipalities are required to prepare and submit an integrated waste management plan to the MEC for approval. The approved integrated waste management plan must be included in the municipal Integrated Development Plan.</p> <p>The Waste act sets out specific activities in Category A and B for which an environmental impact assessment need to be undertaken and a waste licence obtained prior to undertaking of the activity.</p>	
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004)	<p>The act requires that municipalities prepare an air quality management plan as part of their IDP. Metropolitan and district municipalities are responsible for the administration of atmospheric emissions licensing systems. Municipalities are required to comply with national standards in monitoring atmospheric emissions, while their performance in implementation will be monitored by the provinces. They may draft bylaws, identify substances or mixtures in the ambient air that may present a threat to health or the environment and set local emission standards for these (which may not be lower than national or provincial standards).</p> <p>Designated air quality officer: Each municipality must designate an air quality officer who must coordinate air quality management matters within the national framework. Where municipalities do not have the capacity to administer atmospheric emission licensing systems, the function will be implemented at Provincial level.</p>	The act is relevant as it allocates the responsibilities of air quality monitoring to the municipalities. This will be applicable to activities such as air quality monitoring at landfill sites.
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act	<p>The Act provides for the management and conservation of South Africa’s biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources.</p> <p>It requires the preparation of an environmental implementation or environmental management plan at provincial and local government levels and for municipalities</p>	Activities will be undertaken within urban perimeters, and within existing footprint of infrastructure, therefore it is unlikely that the activities will impact on any biodiversity sensitive areas.

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	to incorporate biodiversity planning and protection of listed ecosystems in its Spatial Development Framework and IDP.	
National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)	The Act provides several tools for the management of heritage resources, including grading, surveys, heritage registers, and the designation of heritage areas. It sets out the responsibility for cultural heritage management and protection at all three spheres of the government. Municipalities are entrusted with the protection of Grade III cultural heritage – heritage resources that have not been graded or which are of local significance and value. They are required to undertake heritage surveys and to identify and map heritage resources of potential significance. They are required to submit an inventory of heritage resources, which revising planning or zoning schemes or their spatial development frameworks. Protection of cultural heritage need to be incorporated in bylaws and municipal planning (IDP).	Activities will be undertaken within urban perimeters, and within existing footprint of infrastructure, therefore it is unlikely that the activities will impact on any structures of cultural heritage. However, the act is still regarded as relevant and where needed a notice of intent will need to be submitted to the Heritage authority.
Hazardous Substances Act (Act 15 of 1973) and its Regulations	Provides for the control of substances which may cause injury or ill-health to or death of human beings by reason of their toxic, corrosive, irritant, strongly sensitising or flammable nature or the generation of pressure thereby in certain circumstances, and for the control of certain electronic products. Provides for the division of such substances or products into groups in relation to the degree of danger. Provides for the prohibition and control of the importation, manufacture, sale, use, operation, application, modification, disposal or dumping of such substances and products.	The Act is relevant as municipal workers and contractors may be exposed to potentially harmful substances during as part of the operations, refurbishment, and installation of the infrastructure.
Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993) and its regulations.	Requires employers to i) identify potential safety and health hazards and risks in the workplace; ii) ensure the workplace is free of hazardous substances that may cause injury, damage, or disease, iii) inform workers of potential hazards, iv) put measures in place to avoid, substitute or mitigate health and safety hazards and risk and provide necessary personnel protective equipment as relevant.	This act is relevant as municipal workers may be exposed to health and safety hazards and risks. The refurbishment and installation of supporting infrastructure may pose a health and safety hazard and risk to contractors that need to be mitigated as set out in this act and its associated regulations.
Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act (Act 130 of 1993)	The COID Act makes provision for compensation for disablement caused by occupational injuries or diseases sustained or contracted by employees in the course of their employment, or for death resulting from such injuries or diseases.	This Act is relevant as municipal workers may be exposed to health and safety hazards and risks that may cause injuries, diseases and/or death. The refurbishment and installation of supporting infrastructure may pose a health and safety hazard that may cause injuries, diseases and/or death to

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
		contractors for which compensation under the act can be claimed.
Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000)	<p>The Act sets out the rights and duties of municipal councils in terms of ensuring community environmental rights are upheld. It sets out the duty of the municipalities to provide municipal services in an environmentally sustainable manner while promoting a safe and healthy environment and maximizing environmental benefits.</p> <p>The Act further requires the municipality to assess expected effect of municipal services on the environment and on human health and wellbeing and safety, and allocate sufficient human, financial and other resources necessary for provision of municipal services in an environmentally sustainable measure.</p> <p>It allows for the alignment of municipal Integrated Development Plans with national and provincial plans and strategies.</p>	The Act is relevant as it requires municipalities to assess environmental impacts and to consider environmentally sustainable aspects in its planning and provision of municipal services.
Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) amended	<p>Allocates duties and responsibilities between the different tiers of local government:</p> <p>Metropolitan municipalities (Category A) are assigned all environmental functions.</p> <p>Local municipalities (Category B) are responsible for all environmental functions not assigned to districts.</p> <p>District municipalities (Category C) are responsible for solid waste disposal sites, in so far as it relates to-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The determination of a waste disposal strategy; ▪ the regulation of waste disposal; ▪ The establishment, operation and control of waste disposal sites, bulk waste transfer facilities and waste disposal facilities for more than one local municipality. ▪ Responsible for water services as defined in the Water services act. 	The Act is relevant as it re-enforces the responsibilities for environmental protection and provide clarity about the specific responsibilities of each category of municipality.
Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act 16 of 2013)	The act requires municipalities to prepare a Spatial Development Framework. The Spatial Development Framework must include a strategic assessment of the environmental effects and opportunities within the municipal area, including the identification of environmental sensitivities, high potential agricultural land and coastal areas as relevant.	This Act is relevant as it requires municipalities to incorporate aspects of environmental protection into its overall planning

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
National Frameworks and Strategies	<p>Various frameworks and strategies have been prepared at national level with the aim to ensure coordination and harmonization of environmental matters in government spheres to ensure the protection of environment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ National Framework on Sustainable Development (2008) ▪ National Waste Management Strategy (2011) ▪ The Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy for South Africa (2014) ▪ National Water Resource Strategy (2004) ▪ Climate Change Response Strategy (2004) ▪ National Framework for Sustainable Development (2006) ▪ National Strategy for Sustainable Development (2010) ▪ National Framework for Air Quality Management (2007) 	<p>The strategies and frameworks are relevant as it sets out the responsibility of the municipalities to integrated aspects of environmental protection in their SDF and IDF.</p>
The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (Act No. 3 of 2000) (PAJA)	<p>The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA) requires that organs of state follow fair administrative procedures in their dealings with the public. These procedures focus on the right to make representation as opposed to the right to be consulted. The Act is applicable generally and creates a default position where a specific law does not have any such provisions</p>	<p>The Act is relevant and a crucial piece of legislation that ensures that administrative actions are conducted fairly and justly, protecting the rights of individuals and promoting good governance. PAJA is applicable to municipal actions as municipalities are considered "organs of state" under PAJA, and their actions are subject to the principles of lawful, reasonable, and procedurally fair administrative action. When municipalities make decisions or take actions that affect individuals' rights, they must comply with the requirements set out in PAJA</p>
Prevention of Illegal Eviction from and Unlawful Occupation of Land (Act 19 of 1998) (PIE)	<p>PIE provides for the prohibition of unlawful eviction, gives procedures for the eviction of unlawful occupiers and repeals the prevention of Illegal Squatting Act, 1951. The act generally prevents anyone being evicted from their home, or have their home demolished without an order of court made after considering all the relevant circumstances. In this case, the law should regulate the eviction of unlawful occupiers from land in a fair manner, while recognising the right of landowners to apply to a court for an eviction order in appropriate circumstances. Special consideration should be given to the rights of the elderly, children, disabled persons and particularly households headed by women. If an unlawful occupier has occupied the land in question for more than six months, an order for eviction</p>	<p>This Act is relevant should municipalities be required to alienate land for the purposes of infrastructure development and the land is occupied illegally.</p>

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	<p>can be granted when it is just and equitable to do so and when alternative accommodation is provided.</p>	
<p>The South African Housing Code of 2009</p>	<p>The Code outlines specific requirements for municipalities regarding the provision of temporary emergency accommodation. Key aspects relevant to this include:</p> <p>Municipalities must follow the guidelines and policies set out in the Housing Code to provide temporary emergency housing.</p> <p>Municipalities are responsible for applying for emergency housing grants and managing the funds allocated for temporary emergency accommodation.</p> <p>Municipalities, along with provincial and national departments, have defined roles in the implementation of emergency housing projects.</p> <p>There are specific criteria to determine who qualifies for temporary emergency accommodation, including individuals and families displaced by disasters or evictions.</p> <p>The Housing Code provides detailed guidelines for the implementation of emergency housing projects, including planning requirements and general guiding principles.</p> <p>The requirements ensure that municipalities can effectively provide safe and adequate temporary emergency accommodation to those in need.</p>	<p>This Policy is relevant should municipalities be required to alienate land for the purposes of infrastructure development and the land is occupied illegally.</p>
<p>Expropriation Act 13 of 2024</p>	<p>This replaces the Act of 1975. While the core principle of the state having rights of eminent domain and required to pay compensation for acquisition of property and rights. Core aspects of the new Act include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The new act aligns with the Constitution, particularly Section 25, which deals with property rights and expropriation. ▪ The new act defines what constitutes a public purpose (e.g., building roads, schools, hospitals) and public interest (e.g., land reform). ▪ The new act introduces the possibility of "nil compensation" in specific cases, such as abandoned land, unproductive land, or land acquired illegally. However, compensation must still be "just and equitable," reflecting a balance between public interest and the rights of those affected. 	<p>This Act is relevant if the Municipalities require the alienation land held privately to be able to expand or more effectively manage services associated with the MTSP</p>

Policy/Legislation/ Procedure/Plan/Guideline	Provisions	Relevance
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ The new act outlines detailed procedures for expropriation, including mandatory consultation with property owners and attempts to reach an agreement before expropriation.	

Annexure 9: Summary of Green Drop Report Scores for 2023 (DWS, 2023)

For the purposes of the present analysis of the DWS Green Drop results, the Cumulative Risk Rating (CRR) is presented, which is the cumulative risk, based on four indicators, associated with individual WWTWs in the metros. These indicators are (i) design capacity of the WWTW (the larger the works, the greater the risk) (ii) operational flow as a % of capacity (iii) number of non-compliant effluent quality parameters at point of discharge into the environment (parameters include pH, EC, SS, COD, NH3-N, NO3-N, O-PO4, E.coli/Faecal coliforms) (iv) number of technical skills gaps (supervision, operation, maintenance). The CRR scoring legend is as follows:

%CRR/CRR_{max} Deviation	90 – 100% Critical Risk WWTW's	
	70 - 90% High Risk WWTW's	
	50-70% Medium Risk WWTW's	
	Less 50% Low Risk WWTW's	

The table presents the interim 2023 results for the MTSP metros.

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
Buffalo City	Berlin	68,8	2 000	46,5	19,2	57,9	58,8	50,0	100,0	100,0
	Bhisho	61,5	800	0,0	24,2	100,0	100,0	0,0	100,0	100,0
	Breidback	80,0	212	0,0	4,0	NMR	NMR	0,0	100,0	100,0
	Central	73,3	5 000	0,0	40,0	88,9	7,9	100,0	0,0	100,0
	Dimbaza	57,1	7 000	79,9	0,0	93,0	85,1	0,0	100,0	100,0
	East Bank	42,3	40 000	48,3	0,0	100,0	100,0	33,0	0,0	100,0
	Gonubie	50,0	18 000	17,3	0,0	100,0	86,8	67,0	0,0	100,0
	Kayser's Beach	82,4	115	0,0	0,0	41,7	25,0	50,0	100,0	100,0
	Kidds Beach	58,8	375	80,0	50,0	76,5	56,3	0,0	100,0	100,0
	Mdantsane	84,6	24 000	0,0	0,0	78,4	55,5	25,0	100,0	100,0
	Potsdam	95,5	9 240	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	33,0	100,0	100,0
	Reeston	31,8	10 000	6,7	12,5	84,8	94,3	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Schorntville	75,0	4 800	0,0	3,0	87,1	54,3	0,0	100,0	100,0
	West Bank	96,3	40 000	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	33,0	0,0	100,0
	Zwelitsha	71,4	9 300	71,5	5,0	82,4	38,6	33,0	100,0	100,0
City of Cape Town	Athlone	69,4	105 000	81,2	0,0	48,1	16,7	60,0	100,0	66,7
	Bellville	68,8	75 000	57,2	59,3	61,5	32,1	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Borchard's Quarry	81,5	38 000	103,2	86,5	44,8	19,3	100,	100,0	66,7
	Camps Bay Outfall	52,9	5 000	36,8	0,0	96,1	91,0	0,0	100,0	66,7

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
	Cape Flats	62,2	20 000	53,5	0,0	67,5	34,3	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Fisantekraal	57,7	24 000	54,2	3,8	71,1	89,4	67,0	100,0	66,7
	Gordon's Bay	50,0	17 280	19,5	88,7	83,7	74,7	20,0	100,0	66,7
	Green Point Outfall	48,1	40 000	49,1	0,0	92,3	99,5	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Groot Springfontein	70,6	10	0,0	0,0	100,0	100,0	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Hout Bay	40,0	10 780	49,3	0,0	97,1	96,3	0,0	100,0	0,0
	Klipheuwel	69,2	90	277,8	98,2	100,0	100,0	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Kraaifontein	47,6	12 500	42,4	89,3	100,0	59,6	67,0	100,0	66,7
	Llandudno	42,9	640	24,8	93,6	40,4	80,2	0,0	100,0	0,0
	Macassar (Strand)	66,7	35 000	86,9	97,9	55,8	32,5	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Melbosstrand	59,1	5 400	50,6	80,2	61,7	55,6	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Miller's Point	38,5	60	6,7	33,3	94,9	100,0	50,0	100,0	0,0
	Mitchell's Plain	63,0	35 000	70,0	77,4	86,3	34,0	67,0	100,0	66,7
	Oudekraal	64,7	30	76,7	100,0	81,9	60,4	0,0	100,0	66,7
	Philadelphia	64,7	86	73,3	93,9	30,9	64,4	0,0	100,0	66,7
	Potsdam (Milnerton)	74,1	47 000	94,0	0,8	35,5	29,9	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Scottsdale	72,7	12 500	55,2	58,6	80,8	45,3	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Simon's Town	52,9	4 700	35,1	100,0	75,0	41,0	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Wesfleur Atlantis	63,6	8 000	0,0	71,4	100,0	73,8	100,0	100,0	0,0
	Wesfleur Industrial	86,4	6 000	0,0	73,0	62,2	73,3	0,0	100,0	0,0

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
	Wildevoevlei	72,7	14 000	58,8	19,6	5,8	38,1	100,0	0,0	66,7
	Zandvliet	71,0	72 000	113,2	90,7	74,5	36,7	100,0	100,0	0,0
City of Ekurhuleni	Ancor	72,7	15 000	230	51,2%	80,2	60,8	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Benoni	31,8	7 500	65,3	92,7	98,4	95,1	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Carl Grundlingh	36,4	5 250	83,4	94,0	99,2	93,6	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Daveyton	43,5	19 000	55,4	95,1	99,6	94,9	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Dekema	55,6	31 000	67,4	81,9	83,5	64,5	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Esther Park	35,3	1 400	58,6	79,2	96,7	93,2	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Hartebeestfontein	46,9	63 000	86,6	79,7	99,5	84,1	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Herbert Bickley	50,0	15 100	135,2	85,3	96,7	92,6	100,0	100,0	100,0
	JP Marais	31,8	15 000	73,7	91,2	99,9	98,4	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Jan Smuts	81,8	6 100	151,6	91,5	91,9	75,7	33,0	100,0	100,0
	Olifantsfontein	84,4	65 000	153,1	51,0	59,7	48,7	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Rondebult	27,3	20 000	50,7	88,1	97,2	94,2	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Rynfield	54,5	10 000	114,6	79,2	99,0	82,5	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Tsakane	50,0	20 000	79,4	84,7	94,7	90,4	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Vlakplaats	81,3	55 000	219,4	35,3	81,0	40,5	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Waterval	83,3	170 000	228,5	87,1	95,6	76,1	100,0	100,0	100,0
Welgedacht	46,9	95 000	85,9	72,4	99,4	94,3	100,0	100,0	100,0	
	Bushkoppie	75,0	200 000	117,8	59,8	97,8	67,8	50,0	100,0	100,0

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
City of Johannesburg	Driefontein	43,8	55 000	76,4	95,9	99,9	94,6	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Ennerdale	66,7	8 000	191,8	98,6	96,2	96,2	50,0	100,0	100,0
	Goudkoppies	58,3	150 000	90	0,0	70,1	7,4	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Northern Works	59,6	405 000	79	76,1	92,3	66,6	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Olifantsvlei	48,8	250 000	62	3,6	99,1	94,7	100,0	100,0	100,0
City of Tshwane	Babelegi Ind. Area	76,5	2 300	100,0	0,0	65,4	68,2	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Baviaanspoort	75,0	60 000	103,3	1,4	65,9	36,6	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Bronkhorstspuit	64,7	5 000	100,0	0,0	78,0	50,4	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Daspoort	65,6	55 000	68,0	31,4	82,7	51,3	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Ekgangala	63,6	10 000	100,0	20,0	72,2	27,8	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Klipgat	62,5	55 000	58,2	0,0	82,5	41,1	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Northern Works	78,4	150 000	107,2	0,0	51,0	25,0	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Rayton	70,6	1 200	100,0	0,0	71,2	30,7	0,0	100,0	66,7
	Refilwe	70,6	2 200	100,0	0,0	72,7	48,8	0,0	100,0	66,7
	Rietgat	63,0	27 000	62,4	7,4	67,9	30,5	0,0	100,0	66,7
	Rooiwal	68,8	54 500	100,0	7,1	69,4	17,7	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Sandspruit	68,2	20 000	100,0	0,0	42,2	28,6	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Summerplace	60,0	300	100,0	14,0	96,5	84,6	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Sunderland Ridge	65,6	95 000	76,8	0,0	47,3	30,7	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Temba	59,1	12 500	100,0	7,0	98,2	61,1	50,0	100,0	66,7

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
	Zeekoegat	65,6	85 000	82,4	0,0	68,9	39,3	100,0	100,0	66,7
City of eThekweni	Amanzimtoti	66,7	27 000	73,3	74,5	76,5	66,5	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Cato Ridge	60,0	950	9,4	69,8	66,7	65,6	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Central	54,1	135 000	39,7	0,0	55,8	4,7	20,0	100,0	66,7
	Craigieburn	80,0	1 000	132,0	51,8	93,3	82,0	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Dassenhoek	35,3	5 000	18,2	80,0	93,3	99,3	100,0	0,0	66,7
	Dbn Water RP	100,0	47 500	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
	Fredville	41,2	2 000	24,4	36,7	99,3	95,2	100,0	0,0	66,7
	Genazzano	58,8	1 800	39,8	85,3	93,2	78,6	50,0	100,0	66,7
	Glenwood Road	83,3	40	0,0	75,0	97,8	NMR	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Hammarsdale	55,6	27 500	19,0	9,4	35,7	42,9	100,0	0,0	66,7
	Hillcrest	58,8	1 200	65,7	44,0	77,3	55,7	50,0	0,0	66,7
	Isipingo	54,5	18 800	58,2	22,6	100,0	88,3	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Kingsburgh	50,0	7 800	73,1	31,7	97,3	87,0	50,0	0,0	66,7
	KwaMashu	59,4	65 000	97,5	8,6	69,6	55,0	50,0	100,0	66,7
	KwaNdengezi	64,7	2 400	70,8	43,2	90,7	60,4	50,0	0,0	66,7
	Magabeni	73,3	800	52,5	82,1	72,0	62,0	50,0	0,0	66,7
	Mpumalanga	40,9	6 400	35,3	90,4	99,1	79,6	100,0	100,0	66,7
New Germany	54,5	7 000	17,8	19,6	76,2	62,5	0,0	0,0	66,7	
Northern	46,9	70 000	43,0	22,4	69,0	51,8	60,0	0,0	66,7	

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
	Phoenix	59,3	40 000	76,4	0,0	75,9	56,9	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Southern	66,7	23 000	82,6	0,0	30,3	36,4	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Tongaat Central	81,8	12 500	150,0	87,7	85,8	73,8	67,0	100,0	66,7
	Umbilo	48,1	23 200	45,7	27,9	78,6	63,8	100,0	0,0	66,7
	Umdloti	52,9	3 000	18,2	65,9	98,3	78,1	100,0	100,0	66,7
	Umhlanga	72,7	6 800	150,0	36,7	84,6	56,7	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Umhlatuzana	59,1	14 800	52,0	23,9	87,2	57,3	25,0	100,0	100,0
	Umkomaas	73,3	1 000	51,9	47,4	94,7	85,0	0,0	0,0	66,7
	Verulam	45,5	12 500	4,6	64,3	83,6	82,8	100,0	100,0	66,7
Mangaung	Bainsvlei	82,4	5 000	72,0	0,0	52,4	22,2	14,0	0,0	0,0
	Bloemdustris	100,0	2 000	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
	Bloemspruit	75,0	56 000	64,3	0,0	0,0	0,0	29,0	0,0	0,0
	Botshabelo	63,6	20 000	100,0	0,0	64,5	35,5	100,0	0,0	0,0
	Dewetsdorp	88,2	2 000	100,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
	N-E Works	59,3	45 000	28,9	0,0	65,9	22,0	100,0	0,0	0,0
	Northern Works	63,6	6 000	83,3	0,0	88,3	78,3	0,0	100,0	0,0
	Soutpan WWTWs	100,0	1 000	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
	Sterkwater	86,4	20 000	175,0	0,0	75,0	37,5	100,0	0,0	0,0
	Thaba Nchu	68,2	6 000	100,0	0,0	65,9	41,3	0,0	0,0	0,0
Vanstadensrus	86,7	300	100,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	0,0	

Metro	Waste water treatment plant (WWTP)	CRR	Design capacity	Operational capacity	Effluent quality non-compliance			Technical Skills Compliance		
					Micro-biological	Physical	Chemical	Process controller	Supervisor	Maintenance team
Unit of measurement		%	Kl/d	(% inflow/design)	%	%	%	%	%	%
	Welvaart	72,7	6 000	91,7	0,0	63,0	37,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
	Wepener	64,7	5 000	100,0	0,0	66,7	77,8	50,0	0,0	0,0
Nelson Mandela Bay	Cape Receife	59,1	9 000	80,2	8,3	77,8	59,1	50,0	100,0	100,0
	Despatch	50,0	8 860	33,9	66,7	97,2	47,9	25,0	0,0	100,0
	Driftsands	40,7	22 000	41,1	25,0	97,2	69,3	50,0	0,0	100,0
	Fishwater Flats	56,8	132 000	82,3	29,6	60,7	63,8	100,0	100,0	100,0
	Kelvi Jones	63,0	24 000	56,3	75,0	38,9	58,3	100,0	0,0	66,7
	KwaNobuhle	86,4	9 000	0,0	66,7	83,3	77,1	50,0	100,0	100,0
	Rocklands	73,3	180	0,0	100,0	91,7	66,7	0,0	0,0	100,0

Annexure 10: Effluent quality recorded at the MSTP Wastewater Treatment Plants in 2022-2023 (modified from DWS, 2023)

Metros / No. of WWTWs	No. of WWTPs with average microbiological compliance (%)				No. of WWTPs with average physical compliance (%)				No. of WWTPs with average chemical compliance (%)			
	0%	1-50%	51-99%	100%	0%	1-50%	51-99%	100%	0%	1-50%	51-99%	100%
Buffalo City (15)	7	8	-	-	2	1	8	3	2	3	7	2
City of Cape Town (26)	6	3	15	2	-	6	16	4	-	11	12	3
City of Ekurhuleni (17)	-	1	16	-	-	-	17	-	-	2	15	-
City of Johannesburg (6)	1	1	4	-	-	-	6	-	-	1	5	-
City of Tshwane (16)	9	7	-	-	-	2	14	-	-	11	5	-
eThekwini (28)	4	13	11	-	1	2	24	1	1	3	23	-
Mangaung (13)	13	-	-	-	5	-	8	-	5	6	2	-

Explanation of Scores: Each WWTW is scored in Green Drop based on its water quality results in relation to its permit conditions. For each WWTW, Green Drop calculates the % score for each water quality parameter for the period in question. For example: Sewage Treatment Works A submits 10 monitoring results per determinant for four parameters, namely COD, NH3-N, NO3-N, O-PO (40 results). Thirty are compliant (within the permit condition/license condition limits), 10 are not. The % score for chemical parameter compliance is therefore 75%. Annexure 10 shows total number of instances that a score is achieved, combined for all WWTWs in one metro. This provides an overall (average) reflection of performance

Annexure 11: Summary of Recent Metro Waste Audit Findings/Recommendations

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
Tshwane	Soshanguve <i>Jul 22</i>	71	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cover waste • Repair broken fences • Apply for new license
	Ga-Rankuwa <i>Jul 22</i>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No records of surface water quality monitoring • poor data records generally • poor management control
	Onderstepoort <i>Jul 22</i>	76	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possible air emission exceedances • No measure of methane gas emitted • No background water quality monitoring • Poor management control • Poor record keeping
	Hatherley <i>Jul 22</i>	53	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No measure of methane gas emitted or other air pollutants • No background water quality monitoring • No monthly monitoring • E Coli found in leachate water • Poor management control • Poor record keeping
	Bronkhorstspuit <i>Jul 22</i>	48	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No measure of methane gas emitted or other air pollutants • No background water quality monitoring • No monthly monitoring • Poor management control • Poor record keeping
Mangaung	Southern Landfill <i>Feb 24</i>	17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weigh bridge U/S • Fleet availability poor • Security issues – fences destroyed by vagrants • Offices without water and power since 2016 • No surface or groundwater monitoring
	Northern Landfill <i>Feb 24</i>	41	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waste quantities not measured • Fleet availability poor • No surface or groundwater monitoring

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
Johannesburg	Robinson Deep <i>Sep 24</i>	66,5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large quantities of uncovered and uncompacted waste • Accumulation of waste in stormwater trenches • Poor traffic management at entrance • Semi-functional compactors • Infrastructure (traffic control lights, roads) in poor condition • Concerns about slope stability – non-compliant with design • Poor leachate management and clean water drainage control • Spillage of waste outside of footprint area
	Marie-Louise <i>Sep 24?</i>	68,6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large quantities of uncovered and uncompacted waste • Accumulation of waste in stormwater trenches • Semi-functional compactors • Poor leachate management and clean water drainage control • Cell liners not constructed in accordance with GN636 National Norms and Standards for Disposal to Landfill • Spillage of waste outside of footprint area • Extensive litter problems • Height increase not based on engineering design and risks landfill stability • Large areas on top of landfill not being covered with intermediate cover, resulting in increased penetration of rainfall and leachate generation • No daily waste disposal cells, resulting in increased haphazard disposal and greater leachate generation • Illegal release of leachate into the environment • Erosion on ‘rehabilitated’ landfill slopes • Uncontrolled access present in several areas • Only some monitoring boreholes functional on site • No firebreaks around landfill gas infrastructure. Accumulated waste around landfill gas infrastructure is a fire/explosion hazard • Weighbridges not functional • General maintenance of infrastructure is poor • A landfill fire occurred during the audit
	Goudkoppies <i>Sep 24?</i>	65,7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CCTV cameras at the facility were not in functional condition. • Leachate seeps from the waste body, even during the dry season. • Silt and litter mixed with leachate inside and adjacent to uncompleted contaminated run-off trenches.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vegetation adjacent to the palisade fence around the leachate pond is causing damage to the fence, as well as to concrete-contaminated run-off trenches. • An informal settlement located near the landfill has a large amount of litter scattered around informal sorting areas. This settlement falls within the designated buffer zone of the landfill. • Landfill standpipe damaged and leaking, resulting in damage to roads and potable water wastage. • Water diversion from the landfill in an uncontrolled manner results in erosion, with waste and silt accumulating in run-off collection systems. • Some manhole rings around landfill gas wells are poorly stacked and sloping sideways. • Waste pickers are working in unsafe conditions amongst reversing waste collection vehicles and landfill plant. • No separation and processing of garden waste occurs on the landfill. • Only a few methane gas probes remain on-site. • Recyclable materials are dumped in the vegetated area, increasing the risk of veld fires near, and on the landfill. • Fires may spread to areas where waste is un-compacted and uncovered. • Uncontained leachate overflowing from leachate ponds has the potential to pollute the Kliprivier. • Tyres disposed of at the landfill are a fire hazard
Cape Town	Vissershok South <i>May 24</i>	90,3	<p>Observations only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fence damage in some areas allowing unauthorized access • Landfill gas extraction plant not operational. Contractor appointed • Daily landfill cells not being defined and working face not being optimally compacted as a result • Landfill operations allow ponding which generates excessive leachate • Tyres stockpiled at the facility are a fire hazard without measures such as firebreaks.
	Vissershok North <i>May 24</i>	90,7	<p>Observations only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The facility is not operational yet. Due to construction of the new N7 road intersection, security is breached in places with a risk of theft or vandalism of the new Class B liners (site security is in place) • The accumulation of silt in the stone base layer will have to be cleared before the geotextile is laid • New screening vegetation is to be established as soon as the security fences are re-installed • Plastic accumulated on part of the site, with Council approval, to be donated to a non-profit organization to mitigate environmental risks, including escape of micro-plastics into the environment.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
	Swartklip Transfer Station <i>Oct 23</i>	94,7	<p>Observations only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Informal settlement encroaching on the facility was noted on the southern border • An Environmental Management Programme was not available during the time of the audit inspection as the EMPr is currently under review • Odour control satisfactory • Security personnel stationed 24/7
	Kraaifontein IWMF G:L:B- <i>Oct 23</i>	90,1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weatherproof, durable and legible signs were displayed at the facility entrance, however the information may be difficult to read from a vehicle. • Security personnel are stationed at the facility 24/7 with K9 units patrolling the facility during the night. The onsite security personnel are assisted by the CCT law enforcement agency. • One of the incoming weighbridges at the facility was not operational due to upgrades being implemented. • The facility fencing was in the process of being upgraded from concrete palisades to precast concrete fencing. • Hazardous waste at the facility was not managed to a satisfactory degree as leaked oil was noted in the bunded area. • Site staff indicated that what is assumed to be asbestos was noted at the facility and was not in the hazardous waste storage area. • Builders rubble containers at the public drop-off area were overfilled, resulting in spillages. • Containers used for the disposal and transportation of general waste at the public drop-off facility were overfilled. • Recyclable material containers were not placed at the right angles to the drop off facility retaining walls results in waste spillage behind the containers. • Odour control measures in the transfer station were satisfactory in suppressing excess odour pollution.
	Tygerberg IWMF <i>Feb 24</i>	87,7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weatherproof, durable and legible signs were displayed at the facility entrance; however, the information may be difficult to read from a vehicle. • Security personnel are stationed at the facility 24/7 with K9 units patrolling the facility during the night. • All four of the facility weighbridges leading to the transfer station were in operational condition. • The operation of all the facilities were sufficient and conducted in a neat and orderly manner. • Odour control measures in the transfer station were satisfactory in suppressing excess odour pollution. • Uncovered asbestos was observed at the household hazardous waste facility.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overfilled skips with plate glass were observed at the public drop off facility. • Stormwater channels were overgrown with vegetation and filled with silt.
	Athlone Refuse Transfer Station <i>Oct 23</i>	97,1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tyres stored in a manner that can cause a fire hazard- also for the adjacent building. • Tyres exposed to the rain are also likely to provide breeding area to mosquitoes. • Waste buildup on apron, which is resulting in (i) access to emergency equipment being obstructed and (ii) steel columns with plinths not being clearly visible. • Section or public road in front entrance damaged (potholes) due to waste truck manoeuvring. • Incoming long-haul trucks required to weigh on the 17-m outgoing weighbridge, which is causing traffic congestion. • Incoming and outgoing boom gates damaged. • Refuelling facility not in compliance with environmental and safety standards. • Front-end-loaders causing damage to WTS apron. • Recyclable material stockpiled randomly, making it difficult to control. • Public drop-off facility for disposable waste unsafe and not user friendly. • Public drop-off facility for C&DW waste unsafe and not user friendly. • Leachate / contaminated runoff generated at the garden waste drop-off / chipping facility. • Curtains between WTS apron and compaction area is creating an obstruction and a safety hazard. • Limited space in the WTS operator’s compartment. • Areas where there is a risk of waste falling from the conveyors accessible to workers. • Signage on flammable liquid store removed. • No bund walls in areas where lubricants are stored. • Illegible signage and unsafe access to used oil collection container. • Large numbers of fluorescent tubes stockpiled in an unsafe manner.
	Coastal Park WDF <i>May 24</i>	87,5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weatherproof, durable and legible signs were displayed at the entrance to the site. However, the landfill Classification is not in compliance with the landfill classification system specified in GNR 636. The information may be difficult to read from inside a vehicle. • A gate at the weighbridge is damaged, creating a potential safety risk. • Contaminated runoff is not separated from the leachate (in accordance with the engineering design), resulting in the leachate being significantly more. The fact

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<p>that there are, despite progress made along the side slopes, still large parts of the landfill that are not rehabilitated results in more water infiltration and the generation of leachate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The landfill is reportedly exceeding the approved (licenced) height by 7m, with the upper surface not domed to the required 2% gradients. The intention is for the CCT to have that waste excavated and transported at high cost for disposal on the new piggyback lined cell. Considering that the IAPs are not expected to lodge objections on visual grounds due to the increased height, it is recommended that the waste not be excavated from its current position due to the high costs associated with the excavation and transport of the waste and the potential impact of the waste excavation on the surrounding environment (odours, scattered waste and windblown litter). • Waste is not being optimally compacted due to an overload of waste for the single workface (with 1 landfill compactor and 1 bulldozer). A waste disposal rate of 40 000 tons or more justifies the operation of an <i>independent</i> 2nd waste disposal face (like the at Vissershok South). • Litter and vegetation obstruct flow in trenches and stormwater channels. Drainage is to be improved. • Silt and sand accumulating in the leachate pond resulted in the need for the pump system to be upgraded. Although silt is still expected to accumulate in the leachate pond, it will, for the remainder of the landfill’s operational life, not have an impact on the new leachate outlet level. There is however a concern that the new leachate pump outlet level will prevent the maintenance of the required freeboard in the leachate pond during periods of heavy rain. • Windblown litter was observed on rehabilitated parts of the landfill. • There is informal housing in the buffer zone, with residents residing in the area entering the landfill illegally. • The number of dwellings seem to have gradually increased • Tyres are to be stockpiled in a dedicated area until a formal treatment/disposal system is implemented by DFFE. Such stockpiling should be done in compliance with the Waste Tyre Regulations, 2017. • Security spikes on the top of the concrete wall are flattened, leading to unauthorised entry to the landfill. • It is further to be ensured that concrete wall panels used for security are not of the hollow core type. • Vegetation on the rehabilitated slopes is generally well established although some erosion was observed
eThekweni	Marianhill Landfill Site	90	<p>The site only accepts garden refuse, cover material and builders rubble.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The silt chamber must be de-silted to allow sufficient remaining holding capacity.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
	Feb 24		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The source of leachate escaping from Header Station A must be identified and repaired. • Sources of contamination at the site exit must be identified and rectified. • There is no stability report available – an annual report is recommended • Annual surveys are not conducted to determine the useful life of the landfill- an annual report is recommended • The severely damaged v-drain must be repaired to allow the “clean” water system to operate as designed • All applicable boreholes must be fitted with locking bolts.
	Buffelsdraai Landfill Site Sep 24	86	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contamination from operation of the landfill found in 4 downgradient boreholes • Surface water quality results at 4 monitoring site downstream of the landfill indicate downstream contamination resulting from leaching from the landfill • CH4 and CO2 levels at borehole and building monitoring points were within the standard • All drains are to be maintained in a clean silt-free condition • Engineering advice must be obtained to determine measures that can be implemented to ensure as little as possible contaminated stormwater is generated on-site to reduce the amount of liquid entering the contaminated stormwater pond. • Leachate and contaminated stormwater must be completely separated. Additional cover and capping should be applied onto existing compacted waste and shaped to prevent surface leachate flow thus reducing the amount of liquid entering the leachate containment facility. The bunded wall around the leachate containment facility must also be repaired. • A freeboard of half a metre must be maintained for contaminated stormwater dam to prevent overtopping. • The drainage system must be unblocked to ensure the free flow of stormwater from the waste body minimising the formation of standing pools of water. • The entrance to the waste body should be reshaped to ensure clear separation between “clean” and “dirty” stormwater. • Litter picking must continue to take place in the area around the concrete storage area. A litter fence be installed around the edge of the concrete storage area to capture wind-blown waste • The gas extraction system must be repaired and brought back online.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
	Bisasar Road Landfill Site Jan 23	76,2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Daily cover should be applied to waste at the end of each working day as per the minimum requirements for waste disposal by landfill. • All boreholes are fitted with lockable caps. • The “clean” v-drain identified on site must be unblocked to enable full operation of the stormwater network along the access road. • All vegetation growth in the “dirty” v-drains must be removed to prevent any further blockages. • The maximum permitted elevation after rehabilitation is 122masl which is below the current maximum elevation of the landfill. Settlement is critical to ensure compliance. • Replace the stolen sign at the entrance to the site. if necessary, place the sign within the gated area of the site. • Repair the broken portion of the fence. Continue frequent perimeter fence inspections. • Submit an updated operations plan to the Department or provide evidence that such a report was submitted to the Department. • Apply daily cover to fully cover the waste at the end of each working day. • Utilise a movable fence around the site or submit a relaxation request to the Department. • Provide evidence that the investigation on the dispersion of odours and other air quality and nuisance variables report was submitted to the Department. • Apply for the rezoning of the site and initiate discussions with property owners to obtain written agreements • Implement a dust monitoring plan for the site which should include passive dust bucket monitoring. • Cordon off boreholes BH D4 N, BH D4 A, LFG9 and LFG11 for health and safety reasons. • Ensure that all boreholes and sample points are accessible for sampling • Fit all boreholes locking bolts.
Ekurhuleni	Weltevreden Landfill Site Mar 24?	No Score	<p>Site temporarily closed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electricity cable to the site has been stolen and the windows in the guardhouse have been vandalised. • Signage must be erected on Main Reef Road showing the direction and distance to the landfill. • Site access to be controlled to prevent illegal access and dumping • Stolen site palisade fencing to be replaced with a more effective solution • The leachate dam area is to be secured to prevent unauthorized access • Waste at the working face must be compacted and covered daily • All reclaimers must have PPE and must sort and store bags in a designated area

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spotters at the PDF must ensure that waste is disposed in the correct skips • Garden waste must be chipped and placed on slopes • Drip trays must be used for vehicles in the unbunded areas, which must be regularly maintained • Housekeeping must be undertaken at the workshops • Fire equipment must be serviced • Appoint engineers to design a contaminated water management system, and establish it once the approved by the relevant authorities. • Direct all leachate to the lined leachate dam, while the contaminated stormwater is routed to the contaminated stormwater dam. • Report waste stream details quarterly on the Gauteng Waste Information System • Report all incidents to GDARD and follow up with an CAP • Maintain a complaints and Response register • Undertaken bi-annual water quality monitoring • Maintain an extraction and flaring system in accordance with regulations • Update the landfill committee details and undertake regular meetings.
	Simmer and Jack Landfill Site Mar 24	54,3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leachate is flowing and pooling in unlined areas. • The site does not have clearly defined stormwater drains directing clean water. • Phase 7 still lacks lined drains, and the stormwater dam, are not built to the specifications of the norms and standards. • Water drains into a clay-lined dam, and leachate is pooling at the toe of Cell 7. • Operational documents have not been updated, and EMPr and license conditions have not been adhered to. • Sections of the fence have been stolen at the southwestern boundary. • Uncovered waste was noted at Cells 5, 6 and 7. • Uncovered waste was noted at the boundary fence along Main Reef Road. • There is no evidence of in-house and on-site COE and Sungu Sungu's staff training. • The gas flaring system is not operational. • Groundwater, stormwater and surface water monitoring was not done for the 2022-23 year. • Investigative monitoring required per the GDARD Directive issued on 28 April 2023 has not been done. • There is no existing leachate pumping system. • There is no information on water chemical analyses for 2022-23. • There is no evidence indicating that reporting on GWIS is done.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is no evidence that CoE has reported failings to comply with operational aspects such as daily compaction, covering waste, and not undertaking gas and water monitoring. • The screening berm installed at Cell 7 is low; hence, wind-blown litter was noted at the slopes. In addition, waste can be seen from the road. • The site notice board does not meet the CoE specifications. • There is traffic congestion, especially at the working face and the road leading to the working face. Some trucks accessing the site do not adhere to the speed limit. • CoE states that it is not financially viable to issue all reclaimers with PPE. Therefore, COE must inform GDARD that they cannot comply with this condition. • Some waste bags were noted near the edge of the working face, resulting in wind-blown litter on the slopes. • The skips at the drop-off zone must be emptied, and the tyres and plant must be removed. • All minor repairs must be done at the workshop, and tyres not in use must be moved offsite. • There is no functional weather station or wheel washbay. • Spills were noted at the workshop, and there was no spill toolkit nor were there drip pans under stationary plant.
	Platkop Landfill Site Mar 24	61,6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is no evidence of COE engaging with landowners to ensure that further development does not occur within the buffer. • Overgrown vegetation on stone pitching in the drains around Phase 1 reduces the efficiency of the drains • The level issue concerning the drains near the leachate sump cannot be ascertained as the area has overgrown vegetation. • The burnt liner at the leachate dam has not been repaired/ replaced. • Litter was noted near the working face (including drains). • The backlog of waste and litter indicates that operational documents are not adequately implemented. • There is no evidence that the annual submission of the map and records concerning asbestos has been done. • No signs (100m intervals) have been erected on the boundary fence to indicate associated hazards of accessing the landfill where asbestos has been disposed. • The direction and distance sign near the N3 is not visible. • Sections of the paved road have subsided. The gravel road is potholed. • Sections of the fence are broken along R550 and N3. The entrance gate is broken. • There is a backlog of uncovered waste.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No weather station exists. Trucks do not use the wheel washbay to dislodge waste from tyres. • Soil compaction was noted around the workshop yard. • There is no evidence that COE does regular staff training. • Groundwater, stormwater and surface water monitoring was not done for the 2022-23 year. • Borehole data has not been updated • There is no evidence that quarterly reporting is done on GWIS. • A stakeholder list was not provided to the auditors, and no meetings have been held
	Rietfontein Landfill Mar 24	No Score	<p>Site temporarily closed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An Infrastructure Condition Assessment should be undertaken to identify the maintenance needs of all on-site infrastructure essential for the site's effective operation. • Regular grass-cutting must be done. • Signs must be erected along Tonk Meter and Vlakfontein Street, indicating the route and distance to the landfill. These signs must conform to the requirements of the Road Ordinance • The general site notice board must be updated when new information exists. • COE must maintain the road leading to the working face regularly. • Access control measures must be effectively implemented • The tariff board must be updated to show the current tariffs. • The fuel storage area must be secured to prevent unauthorised entry. • Illegally dumped waste and the waste in the skips must be collected from the respective areas and disposed of adequately. If it is disposed of at Rietfontein, COE must compact and cover it to minimise odour, vermin, wind-blown litter and the generation of elevated quantities of leachate. • Access control must be effectively implemented to restrict unauthorised access • The slopes at Cell 4 must be stabilised and maintained to promote run-off without excessive erosion • Waste must be compacted and covered to reduce leachate generation, and remediation measures must be implemented where the leachate flows in unbund/unlined areas. • All drains must be regularly maintained to promote water movement to designated containments. • The water from the contaminated dam must be treated to ERWAT standards to ensure disposal into the sewer system. This will assist in lowering the water levels. • The leachate pump system must be reinstated and secured. • Investigative monitoring must be done in areas near the leachate detection system, and remediation measures must be implemented where required. • The site must be reopened to ensure that all issues noted at the contaminated dam, leachate and sub-soil manholes are addressed. • Waste stream records must be maintained and reported quarterly on the GWIS.

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All incidents must be reported to GDARDE, and an Action Plan must be compiled to indicate how they will be addressed. • A Complaints and Response Register must be kept, indicating comments raised and how they were responded to. • Bi-annual water monitoring must be undertaken to ensure that landfill operations do not contaminate water resources. • To be proactive and to minimise contamination of soil and groundwater monitoring, quarterly monitoring of isotopes and bi-annual pressure testing must be done, and findings must be addressed. • Gas monitoring must be undertaken quarterly, and recommended measures must be implemented. • The need to decommission the extraction and flaring system in Area A and re-establish it in Area C must be documented and timeframes indicated. • Details of the landfill committee must be updated, and meetings must be undertaken regularly. This will also assist with disseminating information to the affected communities, thereby avoiding community unrest. • COE are expected to establish and maintain a site file to ensure compliance with the landfill documentation requirements. They must keep records of inspections, monitoring results, design documents, plans, operational procedures, and notices.
	Rooikraal Landfill <i>Mar 24?</i>	Not Scored	<p>Site temporarily closed</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Signs must be erected along Barry Marais Road, indicating the route and distance to the landfill. These signs must conform to the requirements of the Road Ordinance. • The general site notice board must be updated when new information exists. • COE must maintain the road from the working face to the dams. • The tariff board must be updated to show the current tariffs. • Installing a fence around the site and having security personnel at the gate are meant to strictly control access to the landfill and prevent unauthorised access and illegal dumping. As such, the gate at the dams and the fence must be replaced. • The waste at the working face and on slopes must be compacted and covered. In addition, adequate plant must be provided to address the backlog. • All reclaimers should sort and store bags in a designated area. In addition, the waste not reclaimed must be returned to the working face at the end of the day. • Disposal of waste at the PDF must be prohibited since the landfill is not operational. • Garden waste must be chipped and placed on slopes. • Fire is one of the more severe risks that a landfill faces, and it can cause serious damage to infrastructure and create health and air quality problems. Expediting the appointment of the operator

Metro	Waste Management Facility / Date of Audit	Audit Score (%)	Key Non-Compliances with Permit / License Conditions and recommended actions (for some metros)
			<p>will minimise illegal dumping, thereby controlling the emergence of fires. This will also ensure that firebreaks are created and maintained.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The City' should note that maintenance of the firebreaks should be undertaken even though the site is not operating. In addition, there should always be a functioning fire extinguisher in areas that are being utilised, and the burnt liner should be replaced. • Grass, soil and litter in the drains must be removed, and regular maintenance must be undertaken to ensure the functionality of the infrastructure. • The liner must be replaced. • Short- and long-term measures must be implemented to maintain the required freeboard, 0.8m. As per the Technical Advisor's report for March 2021, the following measures should be implemented: • The existing contaminated runoff and leachate dams should be surveyed and redesigned to adjust the dam's embankment and the inlet canal elevations to ensure all runoff is collected and stored in the dams. • The leachate pump system should be reinstated and secured so that leachate can be discharged to the sewer in compliance with the ERWAT requirements. • Waste stream records must be maintained and reported quarterly on the GWIS. • According to Permit Condition 3.11f, h, and i, any incident that may/has caused groundwater pollution should be reported within 24 hours of the incident occurring. As such, the leachate overflow should have been reported to GDARD. • A Complaints and Response Register must be kept, indicating comments raised and how they were responded to. • Gas and water monitoring must be undertaken quarterly, and recommended measures must be implemented. • Missing/damaged probes should be replaced as non-venting results in fires. • The extraction and flaring system should be operated and maintained according to the relevant regulations. • Details of the landfill committee must be updated, and meetings must be undertaken regularly. This will also assist with disseminating information to the affected communities, thereby avoiding community unrest. • COE are expected to establish and maintain a site file to ensure compliance with the landfill documentation requirements. They must keep records of inspections, monitoring results, design documents, plans, operational procedures, and notices

Annexure 12: An Analysis on the Implications of the MTSP for Waste Pickers

Overview

This Annexure will focus on the solid waste management component of the Project, with a specific outlook on the relationship between the informal waste pickers and the relevant solid waste management plans and bylaws of their respective metropolitan municipalities. This document aims to analyze the following key areas:

1. The solid waste management policies and bylaws of eight South African metropolitan municipalities.
2. The implications, both positive and negative, that the aforementioned plans and bylaws have on waste pickers.
3. An assessment of gaps between the respective South African metros policies on solid waste management and the implications they have on waste pickers; against the World Bank's Environmental and Social Framework.

The first section of the document provides a concise gap analysis on the South African metros approach to waste pickers in comparison with the World Bank's Environmental and Social Framework. The gap analysis focuses on four key metrics of each metro and provides a brief assessment of gaps and recommendations to improve upon.

The second section of this document provides a list of key organizations and bodies that have been established to support and advocate for waste pickers in South Africa.

The third section of this document provides an analysis on the South African municipalities and their respective solid waste management policies and the role and recognition the waste pickers play within them.

Gap Analysis of South African Metropolitans Approach to Waste Pickers

This section provides a gap analysis of South African metropolitans solid waste management policies and implementation of inclusion of waste pickers against the World Banks Environmental and Social Framework. The gap analysis is overleaf in Table A12.1 below.

Table A12.1 – GAP analysis

Metro	Solid Waste Management Policy and By-laws	Social Inclusion	Access to Registration	Formal Support	Community Engagement	Gaps to International Good Practice and Recommendations
City of Cape Town	Integrated Waste Management Policy (IWMP) Waste Management By-law 2009	Limited social inclusion; informal waste pickers not formally recognized.	No formal registration system for informal pickers; only authorized service providers are registered.	Minimal formal support for waste pickers; prioritizes formal contractors.	Limited engagement with waste pickers in policy development.	<p>Gaps: Overall, there is limited inclusion, no formal registration, minimal community health safeguards.</p> <p>Recommendation: Establish formal inclusion and registration systems for informal waste pickers to ensure health, safety, and social protections as per World Bank standards.</p>
eThekweni	eThekweni Solid Waste Policy Waste Management By-law 2016	Formal contracts prioritize service providers over waste pickers, restricting their roles.	No formal registration system specifically for informal pickers; limited registration under authorized contracts only.	Formal support limited to service providers; informal pickers lack access to formalized support and benefits.	Limited community engagement with waste pickers for policy discussions and service planning.	<p>Gaps: No social safeguards or formal pathways for inclusion.</p> <p>Recommendation: Develop a registration and health safety framework for waste pickers, provide protective equipment, and ensure equal access to social benefits in alignment with World Bank standards.</p>

Metro	Solid Waste Management Policy and By-laws	Social Inclusion	Access to Registration	Formal Support	Community Engagement	Gaps to International Good Practice and Recommendations
Buffalo City	Buffalo City IWMP Waste Management By-law 2017	Informal waste pickers lack formal inclusion and acknowledgment in policies.	No specific registration framework for informal waste pickers.	Minimal support for waste pickers; informal pickers remain unrecognized in service planning.	Limited engagement with waste pickers; little policy input or awareness campaigns specifically targeting them.	Gaps: Absence of social and economic protections. Recommendation: Adopt an inclusive waste management approach by registering informal pickers, supporting cooperative models, and providing health and safety training in line with World Bank guidelines.
City of Tshwane	Tshwane IWMP Waste Management By-law 2016	Limited inclusion; informal pickers face barriers due to preference for formal waste contractors.	Strict registration limited to authorized waste management contractors; waste pickers not formally included.	Formal support directed toward service providers; informal pickers excluded from benefits like PPE and training.	Minimal engagement; few initiatives to involve waste pickers in planning or community recycling awareness.	Gaps: Lack of environmental and social support safeguards. Recommendation: Introduce registration, protective gear, and cooperative models to align with World Bank standards for labour and working conditions in waste management sectors.
Nelson Mandela Bay	IWMP 2016-2020 Waste Management By-law 2010	Formal inclusion restricted; waste pickers included only within contracted service providers.	No dedicated registration system for waste pickers; only for formal service providers.	Limited support focused on contracted recyclers; informal pickers lack structured benefits and safety measures.	Limited engagement with informal pickers, though public recycling campaigns are present.	Gaps: Limited adherence to occupational health standards and social engagement. Recommendation: Allow waste pickers formal access to resources and social protections, provide PPE, and incorporate waste pickers

Metro	Solid Waste Management Policy and By-laws	Social Inclusion	Access to Registration	Formal Support	Community Engagement	Gaps to International Good Practice and Recommendations
						into the formal economy per World Bank ESF standards.
Mangaung	Mangaung IWMP Solid Waste Disposal By-law 2015	Informal pickers not acknowledged formally in policies; minimal social inclusion.	No registration for informal waste pickers; only formal service providers recognized.	Limited support; no formal benefits or recognition given to informal waste pickers.	Minimal community engagement specifically with waste pickers, limited recycling awareness campaigns.	Gaps: Absence of social safeguards and protective measures. Recommendation: Formalize roles for waste pickers, implement social protection standards, and develop community awareness as encouraged in the World Bank ESF and SWM standards.
City of Johannesburg	Johannesburg Waste Management Policy Waste Management By-law 2013	Limited inclusion; priority given to formal service providers over waste pickers.	No formal registration available for informal waste pickers.	Limited support; no structured assistance for informal pickers beyond existing public services.	Limited engagement with waste pickers in policy-making; some public awareness campaigns on recycling.	Gaps: Limited access to formal employment benefits and social safeguards. Recommendation: Provide waste pickers with protective equipment, legal registration, and stable income models in line with World Bank SWM and social protection standards.

Metro	Solid Waste Management Policy and By-laws	Social Inclusion	Access to Registration	Formal Support	Community Engagement	Gaps to International Good Practice and Recommendations
Ekurhuleni	Ekurhuleni IWMP Waste Management By-law 2016	Waste pickers not formally included; limited acknowledgment in bylaws and policies.	No registration process for informal pickers; only formal service providers are recognized.	No structured formal support; focus remains on formal waste contractors.	Minimal engagement with informal pickers; limited recycling awareness and community involvement initiatives.	Gaps: No recognition or health and safety measures for informal pickers. Recommendation: Establish social safeguards, health protections, and inclusive registration to align with World Bank ESF and solid waste management best practices.

South African Waste Picker Associations

This section provides an overview of the South African Waste Picker Associations and the various roles they play.

South African Waste Pickers Association (SAWPA)

SAWPA was constituted in 2009 as a national movement to represent waste pickers across all nine provinces in South Africa⁷⁹.

Roles:

- **Advocacy:** Promotes the recognition and integration of waste pickers into formal waste management systems.
- **Support:** Provides resources and training to improve the livelihoods and working conditions of waste pickers.
- **Networking:** Facilitates connections among waste pickers to share experiences and strategies.

African Reclaimers Organization (ARO)

Based in Johannesburg, ARO is a collective of waste reclaimers working to assert their rights and improve their working conditions. ARO is a membership-based democratic organisation of reclaimers working with reclaimers in residential areas and landfills⁸⁰.

Roles:

- **Representation:** Serves as a voice for reclaimers in policy discussions and negotiations with municipal authorities.
- **Integration Efforts:** Works towards the formal inclusion of reclaimers in the city's waste management plans.

Hlanganani MaAfrika Waste Picker Cooperative

Hlanganani MaAfrika Waste Picker are a cooperative that brings together waste pickers to collectively improve their economic opportunities⁸¹.

Roles:

- **Economic Empowerment:** Provide a platform for waste pickers to pool resources and access better markets for recyclables.
- **Capacity Building:** Offer training and support to enhance the skills and knowledge of its members.

Ikageng Ditamating

Ikageng Ditamating are an organization focused on supporting waste pickers through various initiatives. Previously operated as two separate groups – Ikageng was made up of women and older men collecting paper and plastic and Ditamating was made up of younger men collecting metals. It

⁷⁹ <https://wastepickers.org.za/about/>

⁸⁰ <https://www.africanreclaimers.org/>

⁸¹ <https://globalrec.org/organization/hlanganani-maafrika-waste-picker-cooperative/>

was decided to unify and agreed that as a common organization all reclaimers would be able to collect all materials with profits to be shared equally⁸².

Roles:

- Support Services: Provides assistance to waste pickers in areas such as health, safety, and financial management.
- Advocacy: Engages in efforts to influence policies in favour of waste pickers' rights and recognition.

International Alliance of Waste Pickers

The International Alliance of Waste Pickers are a global network that includes South African organizations, representing waste pickers worldwide⁸³.

Roles:

- Global Advocacy: Promote the rights and recognition of waste pickers on an international platform.
Resource Sharing: Facilitate the exchange of knowledge and best practices among waste picker organizations globally.

Analysis of South African Municipalities Solid Waste Management Policies and the Implications for Waste Pickers

City of Cape Town

Western Cape Integrated Waste Management Plan 2023-2027

The Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning recognises the role of the informal sector, specifically the waste pickers, in diverting waste from landfill sites and the Cape Town Department has embarked on a support programme for small and micro-waste entrepreneurs since 2015/16. A need was identified to assist municipalities with their waste services procurement specifications in a manner that supports access of these small and micro-waste entrepreneurs (wastepickers and wastepreneurs) to municipal tenders or to recyclable material. Therefore, during 2021, a procurement specialist was appointed to develop four procurement plans, including strategies and specifications, that would include and integrate wastepreneurs into the waste management system.⁸⁴ The City of Cape Town's Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) and Waste Management By-laws provide a framework for waste management, focusing on waste minimization, recycling, and safe disposal practices. Although the IWMP acknowledges the importance and the contributions of waste pickers to recycling efforts and the circular economy, it does not yet have a comprehensive framework for their formal integration into the city's waste management system.

⁸² <https://globalrec.org/organization/ikageng-ditamating/>

⁸³ <https://globalrec.org/>

⁸⁴ Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (2023) Western Cape Integrated Waste Management Plan. chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://www.westerncape.gov.za/eadp/sites/eadp.westerncape.gov.za/files/atoms/files/WC%20IWMP%202023-2027.pdf

The City of Cape Town's solid waste management policies are designed to manage waste generation, collection, disposal and recycling in a sustainable manner. These policies aim to reduce landfill waste, promote recycling, and support the development of a circular economy. However, the policies have both positive and negative impacts on waste pickers, who operate within the city's informal waste collection and recycling systems.

The following sections of this analysis provide a breakdown of Cape Town's policies and bylaws on solid waste management and aim to look at the implications involved for waste pickers.

Key Solid Waste Management Policies and By-Laws and Their Impacts on Waste Pickers:

Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)

The City of Cape Town has an Integrated Waste Management Plan that outlines the city's waste management strategy, focusing on waste reduction, recycling and overall improvement waste management infrastructure.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers in the City of Cape Town:

1. **Increased Recycling Opportunities:** The emphasis on waste diversion from landfills and recycling creates more opportunities for waste pickers to collect recyclables such as plastics, paper and metals, which can be sold for income and support the livelihoods of the waste pickers.
2. **Collaboration/ Registration Potential:** Cape Town's focus on integrating recycling into its formal systems opens up the possibility for waste pickers to collaborate with formal waste management companies, cooperatives, or municipal recycling programs.

Negative Impacts:

1. **Formalization Threat:** As the city formalizes recycling processes, with more efficient separation-at-source systems and private contractors, waste pickers may lose access to valuable materials or face restrictions on the spaces where they previously operated, such as landfills or collection points.
2. **Competition:** The implementation of formal recycling programs could lead to competition between waste pickers and more formalized actors, such as waste management companies or automated recycling systems. In this particular case, an increase in competition could lead to social tension and division amongst the waste pickers

Separation-at-Source Program

The City of Cape Town has introduced a separation-at-source program, where households are encouraged to separate recyclable materials from general waste which allows for easier recycling.

Positive Impacts:

1. **Access to Cleaner Recyclables:** The separation of waste at source will result in cleaner and higher-quality recyclables being available to waste pickers, making their work easier and increasing the potential value of materials they collect.
2. **Opportunities in Recycling Centres:** The city operates recycling centers where waste pickers can potentially sell collected materials, providing a more structured marketplace for recyclables.

Negative Impacts:

1. **Reduced Waste Collection Opportunities:** As households and businesses become more responsible for sorting recyclables, waste pickers may find less valuable material available on streets, landfills, or communal waste bins, reducing their income.
2. **Marginalization from Formal Systems:** If the city outsources the collection and processing of recyclables to private companies or formal waste management services, waste pickers might be excluded from these operations unless proactive efforts are made to integrate them.

Waste Minimization and Recycling By-Law (2009)

This by-law mandates that all residents and businesses in Cape Town reduce their waste and recycle as much as possible. It also imposes penalties for illegal dumping and improper waste handling on its citizens.

Positive Impacts:

1. **Positive Recycling Culture:** By encouraging the recycling of waste, this policy promotes a culture where recyclables become more abundant, increasing the availability of materials for waste pickers.
2. **Formalization of Waste Management:** The by-law could create formal opportunities for waste pickers to participate in the waste recycling economy by becoming integrated into formal waste management programs or cooperatives.

Negative Impacts:

1. **Restrictions on Informal Waste Picking:** Enforcement of proper waste handling and the penalization of informal waste activities could make it more difficult for waste pickers to access certain areas or bins, especially in wealthier neighbourhoods where formal collection services are more strictly enforced.
2. **Criminalization of Waste Pickers:** Waste pickers could face penalties for scavenging if the by-law is interpreted strictly, thereby threatening their livelihood.

Landfill Diversion Targets

Cape Town has set targets to divert waste from landfills and promote recycling, composting, and waste-to-energy programs.

Positive Impacts:

1. **Increased Demand for Recycling:** The diversion targets increase the city's focus on recycling, which aligns with waste pickers' activities, allowing them to play a key role in waste recovery.
2. **Creation of New Jobs:** If waste-to-energy plants or composting facilities are established, there may be new opportunities for waste pickers to participate in more formalized aspects of waste management.

Negative Impacts:

1. **Loss of Access to Landfills:** Waste pickers often collect valuable recyclables at landfill sites. As landfill diversion initiatives reduce the amount of waste going to landfills, waste pickers may lose access to important income-generating materials.
2. **Displacement:** If landfill sites are restricted or closed as part of waste diversion efforts, waste pickers who operate there may face economic displacement without sufficient livelihood

restoration programs in place. This is a rather large social implications and measures should implemented in order to avoid displacement where possible and align with the World Bank's ESF principles.

Formal Recycling Programs (Drop-off Facilities)

Positive Impacts:

1. **Direct Access to Recyclables:** Waste pickers could benefit from accessing materials at these drop-off facilities or even for negotiating agreements to collect and sort recyclables from these sites.
2. **Potential for Formal Jobs:** As Cape Town expands formal recycling infrastructure, there is potential for waste pickers to be employed in sorting or transporting recyclables at these facilities.

Negative Impacts:

1. **Increased Competition from Formal Proponents/ Employees in the Waste Sector:** Waste pickers may face competition from formal employees or private contractors at these facilities, limiting their ability to collect valuable recyclables.
2. **Access Barriers and Restrictions to Market Entry:** Waste pickers may be restricted from accessing drop-off facilities or certain recycling points if formal actors take control of these areas.

An Overview of Impacts on Waste Pickers in the City of Cape Town:

1. **Social Marginalization and Exclusion:** Formal recycling programs and the privatization of waste management services could marginalize waste pickers if they are not integrated into these formal systems. Waste pickers may lose access to materials and collection points and could reducing their income. As aforementioned, an increase in competition could also lead to an increase in tensions amongst waste pickers.
2. **Economic Displacement:** Policies such as landfill diversion and the closure of dumpsites could economically displace waste pickers who depend on these sites for their livelihoods. Displacement should be forecasted and mitigated where possible.
3. **Legal and Regulatory Barriers:** Whilst Cape Town recognizes the role waste pickers play within the circular economy, the strict enforcement of bylaws could lead to the criminalization of waste pickers' activities, especially if they are seen as operating outside formal systems.
4. **Waste Picker Payments:** It has been reported that not all entities have paid waste pickers their fair share for their work. The entities responsible for paying waste pickers need to ensure that waste pickers are adequately compensated.

EtheKwini

eThekwini's waste management planning and strategic objectives aims to focuses on reducing greenhouse gas emissions and extending the lifespan of its landfills through recycling and waste-to-energy projects. The city has initiated organic waste composting projects and localized waste processing centers, such as the Buffelsdraai Landfill, which is undergoing transformation into a sustainable waste facility. However, whilst waste pickers play a significant role in informal recycling, they are not fully integrated into the formal waste management strategy.

The municipality has developed programs aimed at waste minimization and recovery, as well as localized waste processing centers. Specific initiatives include the following below:

1. **Waste Minimization:** eThekweni's policies encourage waste separation at the source and recycling to reduce the overall volume of waste ending up in landfills.
2. **Organic Waste Composting:** Composting projects for organic waste aim to decrease methane emissions from landfills and produce a beneficial byproduct for soil enrichment.
3. **Waste-to-Energy Projects:** The municipality has invested in converting waste into energy, notably through anaerobic digestion and other technologies, to manage waste while producing renewable energy.
4. **Localized Waste Processing:** eThekweni's Buffelsdraai Landfill, for example, is a project that includes a Material Recovery Facility (MRF) and explores sustainable waste management practices to support recycling at a large scale.

Whilst these policies are proactive in nature, in practice, waste pickers in eThekweni often operate within the informal sector and lack formal integration into the municipality's waste management framework and as a result, whilst there are obvious positive impacts of the metro's solid waste management strategy, there also negatives regarding waste pickers.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Increased Access to Recyclable Materials:** eThekweni's recycling initiatives generate significant volumes of recyclables, which waste pickers can collect and sell. In the central areas of Durban, waste pickers gather a large quantity of paper, cardboard, and other recyclables that would otherwise end up in landfills. The collection of these materials play a vital role in sustaining their livelihoods and encourage recycling.
2. **Environmental and Economic Contributions:** By collecting recyclables, waste pickers reduce the volume of waste needing disposal, which aids eThekweni's landfill diversion goals and reducing waste management costs for the municipality overall.
3. **Waste Picker Integration:** Due to the fact there are opportunities for expansion and Projects like waste-to-energy, there are opportunities within the metro to formally recognize waste pickers, who could offer more stable access to recyclables and possibly formal employment.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers

1. **Minimal Formal Recognition:** In the eThekweni metro, waste pickers remain largely unrecognized within the formal waste management system. This exclusion limits their access to waste collection points and quality recyclables, forcing them to operate in rather unsafe conditions.
2. **Income Instability:** Waste pickers earnings tend to fluctuate with recyclable material prices. Without official partnerships, recognition, inclusion or support, they remain vulnerable to market changes, which can severely impact their livelihood.
3. **Health and Safety Risks:** Operating informally, waste pickers lack access to protective gear and proper equipment, which exposes them to various health risks associated with handling waste. Subsequently, without designated spaces for waste sorting, waste pickers often have to rely on working in hazardous environments.
4. **Stigmatization and Negative Perceptions:** Waste pickers face social stigma and sometimes experience prejudice from residents and businesses, which directly hinders their access to waste materials and effects their social standing within the community.

Specific Issues with Waste Pickers in eThekweni

On 12 July 2023, one person was declared deceased and 17 others injured after the eThekweni municipal landfill site security guards located at the Buffelsdraai landfill site, North of Durban Verulam, shot them. “Looking for food and recyclable materials became a daytime nightmare for the waste pickers of Buffelsdraai. Although the circumstances of what caused the incident have not been concluded nor confirmed, it is clear that the nature of the violent tactics used against waste pickers is now ever increasing in South Africa”. Unfortunately, the nature of what happened is in stark contradiction to the requirements of the Waste Act of 2008 that recognises the critical role waste pickers play in the recycling economy and compels municipalities to integrate waste pickers into their municipal waste management systems, in a systematic and well defined manner.

This illustrates the lack of recognition, hostility and social exclusion that waste pickers are faced with. Although the issue of restriction is not only prevalent in the metro of eThekweni, it is a direct indication of waste pickers lack of formal recognition and inclusion in the waste management process.

Buffalo City

Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality (BCMM) has developed solid waste management policies aimed at promoting environmental sustainability and effective waste management. These policies are guided by the National Environmental Management: Waste Act (NEM) and the municipality's Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP). The IWMP outlines strategies for waste minimization, recycling and responsible disposal practices.

Key Characteristics of BCMM's WM Policies:

1. **Waste Minimization and Recycling:** BCMM encourages waste reduction at the source and promotes recycling initiatives to divert waste from landfills. The municipality has established buy-back centers and drop-off points to facilitate recycling efforts.
2. **Integrated Waste Management:** The IWMP emphasizes a comprehensive approach to waste management, including collection, transportation, treatment and disposal, ensuring that waste is managed in an environmentally effective manner.
3. **Community Engagement and Education:** BCMM conducts awareness campaigns and educational programs to inform residents about proper waste management practices and the importance of recycling.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Income Opportunities:** The establishment of buy-back centers and recycling drop-off points provides waste pickers with avenues to sell collected recyclables, offering a source of income and sustaining the livelihoods of the waste pickers within BCMM.
2. **Recognition and Inclusion:** BCMM has created a medium term goal to establish a database of waste pickers within the metro, which assists in the implementation of programs aimed at integrating them into the formal waste management system⁸⁵.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers:

⁸⁵

chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://www.buffalocity.gov.za/CM/uploads/documents/2021031111163594423802Aug2021RevisedDraftIWMP_BCMv2.pdf

1. Limited Formal Integration: Despite efforts to recognize waste pickers, many still operate informally without adequate support or protection, leading to unstable income and exposure to health and safety risks. Whilst BCMM has made reference to integrate and formalize waste pickers, it appears that not much progress has been made up to now.
2. Regulatory Challenges: The municipality's waste management bylaws impose restrictions on informal waste collection activities, potentially limiting waste pickers' access to recyclable materials.

Key Regulatory Changes:

1. Integrated Waste Management By-law: BCMM introduced an Integrated Waste Management By-law to regulate waste collection, separation, storage, processing, treatment, recycling, reuse and disposal. This by-law emphasizes formal waste management practices and the use of authorized service providers⁸⁶.
2. Formalization of Waste Services: The municipality has moved towards formalizing waste collection and recycling services, often through contracts with private companies or municipal services, which may exclude informal waste pickers.

The Negative Impacts of the Regulatory Changes and BCMM's By-Laws:

1. Restricted Access to Waste materials: The formalization of waste services can limit waste pickers access to recyclable materials, as waste is directed towards authorized service providers and facilities, reducing the availability of materials that waste pickers rely on for income.
2. Legal and Operational Challenges: The by-law may impose restrictions on informal waste collection activities, potentially subjecting waste pickers to fines or legal action if they operate without authorization. This creates an environment where waste pickers must navigate complex regulations, often without the resources or support to comply.
3. Marginalization from Formal Economy: By prioritizing formal waste management systems, waste pickers could be excluded from participating in the formal economy, missing out on benefits such as stable income, health and safety protections.

City of Tshwane

Tshwane's solid waste management policies aim to promote environmental sustainability and efficient waste handling. These policies are outlined in the Integrated Waste Management Plan and Tshwane's Waste Management By-law, which emphasize waste minimization, recycling and responsible disposal practices.

Tshwane has implemented an Integrated Waste Management Plan focusing on recycling, waste reduction and the promotion of composting for organic waste. A key feature is the city's separation-at-source program, which mandates waste segregation for both residential and commercial sources. However, waste pickers who contribute significantly to recycling and the circular economy remain informal, which limits their access to waste sources and security in their work. Integration through

⁸⁶

chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://www.buffalocity.gov.za/CM/uploads/documents/20210311111635944260Bylaw-Presentation202100210APRIL.pdf

formal partnerships will improve recycling effectiveness and offer more stable employment for waste pickers and ensure the restoration of their livelihoods.

Breakdown of Tshwane's Waste Management Policies:

1. **Waste Minimization and Recycling:** Tshwane encourages residents and businesses to reduce waste generation and participate in recycling programs. Initiatives include separation-at-source programs and the establishment of recycling facilities to divert waste from landfills.
2. **Integrated Waste Management:** Tshwane's IWMP adopts a solid approach, encompassing waste collection, transportation, treatment and disposal which ensures thorough environmentally waste management practices.
3. **Public Education and Awareness:** The municipality conducts campaigns to educate the public on proper waste management practices, aiming to foster a culture of environmental responsibility.⁸⁷

Tshwane's Waste Management By-law regulates waste management activities within the municipality. While the by-law aims to ensure proper waste handling and environmental protection, it does not explicitly address the role of waste pickers. This omission of the group can lead to challenges for waste pickers, as their activities may be considered unauthorized under the by-law, and can expose them to potential penalties.

Positive Impacts of Tshwane's Waste Management Policies and By-Laws on Waste Pickers:

1. **Increased Access to Recyclable Materials:** The city's emphasis on recycling generates a steady stream of recyclable materials, providing waste pickers with opportunities to collect and sell these items, thereby earning a livelihood.
2. **The Possibility of Formal Integration:** The waste management framework presents opportunities for waste pickers to be integrated into the formal waste management system, potentially offering more stable income and improved working conditions.

Negative Impacts of Tshwane's Waste Management Policies and By-Laws on Waste Pickers:

1. **Limited Formal Recognition:** Despite their contributions, many waste pickers operate informally and lack official recognition, which can lead to unstable income and exposure to health and safety risks.
2. **Regulatory Challenges:** The Waste Management By-law may impose restrictions on informal waste collection activities, potentially limiting waste pickers' access to recyclable materials and subjecting them to fines or legal action if they operate without authorization.
3. **Unauthorized Waste Collection:** The by-law may prohibit individuals from collecting waste without proper authorization or permits. Waste pickers, operating informally, may not possess such permits, rendering their activities illegal under the by-law.
4. **Access to Waste Materials:** The by-law restrict access to waste materials by designating certain areas or facilities for waste collection and processing, limiting waste pickers' ability to collect recyclables from these locations and could potentially lead to economic displacement.
5. **Transportation of Waste:** Regulations stipulate specific requirements for transporting waste, such as the use of authorized vehicles or adherence to particular routes. Waste pickers, often

⁸⁷

chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://uir.unisa.ac.za/bitstream/handle/10500/25647/dissertation_mokebe_t.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y

using informal means of transport, may not comply with these requirements, leading to potential fines or legal action.

6. **Health and Safety Standards:** The by-law imposes health and safety standards for waste handling, including the use of protective equipment and adherence to hygiene protocols. Waste pickers, who lack efficient resources, may not meet these standards, resulting in non-compliance and potential penalties.
7. **Environmental Protection Measures:** Regulations may include provisions to prevent environmental pollution, such as prohibiting the sorting of waste in unauthorized areas. Waste pickers, sorting waste in public spaces, may violate these provisions and as aforementioned, may face penalties.

Nelson Mandela Bay

The Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality (NMBM) Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) outlines a comprehensive approach to waste management, aiming to formalize recycling operations and improve waste management practices at landfill sites like Arlington and Koedoeskloof.⁸⁸

NMBM's Waste Management Policies:

1. **Waste Minimization and Recycling:** The municipality encourages residents and businesses to reduce waste generation and participate in recycling programs and the circular economy. Initiatives include separation-at-source programs and the establishment of recycling facilities to divert waste from landfills.
2. **Integrated Waste Management:** NMBM's IWMP adopts a comprehensive approach, encompassing waste collection, transportation, treatment and disposal, adhering to environmental regulations and compliance.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Formalized Recycling Operations:** The NMBM has introduced contracts to formalize recycling at landfill sites. Service providers manage the recycling process, which includes employing and overseeing waste pickers. This arrangement offers waste pickers employment opportunities, along with a safer work environment through structured management and supervision.
2. **Health and Safety Improvements:** By requiring waste pickers to wear personal protective equipment (PPE) and work in designated areas, the municipality aims to reduce health risks and improve overall safety on landfill sites.
3. **Awareness Campaigns:** Initiatives such as the "All Hands on Waste" campaign promote public awareness around recycling and waste management. This can indirectly benefit waste pickers by increasing the amount of recyclable material separated from general waste by residents, thus improving the quality and availability of recyclables.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Reduced Access to Recyclable Materials:** The formalization of recycling activities limits waste pickers' access to landfill sites. With controlled access, many informal recyclers may be restricted from scavenging, thereby reducing their income opportunities.

⁸⁸

chrome-extension://efaidnbnmnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://www.nelsonmandelabay.gov.za/DataRepository/Documents/final-nmbm-iwmp-2016-2020.pdf

2. **Restrictions on Informal Operations:** The NMBM’s bylaws strictly control who can access and remove waste from disposal sites. Unauthorized waste removal is prohibited, limiting informal pickers’ ability to collect recyclables independently, and potentially leading to legal penalties if they violate these restrictions.
3. **Safety and Security Constraints:** Though the policy mandates that waste pickers work only in designated areas, it also indicates that working conditions on landfill sites remain hazardous. Informal collectors who manage to access restricted areas may face dangers, including accidents from moving vehicles or compactors on site.

Mangaung

Mangaung faces challenges due to limited landfill space and operational funding, but the metro’s waste management policies still prioritize recycling and waste diversion. The city encourages recycling, but implementation is inconsistent, and waste pickers often operate without official recognition or support. Formalizing their role within Mangaung’s waste strategy could reduce landfill pressure and improve recycling outcomes. Waste pickers inclusion would also provide safer, more reliable work environments for them.

Mangaung’s IWMP promotes waste minimization by focusing on reducing waste generation at the source. This includes initiatives to encourage recycling and material reuse, thereby decreasing the amount of waste that requires disposal. In line with this, the municipality has put efforts into enhancing its waste collection and transportation services to ensure timely and reliable waste removal across all areas, including underserved and rural communities. Safe waste disposal is another priority, with the municipality committing to environmentally compliant disposal methods that mitigate negative impacts on both public health and the environment.

Public awareness and education are central to the IWMP’s objectives. The municipality actively conducts campaigns to educate residents and businesses about proper waste management, the importance of recycling, and the overall benefits of reducing waste. By raising awareness, Mangaung aims to build a culture of responsible waste practices within the community⁸⁹.

Applicable Plans and By-Laws

Mangaung Integrated Waste Management Plan

Mangaung’s IWMP serves as a strategic framework for managing waste within the municipality. While the plan acknowledges the presence of informal waste pickers, it does not provide a formal framework for their integration into the municipal waste management system. This lack of formal recognition means that waste pickers operate without official support or inclusion in municipal waste management strategies.

Mangaung Waste Management By-laws

The metro’s Waste Management By-laws, promulgated in 2013, establish regulations for waste handling, collection and disposal within Mangaung. These bylaws aim to promote sustainable development and environmental justice through sound waste management practices. However, similarly to the IWMP, the bylaws do not specifically address the role or integration of waste pickers.

⁸⁹

chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://www.mangaung.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2022/05/ANNEXURE-C-Draft-IWMP-05.2022.final_.pdf

This omission leaves waste pickers without formal recognition or protection under municipal regulations.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Formal Inclusion:** Manguang’s IWMP’s recognition of waste pickers’ role opens the door for future formal inclusion, which could provide stability, improved working conditions, and legal recognition. Formalizing waste picker roles could also lead to benefits like designated work areas and predictable access to recyclables.
2. **Health and Safety Standards:** By focusing on safer waste disposal practices, the IWMP indirectly promotes safer working environments. Should waste pickers be granted formal access, they could benefit from improved health and safety standards, such as personal protective equipment (PPE) and access to sanitation facilities.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Conditional Access:** Without formal recognition, waste pickers may not have reliable access to collection points or recycling facilities. Manguang’s IWMP’s waste management approach could unintentionally marginalize waste pickers, making it difficult for them to access recyclables if access is limited to registered or authorized personnel.
2. **Restriction of Access and Economic Uncertainty:** The focus on formal service providers negatively impacts waste pickers. As a result, waste pickers might face reduced access to valuable recyclables, which could lead to a loss of income. This dependency on unpredictable access to recyclables will create economic uncertainty for those who rely on waste collection as their primary source of livelihood.
3. **Marginalization:** With more funding and operational efficiency targeted toward formal waste management providers, informal waste pickers could be sidelined. As formal providers gain access to resources and materials, waste pickers might struggle to compete, reducing their role and influence in the waste management process.
4. **Poor Economic Empowerment and Representation:** Whilst buy-back centers and cooperatives should generally benefit waste pickers, without explicit provisions in Manguang’s IWMP, they may not have access to these supportive structures. This absence limits their opportunities for economic empowerment, skill development, and integration into the formal economy.

City of Johannesburg

Johannesburg’s solid waste policy is centered on extensive recycling programs, landfill diversion and environmental responsibility. The city mandates waste separation for residential and commercial entities and has set up several recycling centers. Despite these initiatives, waste pickers often operate informally, limiting their access to steady recyclables and leaving them exposed to unsafe conditions.

Johannesburg’s IWMP acknowledges the role of informal waste pickers, also known as reclaimers, in the waste management system. The plan includes initiatives aimed at integrating waste pickers into the formal waste management processes, recognizing their contributions to recycling and waste diversion⁹⁰. Johannesburg’s Waste Management By-laws, promulgated in 2013 and revised in 2021,

⁹⁰

chrome-extension://efaidnbmnnnibpcajpcglclefindmkaj/https://wiredspace.wits.ac.za/server/api/core/bitstreams/16d78839-4fda-447f-bbe8-61e6858c5f60/content

establish regulations for waste handling, collection, and disposal within Johannesburg. These bylaws include provisions for the establishment of waste picker associations and outline the roles and responsibilities of waste pickers in the municipal waste management system. The bylaws aim to promote sustainable development and environmental justice through sound waste management practices.

Despite these initiatives and attempts to formally recognize waste pickers, challenges such as limited resources, coordination issues and the need for continuous capacity building persist and restrict Johannesburg from fully integrating waste pickers. The city continues to work towards addressing these challenges by fostering stronger partnerships with waste picker associations and other stakeholders to create a more inclusive and efficient waste management system.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Waste Picker Empowerment Program:** Johannesburg initiated a Waste Picker Empowerment Program in 2010, with an aim to understand waste picker activities. It also importantly aimed to understand their needs and challenges. The program initiated a training and skills development program, focusing on helping waste pickers transition from waste pickers to entrepreneurs.
2. **Education and Awareness:** Johannesburg has undertaken campaigns to educate and raise awareness on the importance and contribution waste pickers make with regards to waste management, recovery and recycling.
3. **Encouragement of Waste Pickers Associations:** Johannesburg has encouraged waste pickers to form cooperatives and associations. The city's policies enable them to work within a structured framework. This organization allows waste pickers to collectively access resources, negotiate better working conditions and secure more consistent income opportunities.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. **Limited Scope of Integration and Recognition:** Despite the framework for formalizing waste pickers, actual integration is limited, and many waste pickers still operate informally without consistent access to resources. As a result, a significant portion of waste pickers remains outside the formal system, continuing to face economic and social insecurity.
2. **Dependency on Cooperative Models:** While cooperative models offer benefits, they may not suit all waste pickers, particularly those who value independence. Cooperatives also require organizational skills and management experience, which some waste pickers may lack. This dependency on cooperatives may exclude some waste pickers who struggle to meet these requirements.
3. **IWMP's Restriction of Access:** The IWMP's formalization efforts may inadvertently limit waste pickers' access to recyclables. When waste collection and sorting are formalized under structured contracts, waste pickers who are not formally recognized or part of cooperatives may lose access to valuable materials, impacting their income.
4. **Limited Community Engagement:** Waste pickers are not consistently involved in policy-making, which means their specific needs and challenges may be overlooked. Without regular engagement, waste pickers may feel marginalized, and policies may fail to address the realities of their day-to-day work effectively.

Ekurhuleni

The Ekurhuleni metro promotes waste minimization through recycling and reducing dependency on landfill sites. Policies encourage household waste separation, and the metro has invested in expanding MRFs to process recyclables. Yet, like the other metros that have been discussed, waste pickers in Ekurhuleni remain mostly informal, facing variable access to recyclables and unreliable income. Their inclusion within Ekurhuleni’s waste framework could improve recycling rates and offer waste pickers a secure role within the system, supporting both environmental and economic goal.

Ekurhuleni’s IWMP serves as the metro’s framework for managing waste within the municipality and also emphasizes waste minimization, recycling and sustainable disposal practices. It does acknowledge the role of informal waste pickers in the waste management system and includes initiatives aimed at integrating them into formal waste management processes, recognizing their contributions to recycling and waste diversion. Ekurhuleni’s Integrated Waste Management By-laws, promulgated in 2021, establish regulations for waste handling, collection and disposal within Ekurhuleni. These bylaws include provisions for the regulation of informal recyclers, aiming to promote sustainable development and environmental justice through sound waste management practices⁹¹.

The inclusion of waste pickers in both the IWMP and the Integrated Waste Management By-laws signifies the metro’s recognition of their role in waste management. This formal acknowledgment provides waste pickers with opportunities for integration into the formal waste management system, access to resources and potential improvements in working conditions. However, challenges, such as significant capacity and implementation challenges, remain in fully implementing these provisions and ensuring that waste pickers are effectively integrated and supported.

Positive Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. Recognition of Waste Pickers in the Circular Economy: Ekurhuleni’s IWMP and bylaws acknowledge the contributions of waste pickers to recycling and waste diversion, offering formal recognition that enhances their legitimacy within the waste management system. This recognition can help improve public perception of waste pickers and reduce stigma.
2. Opportunities for Formal Integration: Ekurhuleni’s plan includes provisions for the potential formal integration of waste pickers into the municipal waste management framework. If effectively implemented, this could provide waste pickers with structured roles, access to resources, and more stable income opportunities.
3. Supportive Regulations: By regulating informal recyclers, the bylaws provide waste pickers with a structured operating framework that may offer them clearer guidelines and protections in their work, such as designated zones or permissions to collect recyclables legally.

Negative Impacts on Waste Pickers:

1. Restrictions on Access Points: Ekurhuleni’s by-law states that: “No informal recycler may sort-out and repackage items anywhere at a public place other than the places that have been designated by the Municipality for informal recycling; provided that such designated places shall be kept tidy and clean at all times.” This legally limits the waste pickers to specific sites and could have implications on their income and livelihood.
2. Incomplete Implementation of Formal Support: Whilst the IWMP and bylaws recognize waste pickers, the actual implementation of support mechanisms is limited. Without tangible

⁹¹ <chrome-extension://efaidnbnmnnibpcajpcglcfindmkaj/https://www.ekurhuleni.gov.za/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/Integrated-Waste-Management-By-laws.pdf>

benefits like PPE, access to formal sorting areas, or reliable income support, many waste pickers may still operate informally and remain economically vulnerable.

3. Lack of Direct Engagement in Policy Development: Waste pickers are not consistently involved in policy-making processes, which may result in policies that do not fully address their needs or reflect their on-the-ground experiences. This lack of engagement can limit the effectiveness of policies meant to support them.

Annexure 13: PIAP Indicator Definition Sheets

Accountability Performance, Financial Performance, and Operational Performance for WSS, Electricity and SWM.

*NT Guidance Notes & Resource Documents referred are available at: <https://mfma.treasury.gov.za/Guidelines/Documents/Trading%20Services>

Performance areas	Ref	Minimum commitments & performance indicators	YR-1	YR 2	YR 3-6	Weights
Accountability Performance Minimum Commitments	M1	SPoMA Service Compact	binary	binary	binary	10
	M2	SPoMA Appointment	binary	binary	binary	
	M3	SPoMA Organisational structure	binary	binary	binary	
	M4	SPoMA Delegations	binary	binary	binary	
	M5	Financial Model and Business & Investment Plan	binary	binary	binary	
	M6	Budget Support of Business & Investment Plan	binary	binary	binary	
	M7	Financial Transparency – separate AFS	binary	binary	binary	
	M8	Support for management of organisational change	binary	binary	binary	
Accountability Performance Indicators	A1	Customer surveys	n.a.	binary	scalable	10
	A2	Financial Accounting – mSCOA compliance	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	A3	Public Procurement Transparency	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	A4	Capital Budget Execution	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	A5	Core Technical & Management Capacity	n.a.	binary	scalable	
Financial Performance Indicators	F1	Financial Viability OCCR	n.a.	binary	scalable	30
	F2	Cash Collection rate	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	F3	Operational Cash Flow	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	F4	Customer Debt management – debtors days	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	F5	Infrastructure Capex	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	F6	Self-Financing ratio	n.a.	binary	scalable	
Operational Performance Indicators Water & Sanitation	W1	Water Security – input volume % raw water allocation	n.a.	binary	scalable	60
	W2	Drinking Water Systems Blue Drop	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W3	Waste Water Treatment Systems Green Drop	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W4	Wastewater % of samples compliant with license	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W5	Water Network – mains failures frequency / 100 km	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W6	Sewer Network – blockages frequency / 100 km	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W7	Physical Water Loss – Infrastructure Leakage Index	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W8	Water Service Complaints Response % in 48 hours	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W9	Sewer Service Complaints Response % in 48 hours	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W10	Non-Revenue Water (NRW)	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	W11	Metering Performance	n.a.	binary	scalable	
Operational Performance Indicators Electricity & Energy	E1	Bulk Commercial Metering Performance	n.a.	binary	scalable	60
	E2	Vending Efficiency % of metering operational	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	E3	Automated Meter Reading Coverage	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	E4	Repairs Efficiency	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	E5	Electricity losses as % of electricity purchased	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	E6	Network effectiveness ASIFI	n.a.	binary	scalable	
	E7	Network effectiveness ASIDI	n.a.	binary	scalable	
Operational Performance Indicators Solid Waste Management	S1	Service Collection Coverage	n.a.		scalable	60
	S2	Service Reliability	n.a.		scalable	
	S3	Asset Maintenance & Operations	n.a.		scalable	
	S4	Waste Minimisation	n.a.		scalable	
	S5	Environmental Compliance	n.a.		scalable	
	S6	Cost Efficiency	n.a.		scalable	
	S7	Climate Change Mitigation	n.a.		scalable	
	S8	Asset Creation: Landfill Airspace	n.a.		scalable	

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No & Name	M1 -SPoMA Service Compact
Performance Area	Service Compact.
Indicator Cross Reference	M2, M3, M4.
Definition	<p>The Service Compact between Service Authority (Metro) and the trading service¹</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specifies Internal Business Unit / Municipal Owned Entity decision • Provides for the transfer of Metro obligations and responsibilities in terms of law (both municipal and sector legislation) to its Service Provider as agent to execute these services on its behalf and within the scope of applicable municipal legislation. The Metro discharges its responsibilities in terms of its Service Compact including that of the (previously) shared services². • Defines and structures the service role that the new utility business must execute on behalf of its parent body (the metro).
Purpose	The new utility business becomes responsible for full financial and managerial operation of the trading service and shall be accountable to the accounting officer of the metro. The compact amongst others will define reporting and other obligations and responsibilities between the parties.
Key Components	The service compact defines the execution requirements in both municipal and applicable sector legislation from service authority to service provider and includes the service provider's role into the IDP, license requirements, specific service delivery requirements, free basic services, tariff setting etc. It sets the division of responsibilities across value chains (including decision-making and operational performance), investments, performance metrics, consequence management, information sharing, oversight meetings etc.
Calculation Formula	Binary. (Council commitment to service compact, approval, implementation and retention of service compact).
Frequency	Once as per Target for commitment, approval and appointment and also, retention of service compact.
Performance Interpretation	<p>Benchmark: Service Compacts reflects and re-enforces SPoMA.</p> <p>Y0: Council Commitment to service compact Y1: Council approval of service compact Y2 – Y6: Implementation and retention of service compact.</p>
Definition of Success	Service compact committed to, approved by council and implemented as per targets. Signed into operation by City Manager. Retention of compact.
Benefits	Clearly defined division of responsibilities across value chains for service authority to service provider with clear performance and accounting metrics. Transparent expectation of service delivery and sustainability targets. Clear accountability for sustainable service delivery.

¹ Regarding Municipal Services Act, Municipal Finance Management Act, & other mandates transferred; and services and standards required.

² Shared services refer to financial management, customer services, supply chain management, human resources, fleet, IT systems & support, and other shared services as per indicator M4.

Indicator No & Name	M2 -SPoMA Appointment
Performance Area	TS Leadership.
Indicator Cross Reference	M1, M3, M4 (see Guidance Notes 1 and 3), M5.
Definition	The appointment of a chief executive of the trading service with an appropriate job description, reflecting all delegated powers and responsibilities, and an appropriate performance contract.
Purpose	To ensure properly authorised executive leadership of the trading service.
Key Components	<p>Acknowledgement of enhanced and additional functions, competencies, requirements, responsibilities and obligations of the executive officer of the new business unit that will have all elements of the classical utility business under their jurisdiction, as applicable for the particular TS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The TS leadership position will oversee all the elements of the utility value chain, expanding from the current (mostly infrastructure related) responsibilities. • Since this job description (incorporating commercial as well as technical and managerial skills) in almost all cases differs from what is currently applicable, filling the new SPoMA post requires a formal recruitment process. • Such process should be (1) open and transparent; (2) designed and executed to ensure that a person with the necessary commercial, technical and managerial experience and stature is appointed; (3) appropriately timed to align with other accountability minimum access conditions. • The appointees performance contract should focus on achievement of targets regarding the trading services reform as expressed in A3: PIAP (M7) as well as other statutory targets such as SDBIP.
Calculation Formula	Binary.
Performance Interpretation	<p>BENCHMARK: Commitment by metro, appointment of new executive officer of utility business, per annual targets.</p> <p>Y0: Commitment to appropriate appointment process as outlined Y2: New appointee in place Y3–Y6: Appointee supported to remain in place.</p>
Definition of Success	Scoping and redefinition of ex HOD/ Executive officer Job description and role for new business unit, commitment thereto, appointment and retention of executive role for business unit as SPoMA.
Benefits	Ensure definition and recruitment of right competencies and skills to run TS (under Model 2) as a full trading business (or under Model 3 as Municipal Owned Entity) in a sustainable manner.

Accountability Performance – Minimum Commitments

Indicator No & Name	M3 - SPoMA Organisational Structure
Performance Area	Organisational Structure.
Indicator Cross Reference	M1, M2, M4 (see Guidance Notes 1 and 3).
Definition	See Guidance Note 3. An appropriate organisational structure, described in an organizational chart, is established and maintained to support the delegations and effective business functioning of the Trading Service as SPoMA.
Purpose	To create an organisational structure for a capable, professional and effective utility along best practises that has all the required functions of the classical value chain in one business for service delivery enhancement.
Key Components	A single organisational structure with all elements of the <i>infrastructure and commercial value chain</i> , with the necessary <i>supporting business processes and systems</i> under an appropriate capable and professional management and governance framework. It shall have measurements of performance KPI's of the targeted conditions of accountability, financial and operational performance as part of the structural arrangement.
Calculation Formula	Binary, but scalable for implementation. Appropriate organisational structure along the classical utility value chain and 7-box model.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = organisational structure which support the delegations and effective functioning of the trading service as SPoMA Y0: Council Commitment to revising and approving org structure to support SPoMA delegations Y1: Council approves org structure as required Y2-Y6: Implementation and retention of org structure as required.
Definition of Success	SPoMA is supported by effective org structure and reporting lines along the classical value chain of the particular utility, as required. Approved by council and signed off by City-Manager.
Benefits	An effective organisational structure along the full value chain requires a coherent, non-fragmented delivery structure, SPoMA accountability and will ensure an appropriate operational utility management structure for sustainability and service delivery.

Indicator No & Name	M4 - SPoMA Delegations
Performance Area	Delegations.
Indicator Cross Reference	M1, M2, M3 (see Guidance Notes 1 and 3).
Definition	Business Unit (Model 2): Delegations means the delegations/ passing of the authority for the financial management, operational and management control of all shared services for the effective operation of the Trading Services (TS) as a Single Point of Accountability (SPoMA) Business. Municipal Entity (Model 3 ³): Same but SPoMA accounts to Board.
Purpose	To ensure that the responsibilities and functions pertaining to/or supporting operational, financial management and overall management of the Trading Service are fully accounted for within that Trading Service SPoMA. This requires delegation by the City Manager of all the shared service responsibilities to the SPoMA to operate the Trading Service business enabling the SPoMA to be responsible for the effective execution of these services in support of the TS as a single business unit.
Key Components	Financial and operational management of HR, SCM, revenue, fleet management, IT, customer service, real estate, security and operational and safety requirements ⁴ . The SPoMA may determine how to discharge its responsibilities in terms of its Service Compact (<i>Indicator M4</i>) regarding the shared services.
Calculation Formula	Binary. (All shared services as applicable captured in the formal delegation document ⁵ of the metro (as required in MFMA C80) and approved by council. Signed delegation from City Manager to HOD/ Executive officer of TS in place).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: Formal delegation commitment by Council, delegations in place in target year, retention in place over remainder of period. Y0: Council commitment for delegations for full SPoMA Y1: Delegations in place Y2-Y6: Delegations remain in place.
Definition of Success	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formal delegations part of metro delegations and delegation policy SPoMA has full accountability for service performance with all the related shared services delegated under its control. Service Delivery Agreements (SDA) between Service Provider and Trading services for all services in place, self-executed or contracted out as applicable as per target year signed by both parties. Full accountability with HOD/ Executive officer of TS.
Benefits	All delegation and shared services responsibilities rest in the new business unit and can be accounted for and managed as a SPoMA ensuring effective service delivery of complete business for sustainability.

Indicator No & Name	M5 – Financial Model and Business & Investment Plan
Performance Area	Business and Investment Planning.
Indicator Cross Reference	M6.
Definition	Submission of annual Trading Services business and investment plan, which has been supported and prioritised by means of a utility financial model to ensure business-financial sustainability, turnaround and improvement.
Purpose	The annual business and investment plans need to be supported by a financial model to ensure a robust PIAP (A3) that supports sustainability and business turnaround. The model will be used to inform strategic financial and business decisions for business turnaround/ performance improvement; and to target and focus investments for turnaround/ performance improvement.
Key Components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Multi-year utility financial model reflecting the utility characteristics and requirements, to underpin utility reform priorities and strategy development Annual business plan and budget incorporating a long-term strategic perspective, and medium-term capital and operational planning. Data development programme to ensure that trading services management has access to all the financial and operational data required for effective utility management initially to inform A3-PIAP v2 for 2026/27 onwards, and then to track performance and build on to the model over remainder of period as the trading service improves.
Calculation Formula	Binary. Comprehensive business plan supported by financial model outcomes and indicators.
Performance Interpretation	<p>Benchmark: Annual trading service business plan as defined</p> <p>Y0: Council commitment to production and approval of a business and investment plan for the utility by end of Y1</p> <p>Y1: Council approves turnaround and reform business plan and budget</p> <p>Y3 – Y6: annual submission & approval of revised business plans</p> <p>NB: The business plan must be funded and reflected in Council budgets per indicator M5.</p>
Definition of Success	A full annually updated business and investment plan based on a financial model for each trading service with a multi-year focus.
Benefits	The financial model will underpin the investment plans to ensure targeted and robust business and investment strategies to result in business performance improvement. It provides transparency and focused investment strategies across all areas of the SPoMA business (not for infrastructure alone). Multi-year focus of the model will ensure correct tracking and targeting of investment of whether utility performance improvement is still on track and will be used in mid-term review A3: PIAP.

Indicator No & Name	M6 – Budget support of Trading Service business and investment plan
Performance Area	Budget Support.
Indicator Cross Reference	M5.
Definition	The metro budget supports the Financial Model and Business & Investment Plan (M7).
Purpose	<p>The metro budget must be structured to provide the required funding for its utility businesses (different trading services). This includes own metro funding, borrowings/loans, equitable share allocations, funding from operations, the allocation under DORA, other grants and other allocations the metro received from NT and/ or other bodies annually or from time to time.</p> <p>Metro budget allocations need to align with Financial Model and Business & Investment Plan to ensure financial sustainability in service delivery.</p>
Key Components	Supportive framework of policy commitments by metro for MTS improvement as expressed in increasing capex budgets, appropriate transition and change management cost allocations; re-investment of TS operational surpluses, co-funding, etc.
Calculation Formula	Binary.
Performance Interpretation	<p>BENCHMARK: Planned trading services opex and capex for each FY, as reflected in A3-PIAP costing and funding sheets, are evident and reflected in corresponding metro budgets for that financial year.</p> <p>Y0: Council commitment to supporting the budgetary and funding implications of the business plan and budget</p> <p>Y1: Council budget for Y2 reflects and is consistent with M7.</p> <p>Y2 – Y6: Council budgets and AFS continuously reflect and are consistent with M7.</p>
Definition of Success	Business plan developed under M7 should be substantially evident in the metro budget from the Y2 onwards.
Benefits	Investment will be as per the Business and Investment plan that will be based on a financial model (M7) for utility sustainability.

Indicator No & Name	M7- Financial Transparency – separate AFS
Performance Area	Financial Transparency.
Indicator Cross Reference	A2.
Definition	Model 2: Full separate MTS AFS, published within aggregated metro AFS, per specimen template (MFMA circular July 2024) (the easiest way to comply with M6 is to ensure A2 is achieved) Model 3: Full separate published trading services financial statements, also consolidated into Metro AFS Models 2 and 3: including ‘flows and balances statement’ per below.
Purpose	Full financial transparency is essential for trading services reform <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To track financial performance of the utility service itself (without being hidden within overall municipal performance) To monitor trading services recovery improvement and ongoing sustainability To ensure the TS is performing according to its business and investment plan To generate key performance indicators for purposes of disbursement, C88, and license/ regulatory reporting.
Key Components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Full trading service AFS each year (statements of financial performance, financial position, and cash flow with notes and tables as regulated) Corresponding annual report for each trading services Statement of Metro Trading Services Flows and Balances, to comprise at least <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grant shares: Equitable share, USDG, incentive grants, ISDG, HSDG, other Cost of shared and internal services (shared costs & activity-based costing) such as revenue, treasury, facilities management, HR, city manager & Council, etc. Contributions & subsidies: contributions by trading service (including any dividends) to metro rates account, subsidies paid by metro to trading services Cash balances: Trading services cash balances held by metro, amounts invoiced on behalf of trading service, proceeds not yet paid over Other as appropriate <p>NB: Assessment of this indicator will necessarily be based on unaudited financial information as submitted to the AG and simultaneously to the assessor.</p>
Calculation Formula	Binary
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: Preparation of full Trading Services AFS per year per specimen formats issued by NT, accompanied by an annual report Y0: Council Commitment to preparation of Trading Services AFS separately Y1: Separate TS AFS and annual report produced and published as regulated Y2-Y6: separate TS AFS and AR produced as regulated.
Definition of Success	Full reporting as defined.
Benefits	Provide financial transparency of TS- utility business performance as a ringfenced business.

Indicator No & Name	M8- Support for management of organisational change and increased delivery
Performance Area	Change and Delivery Management Capacity.
Indicator Cross Reference	M1, M2, M3, M4.
Definition	Additional capacity in place that responds to requirements outlined in Annexures A1: Institutional Road Map and A2 (Business & Investment Plans) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capacity to support the process of managing organisational change including staff engagements, communications, detailed design, capacity enhancement (filling critical vacancies and beyond), key documentation, service compact and other activities, to manage and facilitate planned changes Capacity to manage the increased TS capex envisaged, including engineering project and contract management capacity.
Purpose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To create and establish the necessary capacity to support migration from to a new organisational structure under the SPoMA. Significant additional investment will be undertaken, and the utility will need the additional capacity to successfully execute this additional investment.
Key Components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Additional management capacity whether contracted in or recruited, change management, communications and filling of critical vacancies for service delivery.
Calculation Formula	Binary.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: Additional capacity that responds to requirements outlined in Annexures A1 (Institutional Road Map) and A2 (Business & Investment Plans), as further developed, is in place: Y0: Council Commitment to put additional capacity in place that responds to requirements outlined in A1 and A2 Y1: Effective change management & project implementation support, with approved change management plan in place Y2 – Y6: implementation and continued refinement of the plan NB1: The costs and funding of the additional change management and project management capacity must be incorporated into the metro budget per M5. NB2: The additional change management and project management capacity is required to implement the business plan (M7), yet must be put in place parallel to that business plan being developed.
Definition of Success	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Additional capacity in place during Y1, to help plan and start preparing to implement in Y2 Additional capacity regarding, as required in the particular case: (a) planning, driving, leading institutional change; (b) business turnaround strategy; (c) communication and stakeholder engagement; (d) negotiating and formalising new value chain contractual arrangements (e) recruiting, contracting, and managing additional project management capacity, as required.
Benefits	A well thought through and robust change management plan is critical to the transformation of the trading service. Capacity and change support is necessary as the organisation will be in flux, new functions will be added and shared services will be incorporated to create the SPoMA business.

Accountability Performance Indicators

Indicator No & Name	A1 - Customer Surveys
Performance Area	Customer Surveys.
Indicator Cross Reference	-
Definition	Customer service satisfaction surveys are undertaken annually and reflect progress towards the benchmark.
Purpose	Customer surveys provide a measurable feedback mechanism or data point that can be used to assess the effectiveness of customer satisfaction, identify trends in customer feedback, and derive actionable insights. All metros already conduct annual surveys of customer satisfaction, and generate headline results per trading service Using the historical results of these surveys, metro trading services should plan and execute actions to improve these results, as part of the business and investment plan (M7). a) Surveys assist trading service businesses to monitor and evaluate customer behaviour, sentiment, and experience. b) They provide the business units with quantifiable insights into customer experiences and can help track performance over time.
Key Components	a) Actual customer satisfaction result as % of planned customer satisfaction result for the year
Calculation Formula	Actual improvement of trading service customer satisfaction result, as % of planned trading services customer satisfaction result, per year.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 70% customer satisfaction result (per trading service) Y0: Y1: Customer satisfaction improvement plan incorporated in business plan; substantive targets set for Years 2 – 6 Y2-Y6: Improvement in headline result: progress against plan.
Definition of Success	Feedback from surveys used to guide key business decisions and improved customer interface to eventually improve customer satisfaction thereby improving customer sentiments towards service payments.
Benefits	Surveys provide independent opinion to assist in identifying areas of improvement, highlighting strengths, and guiding future decision-making processes.

Indicator No & Name	A2 - Financial Accounting - mSCOA compliance
Performance Area	Financial Accounting.
Indicator Cross Reference	M5.
Definition	The mSCOA compliance technical indicator evaluates a Trading Services Business Unit or Entity's alignment with the prescribed standards for financial accounting, reporting, and internal controls (minimum business processes and system requirements) as articulated in Annexure B of MFMA Circular No. 80.
Purpose	mSCOA compliance ensures that the business unit's financial systems, processes, and reporting mechanisms meet the requirements outlined in the Minimum Business Processes and Systems Requirements (MBPSR). Such compliance re-enforces the Metro Trading Service Reform programme by offering the easiest and only feasible way for metros to achieve financial transparency requirements (M5).
Key Components	Major requirements of MFMA Circular No. 80 include that <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delegations, segregation of duties & org structure should be embedded in the configuration of the integrated system solution • AFS Module / sub-system to should seamlessly integrate to core integrated system solution used by the Metro (no manual integration) • Generation of audited data strings (PAUD, AUDA, RAUD) from integrated system solution.
Calculation Formula	City Manager (Accounting Officer) certificate of mSCOA compliance, confirmed / countersigned by NT mSCOA team.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: full compliance with mSCOA requirements Y0: Baseline position Y1: CM certificate of mSCOA compliance, countersigned by mSCOA team Y2-Y6: CM certificate of mSCOA compliance, countersigned by mSCOA team.
Definition of Success	Improved financial transparency, accountability, and management, contributing to more efficient and effective trading service performance.
Benefits	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Transparency leading to trust between the trading service business and the parent municipality including the public. 2. Confidence on good governance and evidential integrity of financial governance.

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No & Name	A3 - Public Procurement Transparency
Performance Area	Public Procurement Transparency.
Indicator Cross Reference	-
Definition	This measures the degree to which the Trading Service Business Unit adheres to best practices in ensuring transparency in its procurement process. This includes openness in tendering, decision-making, and reporting, aiming to reduce corruption, promote competition, and ensure the effective use of public resources.
Purpose	To assess the transparency of Trading Service procurement processes, ensuring that they are conducted with integrity, fairness, and openness. Procurement transparency depends upon clear and accessible tender documentation, public access to information, bid evaluation transparency, conflict of interest management, more use of e-procurement systems, audit and oversight Mechanisms, whistleblower protections, compliance with Legal and Regulatory Frameworks, and stakeholder Engagement and Feedback.
Key Components	At a minimum, this indicator requires compliance with statutory regulations regarding procurement transparency: that all TS tender opportunities are advertised, and bidders' lists, tender awards and contracts signed are all published according to regulations. Trading Services should however take steps to improve their procurement transparency beyond the minimum. Such steps should include use of a reliable e-procurement portal as regulated, and comprehensive disclosure of all procurement information, presented in an accessible manner, on a well-maintained, up-to-date website.
Calculation Formula	Plan implementation.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: full transparency Y0: Y1: Baseline to be set with trading service business plans and targets for improvement in trading services procurement transparency. Y2 – Y6: implementation of the plan.
Definition of Success	Improved financial transparency, accountability, and management, contributing to more efficient and effective trading service performance.
Benefits	Transparency leading to trust between the trading service business and the parent municipality including the public. Confidence on good governance and evidential integrity of financial governance.

Indicator No & Name	A4 - Capital Budget Execution
Performance Area	Project implementation effectiveness.
Indicator Cross Reference	-
Definition	This measures how effectively an organization or public sector entity manages and executes investment projects to achieve its objectives.
Purpose	Effective performance of trading services depends on effectively executed procurement and project implementation processes.
Key Components	Capital Budget Execution is measured by the percentage of the capital budget agreed in the budget each year, that is spent.
Calculation Formula	Final capital spending as a % of budget.
Frequency	Annually and bi-annually at MYBR.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 90% Y0: Y1: Plan with targets for increasing tech and management capacity Y2 – Y6: implementation of the plan.
Definition of Success	% of capital expenditure against original council-approved budget meets the planned performance improvement each year.
Benefits	Achievement of targets indicates effective procurement processes and results in actual capital spending aligning more closely with planned and budgeted capital expenditure.

Indicator No & Name	A5 - Core technical and management capacity
Performance Area	Technical & Management Capacity.
Indicator Cross Reference	M5, M7.
Definition	Progress against planned technical and managerial capacity increases.
Purpose	<p>While M8 is focussed on change management and project management capacity for the short & medium-term, this indicator is concerned with the strengthening of permanent technical and managerial capacity. That capacity must include an ability to effectively plan, manage, and operate the utility, as well as execute projects, ensuring that both technical expertise and management skills are sufficient to meet strategic goals. The appointment or development of staff through professional registration and representation aligned with acceptable norms and gender equity policies also contributes to professionalisation.</p> <p>Metros already have a strong sense of the capacity shortages they face. The indicator is therefore focussed upon the inclusion with the trading services business plan (M5) a component which to increase permanent professional capacity, including contract management capacity, according to specified standard benchmarks in the water and sanitation, electricity and energy, and other relevant sectors (such as Professional Engineers, Registered Technologists, Registered Technicians, etc per 100 k population in the applicable service area) appointed in terms of gender equity policy.</p>
Key Components	No of technical management and contract management staff per 100 k population ⁶ in the service area; appointed in terms of gender policy, & plan to improve from starting point; progress against plan.
Calculation Formula	No of technical, managerial and contract management posts per benchmark at start Plan with targets for annual improvement of critical positions & skills aligned with the organisational structure (see M5) % achievement of target.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = to be set in set as part of business plan (M7) Y0: Y1: Plan with targets for increasing tech and management capacity Y2 – Y6: implementation of the plan.
Definition of Success	Enhanced operational effectiveness and overall performance.
Benefits	Provides a holistic view of an organization's ability to manage both its technical and managerial functions effectively, enabling informed decision-making, efficient resource management, and the successful execution of projects.

Financial Performance Indicators

Indicator No & Name	F1 - Financial Viability OCCR
Performance Area	Financial viability.
Indicator Cross Reference	For consideration: new trading services-specific indicator suggested for inclusion in MFMA S71 reports going forward.
Definition	<p>The basic definition is "operating revenue / operating expenses". Operating revenue excludes any capital items (capital grants) and interest income. Operating expenditure excludes any capital related items (interest and depreciation).</p> <p>The basic formula is adjusted to take into account cost of sales (bulk purchases). Bulk purchases is subtracted from operating revenue to give a gross operating profit. And operating costs are similarly adjusted to exclude the bulk purchases.</p>
Purpose	Measures the financial viability of the trading service. In particular, it shows the extent to which revenue covers the operating costs of the distribution business, and hence the ability of the service to generate revenues to invest in the distribution business, as a share of the costs needed to operate the distribution business.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: Against planned performance improvement.</p> <p>Data Sources: Income statement for the trading service.</p> <p>Operational Adjustments: none.</p>
Calculation Formula	<p>The formula is: $\text{Gross Profit} / \text{Operating expenditure (excluding bulk purchases)}$ where</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> $\text{Gross Profit} = \text{Operating revenue (including operating grants, excluding capital grants, excluding interest) less bulk purchases}$ $\text{Operating expenditure (excluding bulk purchases)} = \text{operating expenditure excluding depreciation and interest, and excluding bulk purchases}$ <p>NB: For the water service, the operating expense should be adjusted as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>subtract</u> inventory consumed (instead of bulk purchases), and <u>add back</u> chemicals purchased. <p>This adjustment is necessitated by the accounting rules related to inventory consumed.</p>
Performance Interpretation	<p>Benchmark = 1.5 to 2 (as determined in financial model and business plan)</p> <p>Y0: n/a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.</p>
Definition of Success	Achieving performance target (and on track along planned path).
Benefits	<p>Resource Management: Tracks ability of the service to generate resources to invest in the trading service business.</p> <p>Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to enhance financial viability of the business.</p> <p>Performance Benchmarking: Enables comparisons between municipalities.</p> <p>Public Confidence: gives confidence that the business is financially viable and sustainable.</p>

Indicator No & Name	F2 - Cash Collection Rate
Performance Area	Cash collection.
Indicator Cross Reference	For consideration: new trading services-specific indicator suggested for inclusion in MFMA - S71 reports going forward.
Definition	The efficiency of cash collection measured as - cash collected from customers / total invoiced to customers (over the same relevant 12 month period).
Purpose	Measure effectiveness and efficiency of the cash collection process (translation of invoices amounts into cash available to the service).
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Against planned performance improvement. Data Sources: Income statement and cash flow statement for the trading service. (These need to include the items necessary to calculate cash collection rate directly from the income statement and cash flow statement) Operational Adjustments: none.
Calculation Formula	Cash receipts from customers (12 months) / amount invoiced to customer (corresponding period).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmarks: 95% for water and 98% for electricity. Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieving performance benchmark (and on track along planned path).
Benefits	Resource Management: Tracks efficiency to collect invoiced revenue. Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to improve cash collections. Performance Benchmarking: Enables comparisons between municipalities. Public Confidence and fairness: gives confidence that the business is efficient at collecting revenue from all invoiced customers, and hence fair to all customers.

Indicator No & Name	F3 - Operational Cash Flow
Performance Area	Operational cash flow.
Indicator Cross Reference	For consideration: new trading services-specific indicator suggested for inclusion in MFMA - S71 reports going forward.
Definition	The cash available from operations after all operating costs have been met.
Purpose	Measures the availability of cash to invest in the business.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Against planned performance improvement. Data Sources: Trading service cash flow statement. -- Operational Adjustments: none.
Calculation Formula	Cash flow from operations (as shown on cash flow statement) which should be equivalent to the following: Cash receipts (related to operating revenues, and excluding capital items) less operating expenses (as depicted on the income statement excluding provisions for bad debt and capital related items).
Performance Interpretation	Performance target: as per financial model and business plan showing a financial turnaround and substantial improvement in cash from operations. Benchmark = Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieving performance target (and on track along planned path).
Benefits	Resource Management: Tracks ability to generate cash resources to invest in the business. Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to cash generation from operations. Performance Benchmarking: Tracks improvement in ability to invest in the business. Public Confidence: gives confidence that the business is able to invest in the business to sustain services.

Indicator No & Name	F4- Customer Debt Management – debtors-days
Performance Area	Customer debt management.
Indicator Cross Reference	For consideration: new trading services-specific indicator suggested for inclusion in MFMA S71 reports going forward.
Definition	Customer debt outstanding expressed as days of revenue.
Purpose	Measures customer debt management.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Against planned performance improvement. Data Sources: Trading service income statement and balance sheet. Operational Adjustments: none.
Calculation Formula	Customer accounts receivable (net of provisions for bad debt) / Invoiced customer revenues (12 months) x 365.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark <60 days Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieving performance target (and on track along planned path).
Benefits	Resource Management: Tracks ability to manage customer debt and that adequate provisions have been made for customer debt. Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to manage customer debt. Performance Benchmarking: allows comparison across services and municipality. Public Confidence and fairness: gives confidence that customer debt is well managed and customers are treated fairly.

Indicator No & Name	F5- Infrastructure Capex on PPE
Performance Area	Level of expenditure on infrastructure.
Indicator Cross Reference	Reported in MFMA Section 71 reports (with clarified definition), based on, and matching what is reported in the financial statements for the trading service.
Definition	Actual capital expenditure incurred during the financial year on property, plant and equipment (PPE) for that trading service. (Includes replacement, refurbishment, upgrades and expansion).
Purpose	Ongoing and sufficient investment in property, plant and equipment (PPE) is essential to provide a reliable and sustainable service and to meet service needs. The expectation is that actual capital investments in PPE each year need to increase by a factor of 2 to 3 times in real terms over a period of 3 to 5 years. A suitable investment path will be determined for each metro based on a realistic investment plan anchored in a financial model.
Key Components	Actual cash expenditure on property, plant and equipment (PPE) during the financial year.
Calculation Formula	As reported in the cash flow statement (actual cash invested in property, plant and equipment) during the financial year, supported the statement of changes in PPE reported in the notes to the financial statement.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 200% subject to business & investment planning Y0: n /a Y1: Plan to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: implementation.
Definition of Success	Annual investments meet the planned investment pathway.
Benefits	Improvements in service reliability and performance, and expansion to meet service needs.

Indicator No & Name	F6 - Self-financing ratio
Performance Area	Ability to finance capex from own operations.
Indicator Cross Reference	Recommended to be reported in MFMA Section 71 reports, based on, and matching what is reported in the financial statements for the trading service.
Definition	Cash flow from operations (Indicator F3) divided by actual capital expenditure incurred during the financial year on property, plant and equipment (PPE). (Indicator F5).
Purpose	The expectation is that the ability of the service to finance a share of its capital expenditure from its internal resources will increase over time as a result of the reforms. This ratio reflects the ability of the trading service to do that. A suitable performance pathway will be determined for each metro based on a realistic investment plan anchored in a financial model modelling both CAPEX (indicator F5) and cash flow from operations (Indicator F3).
Key Components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cash flow from operations Actual cash expenditure on property, plant and equipment (PPE) during the financial year.
Calculation Formula	Ratio = Indicator F3 / Indicator F5.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 100% subject to business & investment planning Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	An increase ability to finance CAPEX from internal resources (as per the defined performance pathway).
Benefits	Improvements in the financial sustainability of the service, assuring ongoing reliable service provision.

Operational Performance Indicators – WSS

Indicator No & Name	W1 - Water Security input volume % of raw water allocation
Performance area	Water Security.
Indicator Cross Reference	New indicator to be considered for inclusion in future amendments to National Treasury C88 .
Definition	The Water Security indicator measures the adequacy of a water utility's supply system in meeting demand while adhering to regulatory bulk raw water allocation limits and ecosystems requirements. It is defined as the ratio of the bulk water system input volume (all sources) to the permitted raw water allocation volume. The planned water use allocations are determined through Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) facilitated water reconciliation strategies, which reconcile all available water resources (surface, ground, desalinated and reused water) with current use requirements. These allocations are formalized in Water Use Licenses (WUL) or Service Level Agreements (SLA) and apply to water service providers, such as municipalities and Water Boards.
Purpose	Supports sustainable water use, effective water conservation and demand management, regulatory compliance, and sustainable access to resources by monitoring adherence to allocated water use limits.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: Bulk system input volumes, allocated abstraction volumes, water-use/demand/water requirements, regulatory compliance, and resource reconciliation-specific to user requirements.</p> <p>Data Sources: Flow meter abstraction records, bulk water supplied and releases, WULs/SLAs, and DWS reconciliation strategies, municipal and water board water resource planning documentation.</p> <p>Operational Adjustments: Temporary variations permitted under extraordinary conditions such as droughts, with documentation.</p>
Calculation Formula	Water Security (%) = (Bulk Water System Input Volume / Permitted Raw Water Allocation Volume) × 100
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = <80%: Adequate security; significant buffer for future growth or emergencies. Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieving <80% of permitted bulk allocation volume annually.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resource Management: Promotes sustainable water supply by balancing demand and availability. Regulatory Compliance: Ensures adherence to DWS and Water Board water allocations. Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to prevent overuse. Performance Benchmarking: Enables comparisons across municipalities and utilities. Stakeholder Engagement: Aligns practices with national water resource management goals and fosters collaboration.

Indicator No & Name	W2 - Drinking Water Systems Blue Drop
Performance Area	Drinking water systems.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing Indicator, National Treasury C88 WS4.5 , DWS Blue Drop Certification Programme.
Definition	The Blue Drop Score is a performance indicator developed as part of the Blue Drop Certification Program to assess and promote the excellence of drinking water quality management. It evaluates compliance by the Water Services Authority (WSA) with water quality standards and the effectiveness of operational and management systems supporting safe drinking water provision. The WSA is supported by a Water Services Provider (WSP), which is a public or private entity. For example, waterboards are regarded as WSPs, also known as a Bulk Water Supplier or Provider, and their performance contributes to the overall municipal Blue Drop score. In several instances the WSAs themselves act as water service providers in their own areas and may also be WSPs for other WSAs.
Purpose	Benchmarking and promoting high standards in drinking water quality management.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Drinking water quality compliance (microbiological, chemical, and physical), operational management, infrastructure reliability, community engagement. Data Sources: Laboratory tests, safety plans, maintenance logs, audits. Assessment Methodology: Annual or periodic assessments by regulatory authorities.
Calculation Formula	Blue Drop Score (%) = (Total Points Achieved / Total Points Available) × 100.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark ≥95-100%: Excellent situation; need to maintain via continued improvement. Y0: n/a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve a Blue Drop Score ≥95%, demonstrating compliance with best practices and regulatory standards for municipal water service provision.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons and encourages achievement/adherence to high standards. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to safe drinking water. • Regulatory Compliance: Assists utilities in meeting water quality standards. • Continuous Improvement: Identifies and addresses gaps in water quality management.

Indicator No & Name	W3 - Wastewater Treatment Systems Green Drop
Performance Area	Wastewater treatment systems.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing Indicator, National Treasury C88 WS4.4 , DWS Green Drop Certification Programme.
Definition	The Green Drop Score is a performance indicator introduced as part of the regulatory Green Drop Certification Program to assess the quality and efficiency of wastewater management systems. It evaluates the ability of water service authorities and providers to treat wastewater effectively, protect public health, and minimize environmental impacts. The score reflects adherence to regulatory and best-practice standards in wastewater management.
Purpose	Assess the quality and efficiency of wastewater management systems.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Effluent compliance, infrastructure reliability, risk management, operational efficiency, transparency. Data Sources: Lab analyses, maintenance logs, regulatory inspections. Assessment Methodology: Periodic evaluations by regulators or auditors.
Calculation Formula	Green Drop Score (%) = (Total Points Achieved / Total Points Available) × 100
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 90-100%: Excellent situation, need to maintain via continued improvement. Y0: n/a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve Green Drop status (a Green Drop Score of ≥90% as per DWS audits of municipal wastewater services).
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons of performance across utilities. • Environmental Stewardship: Encourages sustainable wastewater management and reduces pollution. • Regulatory Compliance: Supports adherence to wastewater discharge standards, Public Confidence: Builds trust through transparency and accountability. • Public Health: Reduction in waterborne diseases.

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No & Name	W4 - Percentage of wastewater samples compliant with water use license
Performance Area	Final effluent quality.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing Indicator, National Treasury C88 WS4.22, aligned with DWS Green Drop standards.
Definition	The Wastewater Final Effluent Compliance indicator measures the extent to which treated wastewater (final effluent) discharged from wastewater treatment facilities complies with the conditions outlined in the Water Use License (WUL), or defaults to a General Authorisation (GA) in the absence of WUL. It is aligned with the DWS Green Drop Certification Program, and assesses compliance with microbiological, chemical, and physical standards mandated to protect water resources, public health, and ecosystems.
Purpose	Ensure wastewater treatment facilities meet WUL or authorised conditions, protecting public health, ecosystems, and water resources.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Microbiological Compliance: E. coli and total coliforms within specified WUL limits or GA limits. - Chemical Compliance: Acceptable levels of Chemical Oxygen Demand (COD), ammonia, nitrates, and phosphates. - Physical Compliance: pH, turbidity, and suspended solids within regulatory thresholds. <p>Data Sources: Laboratory analyses, monitoring plans, and compliance reports. Assessment Methodology: Regular effluent sampling at discharge points as mandated by WUL or GA limits and Green Drop monitoring protocols.</p>
Calculation Formula	Effluent Compliance (%) = (Number of Compliant Samples / Total Samples Collected) × 100.
Performance Interpretation	<p>Benchmark = 90-100%: Excellent performance; fully compliant with WUL / GA.</p> <p>Y0: n / a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.</p>
Definition of Success	Achieve and maintain >90% compliance with WUL or GA conditions as verified through routine monitoring and Green Drop assessments.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Regulatory Compliance: Ensures alignment with WUL or GA and Green Drop standards. • Environmental Protection: Safeguards water resources and reduces pollution. • Operational Optimization: Identifies process inefficiencies, guiding investments and upgrades. • Public Health Protection: Reduces risks of waterborne diseases linked to poor effluent quality.

Indicator No & Name	W5 - Frequency of water mains failures per 100 km of pipeline
Performance Area	Water Network Performance.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 WS3.2.
Definition	The number of water mains failures per 100km of mains pipe per year is a performance indicator that has been developed to evaluate the efficiency and functionality of water distribution systems, particularly in managing the number of mains failures.
Purpose	Benchmarking and promoting high standards in water network performance, service quality and infrastructure asset management.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: failure of metro owned water transmission and distribution pipes, valves and fitting, excluding repairs under active leakage control</p> <p>Data Sources: telephonic and social media logging systems, workflow systems and records and worksheets.</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: Repairs undertaken annually.</p>
Calculation Formula	Number of water mains failures per 100km of mains pipe per year: Number of mains failures per year (including failures of valves and fittings) / 100kms mains length, length, as per IWA methodology
Performance Interpretation	<p>Benchmark = <50/100km Excellent network performance; full compliance with best practices.</p> <p>Y0: n / a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.</p>
Definition of Success	Achieve a Score of <50/100km, demonstrating compliance with best practices and network performance standards for sustainable municipal water service provision.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons and encourages achievement/adherence to excellent water network performance standards. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to continuous safe drinking water supply. • Service Quality: Assists utilities in meeting water network service quality standards • Continuous Improvement: Identifies and addresses gaps in water network performance and infrastructure asset management.

Indicator No & Name	W6 - Frequency of sewer blockages per 100 km of pipeline
Performance Area	Sewer Network Performance.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 WS3.1.
Definition	The number of sewer blockages per 100km of sewer length per year is a performance indicator that has been developed to evaluate the efficiency and functionality of sewer network systems, particularly in the management of blockages.
Purpose	Benchmarking and promoting high standards in sewer network performance, service quality and infrastructure asset management.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: blockages in metro owned sewer pipes, excluding pumping station blockages, where blockages are defined as reported or logged blockages that result in an obstruction of system flow which may be caused by roots, obstructive items or other pipeline disruptions Data Sources: telephonic and social media logging systems, workflow systems and records and worksheets. Assessment Methodology: Blockages repaired annually.
Calculation Formula	Number of sewer blockages per 100km of sewer length per year: Number of sewer blockages per year / 100kms sewer length, as per IWA methodology.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = <50/100km Excellent sewer network performance; full compliance with best practices. Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve a Score <50/100km, demonstrating compliance with best practices and network performance standards for sustainable municipal wastewater/sanitation service provision.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons and encourages achievement/adherence to excellent sewer network performance standards. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to ensuring continuous safe sanitation practices by reducing sewer spills. • Service Quality: Assists utilities in meeting sewer network service quality standards • Continuous Improvement: Identifies and addresses gaps in sewer network performance and infrastructure asset management.

Indicator No & Name	W7 -Physical Water Loss - Infrastructure Leakage Index
Performance Area	Physical Water Loss.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 WS5.21, DWS No Drop, and proxy indicator for Resilience.
Definition	The ILI is a performance indicator developed by the International Water Association (IWA) to evaluate the operational efficiency of water distribution systems, particularly in managing water losses. It is the ratio of the Current Annual Real Losses (CARL) to the Unavoidable Annual Real Losses (UARL).
Purpose	Evaluate and improve the operational efficiency of water distribution systems by managing water losses effectively.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Leakage performance as a ratio of actual to unavoidable losses. Identification of operational inefficiencies and improvement areas. Data Sources: Water balance analyses, flow, and pressure monitoring records. Assessment Methodology: Regular evaluation of leakage metrics. Integration of operational and environmental conditions into loss assessments.
Calculation Formula	Infrastructure Leakage Index (ILI) = CARL / UARL - CARL (Current Annual Real Losses): Volume of water lost annually due to leaks, breaks, and overflows. - UARL (Unavoidable Annual Real Losses): Minimum leakage volume achievable under optimal conditions.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = < 2: Excellent performance; very low losses. Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve an ILI of <2, indicating efficient water loss management.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Comparison across systems and regions. • Resource Allocation: Prioritize investment in leak detection and network upgrades. • Environmental Protection: Reduce unnecessary water wastage. • Public Confidence: Build trust through operational transparency. • Water Conservation: Improved water <u>use</u> efficiency and resilience.

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No & Name	W8 - Water Complaints % Response within 48 hours
Performance Area	Water Service Complaints Response.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 WS3.21.
Definition	The percentage of water callouts responded to within 48 hrs is a performance indicator that has been developed to evaluate quality of service provision and is a proxy indicator for customer care. (Where "responded to" refers to "complaint logged, someone was on site, and has appraised the matter, and a process has been initiated to resolve the matter within 48 hours").
Purpose	Benchmarking and promoting high standards in service quality and customer care
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: complaints logged, callouts responded to Data Sources: telephonic and social media callout logging systems, workflow systems and worksheets. Assessment Methodology: Annual or periodic customer satisfaction surveys and regular quality control assessments.
Calculation Formula	Water Service Complaints Response: (Number of water callouts responded to within 48 hours/Total number water callouts received and logged within 48 hours) x 100. (Notes: 1. Responded to = logged, appraised and responded to, but not necessarily resolved. 2. Multiple complaints on the same fault that are logged separately, are to be treated as one callout only).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 90–100%: Excellent service; full compliance with best practices. Y0: n/a Y1: Plan to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: implementation.
Definition of Success	Achieve a Score >90%, demonstrating compliance with best practices and regulatory standards for sustainable municipal water service provision.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons and encourages achievement/adherence to high standards. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to safe drinking water. • Service Quality: Assists utilities in meeting service quality standards • Customer Care: Assists utilities in meeting customer care standards. • Continuous Improvement: Identifies and addresses gaps in water service quality and infrastructure asset management.

Indicator No & Name	W9 - Sewer Complaints % Response within 48 hours
Performance Area	Sewer Service Complaints Response.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 WS3.11.
Definition	The percentage of sewer callouts that are responded to within 48 hrs is a performance indicator that has been developed to evaluate quality of service provision and is a proxy indicator for customer care. (Where "responded to" refers to "complaint logged, someone was on site, and has appraised the matter, and a process has been initiated to resolve the matter within 48 hours").
Purpose	Benchmarking and promoting high standards in service quality and customer care.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: complaints logged, callouts appraised, and responded to Data Sources: telephonic and social media callout logging systems, workflow systems and worksheets. Assessment Methodology: Annual or periodic customer satisfaction surveys and regular quality control assessments.
Calculation Formula	Sewer Service Complaints Response: (Number of sewer callouts responded to within 48 hours/Total number sewer callouts received and logged within 48 hours) x 100. (Notes: 1. Responded to = logged, appraised and responded to, but not necessarily resolved. 2. Multiple complaints on the same fault that are logged separately, are to be treated as one callout only).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = 90–100%: Excellent service; full compliance with best practices. Y0: n/a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve a Score >90%, demonstrating compliance with best practices and regulatory standards for sustainable municipal water service provision.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Facilitates comparisons and encourages achievement/adherence to high standards. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to safe sanitation. • Service Quality: Assists utilities in meeting service quality standards • Customer Care: Assists utilities in meeting customer care standards. • Continuous Improvement: Identifies and addresses gaps in sewer service quality and infrastructure asset management.

Indicator No & Name	W10 Non-Revenue Water (NRW)
Performance Area	Water delivery performance.
Indicator Cross Reference	Similar to existing National Treasury C88 WS5.1, alignment will be resolved.
Definition	NRW is a performance indicator included as a part of the No Drop Certification Program to measure the percentage of the treated volume of water supplied to a distribution system that does not generate revenue. NRW includes: Real Losses: Physical water losses (leaks, bursts, overflows). Apparent Losses: Unauthorized consumption, customer metering inaccuracies. Unbilled Authorized Consumption: Unbilled metered consumption and unbilled un-metered consumption (Water used for firefighting, municipal services, informal settlements).
Purpose	To evaluate and improve the efficiency of water utilities in reducing water revenue losses, enhancing operational sustainability, and protecting financial revenue streams.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Real (Physical) water losses, Apparent losses, <u>Authorised</u> consumption including <u>Unauthorised</u> consumption. Data Sources: Meter readings (bulk and customer), leakage assessments, billing records, operational adjustments for extraordinary events. Assessment Methodology: As per the No-Drop guidelines for the preparation of an IWA Water Balance for South Africa.
Calculation Formula	NRW % = ((System Input Volume – Billed Authorized Consumption) / System Input Volume) × 100 Where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Input Volume = Total treated water supplied to the distribution network from the utilities own sources. Billed Authorized Consumption = Authorized volume of water billed to customers (this includes billed metered and billed un-metered volumes and the Free Basic Water volume).
Unit of Measurement	Percentage (%).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = <25%: Good performance. indicating good management of real and apparent water losses and operational efficiency Y0: n /a Y1: Plan to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: implementation.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Performance Benchmarking: Enables utilities to compare and improve water loss levels. Operational Efficiency: Identifies priorities like leak detection and infrastructure upgrades. Revenue Protection: Minimizes financial losses from apparent losses and unbilled consumption. Sustainability: Promotes water conservation and efficient resource use.

Indicator No & Name	W11 Metering Performance
Performance Area	Metering Performance.
Indicator Name	Percentage of all water connections metered and billed on actual monthly readings.
Indicator Cross Reference	To be considered: amendments to existing National Treasury C88 indicator (WS5.31), percentage of total water connections metered.
Definition	The percentage of water connections metered and billed monthly on actual monthly readings. This indicator evaluates the financial sustainability and water use efficiency of municipalities by tracking accurate metering, and billing practices.
Purpose	Assess the financial and operational efficiency of municipalities, promote sustainable water use, reduce metering and billing inaccuracies, and reduce financial losses.
Key Components	Measurement Scope: Includes billed metered water connections (residential, commercial, industrial and free basic water). Target Scope: Total connections (billed metered + billed un-metered). Data Sources: Billing records, meter reading logs, water supply records.
Calculation Formula	Percentage = (Number of connections metered and billed on actual readings monthly / Total number of connections (metered + un-metered)) × 100.
Assessment Methodology	The calculation is performed on a rolling 12-month basis to account for seasonal variations.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark: >98%: Ideal performance; accurate metering and billing practices, improved revenue, reduced NRW Y0: n /a Y1: Plan to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: implementation.
Definition of Success	Achieve a target of >98% connections metered and billed on actual monthly readings.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Financial Sustainability: Increased revenue from accurate billing. Water Use Efficiency: Promotes responsible water consumption. Customer Satisfaction: Builds trust through fair billing. Compliance: Aligns with National Treasury's performance indicators.

Operational Performance Indicators - Electricity

Indicator No & Name	E1 - Bulk Commercial Metering Performance
Performance Area	Industrial (bulk) and commercial user meterage.
Indicator Cross Reference	New indicator to be considered for inclusion in future amendments to National Treasury C88 .
Definition	It measures the progress and maturity of the billing part of the revenue cycle that is active and in operation that should migrate to a perfect (100%) score. Technologies are available in the AMR/AMI space to enhance this metering and collection (e.g. automated billing).
Purpose	Bulk (LPU), and commercial metering generate the most revenue for metros and are crucial for achieving financial turnaround and maintaining performance. It supports accurate metering (and billing) as part of the revenue management process and is seen as the critical starting point or where all metros need to focus attention to.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: AMR/AMI metering to all customers in these two categories. Progress towards full automated billing, cloud access to all customers. Percentage of Bulk(LPU) and Commercial Customers Metered active and operational. Data Sources: Information is automatically obtained from AMI data sources. Operational Adjustments: Temporary variations are allowed under extraordinary conditions, such as system replacements and upgrades.
Calculation Formula	Bulk (LPU) & commercial meterage: Total bulk (LPU) and commercial meters in full billing operation/ Total bulk and commercial customers.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = >98% Y0: n/a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2-Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieving >98% full billing operation. Progress towards automated billing in Y5/Y6.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resource Management: Promotes accurate metering and billing for revenue and financial turnaround in focussing utility actions on most critical element. • Risk Mitigation: Guides corrective action to enhance revenue management. • Performance Benchmarking: Enables comparisons across municipalities and utilities. • Stakeholder Engagement: Ensure more rigorous engagement and advance customer action to most critical part of customer base. • Public Confidence: Builds trust through transparency, accuracy and better information availability.

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No & Name	E2- Vending Efficiency % of metering operational
Performance Area	Vending efficiency.
Indicator Cross Reference	New indicator to be considered for inclusion in future amendments to National Treasury C88 .
Definition	Measure the wholistic performance of the vending/ prepayment system ability to sell tokens continuously when customers require energy. It has two components namely uptime to the master system and the number of active meters in the system. A downward trend (or below 100% indicator) shows inefficiencies in managing the system.
Purpose	Vending involves the prepayment master system and satellite stations managing and issuing tokens to customers for electricity purchases. Metros have vending systems in place but for various reasons the management and operations of prepayment metering is sometime only partly in service or functional. The system vending operation, which involves selling tokens, must operate at 100% efficiency to enable customers to make continuous purchases seamlessly. Indicator is seeking to encourage 100% continuous vending of prepayment sales.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: a) Measure the uptime whether the complete master system (with it satellite stations) is operational and is vending to customers. b) Measure the number of active prepayment meters in the system to the total number of prepayment meters that needs to purchase pre-payment electricity. Data Sources: Vending system management reports, maintenance logs, audits. Assessment Methodology: Annual or periodic assessments by regulatory authorities.
Calculation Formula	Vending efficiency 1) Total monthly active customers / total number of prepayment customers and/or 2) Uptime of system as available hours against total system hours.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark for both uptime and active meters in the system= >98% Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Downward trend but a 100% figure achieved not later than in year 2.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Against other utilities and indicative of wrong business processes and managerial trends in the utility. • Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to have all systems in place. Deter theft and meter bypassing if the token system is fully available. safe drinking water. • Regulatory Compliance: Assists utilities in meeting electricity performance standards. • Continuous Improvement: Identifies gaps in electricity business processes and systems.

Indicator No & Name	E3- Automated Meter Reading Coverage
Performance Area	Automated meter reading coverage.
Indicator Cross Reference	New indicator to be considered for inclusion in future amendments to National Treasury C88 .
Definition	Automated meter reading (AMR) as a percentage of Advanced metering infrastructure (AMI) that is operating operational, within each customer category of bulk(industrial) and commercial customers.
Purpose	This indicator evaluates the deployment and rollout of advanced metering and available technologies and the integration back into the main system to enhance the billing process for customer categories that contribute significantly to the utility's revenue. It highlights the need for technological advancements, often linked to SMART metering projects. The first deals primarily with a hardware rollout whilst the second part of the indicator deals with software integration.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: 1) Automated meters as a percentage of total meters in both bulk and commercial customer categories (measured separately). 2) Percentage of employed meters integrated into main systems and fully functional as a smart system. Data Sources: Meter statistics from utility records.
Calculation Formula	Automated metering as % total bulk (LPU) metering; Automated metering (smart) deployment as % of total 1) bulk (LPU) and 2)commercial metering.3) % of Integration of bulk and 4) commercial against total meters.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = better than NERSA benchmark Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Internal increasing trend of meter coverage.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benchmarking: Comparison of performance across utilities but indicative of the maturity of metering using advance processes and systems. • Public Confidence: Transparency in the availability of data for customer usages. Builds trust through transparency and accountability.

Indicator No & Name	E4 – Repairs Efficiency
Performance Area	Repairs Efficiency.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing NERSA Indicator.
Definition	Inadequate investment in repairs and maintenance of networks need to be pursued to improve the reliability of the networks. The indicator measured how much as a percentage of operation is spend on repairs and maintenance.
Purpose	Investing in repairs and maintenance is essential to improve network reliability. Utilities must meet or exceed regulatory benchmark levels.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: Total operational maintenance (both planned and unplanned- mostly planned) need to achieve a set benchmark for the utilities. It needs to be guided by an asset management strategy (AMS) and process, based on long-term operational and refurbishment plans. It is informed by the needs of the utility business from work management systems and other internal data sources based on infrastructure assessments. Data Sources and Assessment Methodology: Continuous information from AMS and processes and outage records.
Calculation Formula	Repairs efficiency: = Toal operational spend on repairs and maintenance / total operational costs (revenue).
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = better than NERSA benchmark Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Achieve and exceed regularly benchmark and NT benchmark of 6% and 8% annually.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Regulatory Compliance: Ensures alignment with NERSA and NT standards. Operational Optimization: Improve network performance and safety standard and customers supplies.

Indicator No & Name	E5 – Total Electricity losses as % of electricity purchased
Performance Area	Loss Reduction.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 EE4.4 and NERSA.
Definition	Losses consist of technical losses and non-technical losses. The first is mostly a characteristic of the network, but the second is an indicator of how good the utility deals with commercial and collection issues to get cash in the bank. It reflects the total sales against what is purchases and is an indicator of what is not available to sell to end customers and have a direct bearing on revenue.
Purpose	This definition focus to trend the losses and the efforts of the utility to curtail this and benchmarking against other utilities. Many utilities in SA have serious issues with losses and it is one of the main reasons for non-sustainability challenges. As a trend over time, it reflects the success of the utility in achieving efficiencies (optimise) in purchases versus sales.
Key Components	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Assessment Criteria: Driving down of losses over time at least below the regulatory benchmark of 12% Data Sources: All purchases metering data versus total metering sales data consisting of the complete revenue management and losses value chain. Assessment Methodology: Measured annually but done on a continuous basis. Total kWh sales from all customer meters plus estimates for non- metered items such as streetlights/ own consumption and departmental sales against total purchases from all sales that can consist of bulk (LPU) purchases, wheeled energy and DER purchases.
Calculation Formula	(Electricity Purchases in kWh - Electricity sales in kWh) / Electricity Purchases in kWh.
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = better than NERSA benchmark Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Downwards trend realistic from business perspective, achieving regulatory benchmark in prescribed time.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Benchmarking: Improves utility financial sustainability and having more funds availed for critical network operations and investments. Efficiency benchmark against other utilities Public Confidence: Builds trust by demonstrating commitment to continuous safe drinking water supply. Service Quality: Assists utilities in having funds available for own investments in infrastructure. Continuous Improvement: Measures utility efforts and performance to improve on efficiency and performance.

Indicator No & Name	E6 – Network Effectiveness ASIFI
Performance Area	Network Effectiveness.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 EE3.6, NRS 048 – 6, IEEE 1366.
Definition	ASIFI (Average System Interruption Frequency Index) or SAIFI (System Average Interruption Frequency Index).
Purpose	This definition focuses on the calculation of the average number of interruptions that a connected load or customer would experience in a year. Calculation of reliability indices on a consistent approach can deliver the benefit of valuable performance data to plan and execute maintenance better and reduce interruptions which reduce revenue to Utilities.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: The ratio of the total kVA affected by the outage (i) over the total connected kVA on the distribution network. Total kVA is the kVA installed in the MV/LV distribution transformers or subscribed capacity in kVA for MV customers. Data Sources: Total number of outages / interruptions (n) Assessment Methodology: Summation of the ratio over an annual period.
Calculation Formula	$ASIFI = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \text{Total kVA affected by the outage } (i)}{\text{Total connected kVA}}$ <p>Calculation must be for 12 month rolling period.</p>
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = better than NERSA benchmark Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Downwards trend realistic from business perspective, achieving regulatory benchmark in prescribed time.
Benefits	Benchmarking: Provide insights to distribution businesses based on national and international benchmarking. Public Confidence: Provide the regulator with consistent and comparable performance metrics to regulate license conditions. Service Quality: Provide customers with quality of supply information they can use in their investment and planning process. Continuous Improvement: Provide the distribution business with valuable performance data to plan and execute maintenance better, and reduce interruptions which reduce revenue to Utilities.

Indicator No.	E7 – Network Effectiveness ASIDI
Performance Area	Network Effectiveness.
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, National Treasury C88 EE3.5, NRS 048 – 6, IEEE 1366.
Definition	ASIDI (Average System Interruption Duration Index) or SAIDI (System Average Interruption Duration Index).
Purpose	This definition focuses on the calculation of the average outage duration that a connected load or customer would experience in a year. Calculation of reliability indices on a consistent approach can deliver the benefit of valuable performance data to plan and execute maintenance better and reduce interruptions which reduce revenue to Utilities.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: The ratio of the multiple of the duration of the outage (i) and the total kVA affected by the outage (i) over the total connected kVA on the distribution network. Total kVA is the kVA installed in the MV/LV distribution transformers or subscribed capacity in kVA for MV customers. Data Sources: Total number of outages / interruptions (n) Assessment Methodology: Summation of the ratio over an annual period.
Calculation Formula	$ASIDI = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \text{Duration of the outage } (i) \times \text{Total kVA affected by the outage } (i)}{\text{Total connected kVA}}$ <p>Calculation must be for 12 month rolling period</p>
Performance Interpretation	Benchmark = better than NERSA benchmark Y0: n /a Y1: Plan with targets to approach / reach benchmark Y2–Y6: percentage achievement of targets.
Definition of Success	Downwards trend realistic from business perspective, achieving regulatory benchmark in prescribed time.
Benefits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Benchmarking: Provide insights to distribution businesses based on national and international benchmarking. Public Confidence: Provide the regulator with consistent and comparable performance metrics to regulate license conditions. Service Quality: Provide customers with quality of supply information they can use in their investment and planning process. Continuous Improvement: Provide the distribution business with valuable performance data to plan and execute maintenance better, and reduce interruptions which reduce revenue to Utilities.

Operational Performance Indicators – Solid Waste

Indicator No. & Name	S1 Service Collection Coverage
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, C88 ENV3.1, 3.11
Definition	Tracks the percentage of households in formal areas receiving regular curbside waste collection and recognized informal settlements with weekly collection (active) or access to passive collection points (e.g., skips, containers) within a 3km radius.
Purpose	Ensure service quality, by measuring that all formal and informal areas have access to basic waste collection services, reducing illegal dumping and promoting environmental cleanliness.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: Percentage of households receiving scheduled, formal waste collection services in formal areas, as well as the percentage of residents in informal settlements located within 3km of metro-serviced passive waste collection points (e.g. skips, trailers).</p> <p>Data Sources: Municipal waste collection reports, GPS data on locations of passive collection points, supplemented by household surveys and records from waste service providers</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: Regular monitoring of waste collection routes and customer service data to ensure coverage. GIS mapping of passive waste collection points and population distribution, validated through field surveys.</p>
Calculation Formula	% of Formal Residential Properties (HH) receiving weekly collection % of Informal Areas (Recognised Informal Settlements) receiving weekly collection (active) or equipped with collection units (passive) with 3km radius (max) & serviced weekly
Frequency	Quarterly GIS assessments and reporting based on collection data and population surveys.
Performance Interpretation	Achieve and maintain >98% coverage of waste collection services in formal areas, and ensure that >98% of residents in informal settlements live within 3km of metro-serviced waste collection infrastructure.
Definition of Success	Achieve and maintain >98% coverage of waste collection services in formal areas, and ensure that >98% of residents in informal settlements live within 3km of metro-serviced waste collection infrastructure.
Benefits	<p>Environmental Protection: Reduces illegal dumping and littering, improving cleanliness in urban areas.</p> <p>Protection: Mitigates health risks from uncollected waste, especially in informal settlements.</p> <p>Equity in Service Delivery: Promotes fair access to waste services across all socio-economic areas.</p> <p>Operational Efficiency: Identifies gaps in service provision, helping municipalities optimize routes and infrastructure investments.</p>

Indicator No. & Name	S2 Service Reliability
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, C88 ENV3 2.1, 2.3, 3.2
Definition	Evaluates waste collection service reliability by tracking adherence to scheduled collections and delays in service provision. Without a functioning weighbridge system, service quality cannot be assured, leading to inefficiencies, data manipulation, and malpractice. This indicator relies on automated integration with weighbridges and vehicle telemetry to verify the accuracy of service records, ensuring compliance with operational standards and preventing fraudulent reporting.
Purpose	Ensures waste collection services are delivered on time and at optimal fleet capacity, reducing service disruptions that contribute to waste accumulation, environmental hazards, public health risks, and customer dissatisfaction. The absence of weighbridges enables malpractice, including false reporting and inefficient service delivery, making automated monitoring essential for accountability.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: Monitoring of waste collection vehicles via weighbridge and/or telemetry vehicle tracking system, providing real-time data on on-time performance in relation to published schedules.</p> <p>Data Sources: Automated fleet tracking data (GIS/Weighbridge systems)—can be supplemented by municipal waste collection service records, and user satisfaction surveys.</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: Automatic reporting is produced via the integration of telemetry vehicle tracking data as well as from weighbridge data.</p>
Calculation Formula	<p>1-Weighbridge Tracking System: Number of Incoming RELs to LS & RTS where they >X% Full (as per LOS) / Expected Trips per LOS recommendations. (Result = %) AND/OR</p> <p>2- Vehicle Tracking System: % of Deviation rate from scheduled optimisation strategy, as per LOS.</p>
Frequency	Automated, cloud based reporting systems. Real-time, remote access.
Performance Interpretation	<p>1-Weighbridge Tracking System: >90% of planned visits to LS & RTS per LOS recommendations.</p> <p>2. Vehicle Tracking System <10% km driven per predetermined route / km deviation from route.</p>
Definition of Success	<p>1-Weighbridge Tracking System: >90% of planned visits to LS & RTS per LOS recommendations.</p> <p>2. Vehicle Tracking System <10% km driven per predetermined route / km deviation from route.</p>
Benefits	<p>Operational Efficiency: Improves waste collection scheduling, routing, and fleet management through real-time data.</p> <p>Customer Satisfaction: Enhances public trust and satisfaction by delivering consistent, reliable services.</p> <p>Public Health and Environmental Protection: Reduces the risks associated with uncollected waste, ensuring timely removal of waste from residential and commercial areas.</p> <p>Resource Optimization: Identifies inefficiencies in waste collection routes and service schedules, guiding future investments and operational changes.</p>

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No. & Name	S3 Asset Maintenance & Operations
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, C88 ENV3 2.1, 2.2, 2.3
Definition	Tracks the functionality and calibration of weighbridges at landfill sites and transfer stations, ensuring accurate waste volume recording and compliance with SAWIS reporting standards. This indicator measures operational uptime, automated data accuracy, and the use of analytics to validate reporting and track waste diversion.
Purpose	Enhance data accuracy for landfill operations and improve operational efficiency through the use of automated systems.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: weighbridge uptime, automated record-keeping, and weighbridge software analytics.</p> <p>Data Sources: weighbridge operational logs and maintenance records, automated landfill data records (weighbridge software), compliance reports from landfill management, and weighbridge analytics reports.</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: monitoring operational status and downtime of weighbridges through maintenance and performance logs; reviewing the percentage of waste tonnage data automatically captured by the weighbridge system, analyzing the weighbridge software-generated reports for data accuracy, trends, and compliance tracking.</p>
Calculation Formula	$\frac{\text{No. of Days each WB operational}}{\text{(No of LS \& RTS) x 365}}$ $\frac{\text{No. of Quarterly uploads to SAWIS}}{\text{No of expected Quarterly Uploads to SAWIS}}$
Frequency	Automated, cloud based reporting systems. Real-time, remote access.
Performance Interpretation	<p>>90% uptime for weighbridge & waste recording system</p> <p>>95% of data for sites uploaded to SAWIS on quarterly basis</p>
Definition of Success	<p>>90% uptime for weighbridge & waste recording system</p> <p>>95% of data for sites uploaded to SAWIS on quarterly basis</p>
Benefits	<p>Regulatory Compliance: Ensures adherence to waste management regulations through accurate data and automated reporting.</p> <p>Operational Efficiency: Reduces manual data entry and entry points for corrupt and manipulative practice, improves weighbridge uptime, and optimizes landfill security and access control.</p> <p>Data Accuracy: Enhances the quality and reliability of landfill data for better waste management planning.</p> <p>Resource Optimization: Guides landfill management decisions by providing insights through software analytics, improving overall performance.</p>

Indicator No. & Name	S4 Waste Minimisation
Indicator Cross Reference	Existing indicator, # C88 ENV2.2; NEMWA (Section 18/EPR)
Definition	Tracks the solid waste tonnage diverted from landfilling from registered & recognised waste facilities or initiatives, as well as direct Metro diversion activities, divided by the population.
Purpose	Promote waste recovery, recycling, composting, and other circular waste treatment options to reduce the volume of waste disposed of in general landfills. This indicator encourages municipalities to minimize waste sent to landfills, support the transition to a circular economy, and achieve waste diversion targets following national and local waste management policies.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: waste diversion rates via government sanctioned or PPP-based facilities used for waste processing/treatment.</p> <p>Data Sources: weighbridge or scale data from metro-sanctioned waste recovery and treatment sites. In addition, monthly and annual reports from waste treatment facilities on quantities diverted.</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: Improvement measured against a baseline diversion rate.</p>
Calculation Formula	$\text{Waste Diversion (tonnes)} = \frac{\text{Total tonnes of waste diverted from landfill to treatment facilities}}{\text{Population}}$
Frequency	Quarterly reporting of waste diversion tonnage, with annual reviews against established baselines and national targets.
Performance Interpretation	Agreed improvement as per baseline
Definition of Success	Agreed improvement as per baseline
Benefits	<p>EPR: Encourages alignment with the EPR, for recycling, composting, and recovery of materials, promoting resource efficiency and waste minimization.</p> <p>Regulatory Compliance: Ensures alignment with national waste diversion targets and supports compliance with the NWMS.</p> <p>Operational Optimization: Identifies opportunities to enhance the efficiency of waste collection and treatment infrastructure.</p> <p>Public Engagement: This activity raises awareness of waste minimization practices, encouraging residents and businesses to participate in waste reduction initiatives.</p>

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No. & Name	S5 Environmental compliance
Indicator Cross Reference	NEM:WA: Section 51 Contents of WML, requiring auditing N&S GNR 926: Norms & Standards for the Storage of Waste
Definition	Measures the compliance of waste management facilities with relevant environmental regulations, including the NEM:WA, GNR635, and Waste Classification and Management Regulations. The indicator provides a facility compliance rating that reflects adherence to applicable licenses and permits, where licensed facilities are rated based on fulfilling their license conditions. Non-licensed facilities are assigned a score of zero to incentivize the pursuit of proper licensing and registration. The indicator ensures facilities responsibly manage, treat, and dispose of waste according to the latest waste regulations and by-laws.
Purpose	Ensure all waste management facilities operate within the legal framework set by national and local regulations, promoting safe, environmentally responsible, and sustainable waste management practices.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: license status and conditions, applicable waste management regulations, and weighting of license conditions. Data Sources: facility compliance audit reports (internal and external), waste management license documentation and conditions, and audit records detailing adherence to by-laws, regulations, and NWMS standards. Assessment Methodology: facility compliance rating, weighting of conditions, review of audit reports.
Calculation Formula	Compliance Rating (%) = (Weighted Score of Compliant License Conditions / Total Weighted Conditions) × 100 Unlicensed Facilities = Automatic zero compliance rating
Frequency	Annual compliance audits for all licensed and unlicensed waste management facilities.
Performance Interpretation	Compliant or Non-Compliant
Definition of Success	NEM:WA: Section 51 Contents of WML, requiring auditing N&S GNR 926: Norms & Standards for the Storage of Waste
Benefits	Regulatory Alignment: Ensures waste management facilities comply with NEM:WA, GNR635, and other relevant waste regulations. Operational Accountability: Facilitates the identification of regulatory gaps and operational inefficiencies, prompting improvements in facility management. Incentivizes Licensing: It assigns zero scores to unlicensed facilities to encourage them to obtain proper registration and operate within the legal framework. Public Health and Safety: Enhances protection of public health through better compliance with waste handling and disposal regulations. Continuous Improvement: Drives facilities to improve their compliance performance and maintain high standards in waste management.

Indicator No. & Name	S6 Cost efficiency
Indicator Cross Reference	C88: Budget Reporting MSCOA: Collection & Disposal
Definition	Measures the annual operating cost of waste collection and disposal services per ton of waste disposed. It evaluates the financial performance of waste management services by tracking the costs specifically related to collection and disposal, separately from other public cleansing and support functions. This indicator helps to identify areas where cost reductions can be made while maintaining adequate service delivery and assesses the overall efficiency of revenue-generating waste services.
Purpose	Ensure that waste collection and disposal services are delivered cost-effectively, optimizing resource use while minimizing operational expenses.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: operating cost per ton, separation of costs, and budget reporting. Data Sources: annual budget reports for waste management services, C88 financial reporting, waste disposal tonnage data from weighbridge systems or other verified sources, and operating expense breakdowns for collection, disposal, public cleansing, and support functions.
Calculation Formula	Total Expenditure from Statement of Financial Performance for Sub-Functions 4402 (Collection) and 4403 (Disposal) / Total Mass of Waste Recorded at LS weighbridges for disposal, including MSW sent to private landfills.
Frequency	Annual reporting based on fiscal year budget data and C88 reporting.
Performance Interpretation	Significant Improvement (Reduction): Demonstrates a substantial reduction in operating costs per ton compared to the baseline, indicating improved cost efficiency. Moderate Improvement: A moderate decrease in operating costs per ton indicates progress toward cost efficiency goals. No Change: No significant change in operating costs, suggesting stable but not improved cost efficiency. Cost Increase: Indicates rising costs per ton, highlighting the need for cost control measures and operational improvements.
Definition of Success	Achieve an agreed improvement (reduction) in the annual operating cost of waste collection and disposal services per ton of waste disposed, as compared to the baseline or previous reporting period. Success is measured by reducing costs without compromising service quality or operational effectiveness.
Benefits	Financial Sustainability: Ensures that waste management services are delivered cost-efficiently, optimizing budget allocations and reducing unnecessary expenditures. Informed Decision-Making: Provides data-driven insights for budget planning, cost control, and investment in waste management infrastructure. Operational Accountability: Highlights areas where cost inefficiencies may exist, allowing for targeted interventions to improve resource allocation. Increased Competitiveness: A more cost-efficient waste management system can lead to better service pricing, benefiting both the municipality and its residents. Transparency: Enhances financial transparency by clearly separating costs related to different functions within waste management services.

Indicator No. & Name	S7 Climate Change Mitigation
Indicator Cross Reference	<i>Existing indicator, # C88 ENV5.1. Aligned with IPCC GHG Reporting Guidelines.</i>
Definition	This indicator tracks the annual reduction of greenhouse gas emissions, specifically CO ₂ e (carbon dioxide equivalent) and CH ₄ (methane), from waste management operations. This includes emissions reductions achieved through fleet and route optimization, waste diversion from landfills, and methane flaring and management at landfills. The indicator tracks improvements in emission reductions and climate resilience strategies that contribute to mitigating the environmental impact of waste management activities.
Purpose	Improve waste management systems' environmental sustainability and climate resilience by minimizing carbon and methane emissions.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: CO ₂ e reduction rate, CH ₄ reduction rate, emission offset value, landfill gas management, odor, and air quality monitoring. Data Sources: metro internal records on fleet operations, route optimization, and waste diversion data; contractor reporting on landfill gas management activities and emissions measurements; IPCC values for CO ₂ e (for emission conversions); metered readings for methane (CH ₄) emissions from landfill sites; and odor and air quality monitoring systems. Assessment Methodology: CO ₂ e emission reduction calculation, methane emission reduction calculation, waste diversion contribution, landfill gas management, and financial viability of emission reduction initiatives.
Calculation Formula	CO₂e Reduction = (Total CO ₂ e Avoided from Fleet Optimization + Total CO ₂ e Avoided from Waste Diversion) CH₄ Reduction = (Total Methane Captured and Treated through Landfill Gas Management) × IPCC Methane Equivalency Factor (CO ₂ e Conversion)
Frequency	Annual reporting based on fleet optimization, waste diversion, and landfill gas management data.
Performance Interpretation	Significant Reduction: Achieves a significant reduction in CO ₂ e and CH ₄ emissions compared to the baseline, demonstrating effective climate resilience strategies. Moderate Reduction: Shows a moderate decrease in emissions, indicating progress toward emission reduction and climate resilience goals. No Change: Little or no change in emissions, suggesting that further interventions or improvements are needed. Emission Increase: Indicates rising emissions, requiring immediate corrective measures to address inefficiencies in waste management practices.
Definition of Success	Agreed improvement (reduction) in annual CO ₂ e and CH ₄ emissions compared to the baseline, aligned with national climate targets and waste management strategies.
Benefits	GHG Emission Reduction: Helps reduce the contribution of waste management operations to global greenhouse gas emissions, mitigating climate change impacts. Financial Savings: Demonstrates the financial viability of emission reduction strategies, including potential revenue generation from methane capture or carbon credits. Operational Efficiency: Optimizes waste collection and disposal processes, leading to cost savings in fuel consumption and landfill space management. Compliance with Climate Policies: Aligns with international and national climate resilience and greenhouse gas reduction frameworks, contributing to achieving sustainability targets.

Indicator No. & Name	S8 Asset Creation: Landfill Airspace
Indicator Cross Reference	N/A
Definition	Measures landfill operations' efficiency and future airspace availability by ensuring that metros perform annual airspace and topography assessments of their landfills for licensing purposes. It assesses the operational efficiency of current landfill cells, slopes, and operations and maintenance (O&M) practices. Additionally, the indicator evaluates long-term planning by calculating future airspace availability based on current usage trends and projections.
Purpose	Ensure efficient use of landfill airspace and maintain compliance with landfill licensing conditions.
Key Components	Assessment Criteria: operational efficiency, future airspace projections, O&M practices, and license compliance. Data Sources: Metro airspace measurement reports, operational reports from landfill operators, and waste tonnage data from weighbridge records. Assessment Methodology: Review license conditions, calculate used and available airspace and review the landfill's operations, such as compaction, slope stability, and O&M practices.
Calculation Formula	Remaining Useful Life = Available Airspace (as per modelled Final Profile) / Airspace Consumption Rate (as per monthly consumption – requires either weighbridge data or topographical surveys)
Frequency	Annual reporting on airspace measurements, operational efficiency, and license reviews.
Performance Interpretation	Efficient Use: Airspace is used efficiently, with operational practices maximizing landfill capacity while ensuring compliance with license conditions. Sufficient Future Airspace: Based on current and projected waste volumes, landfills should have a minimum of 8 years of available airspace. License Compliance: Landfill operations fully comply with regulatory requirements and best practices. Inefficient Use or Insufficient Airspace: Operational inefficiencies or insufficient airspace are identified, requiring corrective actions such as improved compaction, waste diversion strategies, or the identification of new landfill capacity.
Definition of Success	Annual Topographical Surveys / Airspace Reporting submitted and approved to HoD for all Metro owned landfills to quantify remaining airspace and weighbridge data to determine airspace consumption rate and calculate remaining useful life.
Benefits	Operational Efficiency: Ensures that landfill operations are optimized for efficient use of airspace, reducing the need for premature expansions or new landfills. Cost Savings: This strategy maximizes the lifespan of current landfills, delaying the need for costly new infrastructure and reducing operational costs associated with inefficient practices. Regulatory Compliance: Ensures landfill operations comply with regulatory requirements and license conditions, avoiding penalties and enforcement actions. Sustainability: Supports long-term waste management planning by ensuring adequate airspace to meet future needs.

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Indicator No. & Name	S9 Access Control/Security
Indicator Cross Reference	N/A
Definition	Tracks the effectiveness of security measures implemented at landfill sites, preventing unauthorized access, vandalism, and theft. It includes developing and updating a security plan annually, coupled with incident reporting, to determine whether a site qualifies for necessary structural upgrades, such as landfill gas (LFG) systems or weighbridge installations. Security measures ensure the integrity of critical infrastructure and safe operations at the landfill.
Purpose	Ensure that landfill sites are adequately protected against theft, vandalism, and other security threats that could compromise operations or damage critical infrastructure.
Key Components	<p>Assessment Criteria: security plan, incident report card, infrastructure protection, upgrade recommendations, risk management, and security improvement plan.</p> <p>Data Sources: Metro security plans and policies, incident report cards documenting security breaches, and contractor reports detailing security status and improvement recommendations.</p> <p>Assessment Methodology: review of security plan, incident monitoring, and vulnerability assessment.</p>
Calculation Formula	Incident Frequency = (Total Incidents Reported / Number of Landfill Sites) × 100
Frequency	Annual update of security plans and incident report cards and continuous monitoring of incidents with quarterly reviews.
Performance Interpretation	<p>Metro developed Security & Emergency Preparedness and Response Plan (EP&RP), updated annually, per LS & RTS.</p> <p>As per NEM:WA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perimeter wall and access control Metros record incidents that are unexpected occurrences like major emissions, fires, vandalism, theft, or explosions, as well as those that pose a risk to public health or the environment, captured in incident reports.
Definition of Success	<p>Submission of Security & EP&RP</p> <p>Implementation of Plan</p> <p>LSs & RTSs to maintain access control and a 1.8m perimeter wall around the waste facility.</p> <p>Metro to provide evidence of monitoring and reporting incidents.</p>
Benefits	<p>Asset Protection: This ensures that critical infrastructure, such as LFG systems and weighbridges, is protected from theft and vandalism, reducing operational disruptions and financial losses.</p> <p>Cost Savings: Reduces the cost of repairing or replacing damaged infrastructure due to vandalism or theft, leading to improved cost efficiency.</p> <p>Operational Continuity: Maintains uninterrupted waste management operations by preventing security breaches that could compromise landfill operations.</p> <p>Compliance: Ensures that landfill sites meet security requirements outlined in metro policies and that incident reports guide decision-making on infrastructure upgrades.</p> <p>Risk Mitigation: Reduces the risk of security incidents through proactive planning and response measures, ensuring long-term site safety and integrity.</p>

Annexure 14: Summary of Metro Performance Indicators for Solid Waste Management (JG Africa, 2024)

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
Operational								
Total Generation and Collection	Recorded	Not currently recorded	Recorded	Recorded	Not currently recorded	Not currently recorded	Partly recorded	Partly recorded
Total Disposal	Recorded	Recorded via operating weighbridges	Recorded	Recorded but data collection inconsistent	Recorded	Recorded via operating weighbridges	Recorded but inaccurate due to non-functional weighbridges	Total tonnages not currently accurately recorded as not all weigh-bridges in operation
Illegal Dumping	All illegal dumping is recorded	Recorded but volumes not measured	Occurrences of illegal dumping & % removal currently recorded	Waste collected as a part of cleansing is recorded	Occurrences not currently recorded	Illegal dumping occurrences and removal thereof not measured	Major	Large number and not recorded
Engineered works	Compliant at time of construction but compliance not updated and leachate system not fully functional	All comply with Minimum Requirements and GNR 636	Uncertainty about condition of pollution control mechanisms at older landfills	Compliant at time of construction but compliance not updated and evidence of poor leachate performance. Capping delays at landfills	Landfills originally designed to the Minimum Requirements specifications, but may be no longer – no monitoring done	All landfills have appropriate engineering works	Very little to no engineered works at landfills	No engineered basal lining system in-place. No water management undertaken (no collection system & no ponds)
Weighbridge System	In place but in need of repair	In place, operational and serviced at all facilities	In place but none are operational ?????????	In place but not always operational	There are no operational and serviced / calibrated weighbridges in-place at the landfills	All landfills but not all transfer stations have operational weighbridges	Present at 2 landfills but not operational	Weighbridges at both landfills but only partially operational
Access Control	Security and perimeter wall in place. Pickers allowed on some landfills	All facilities with perimeter walls, no waste pickers allowed on site	All sites have perimeter walls. Waste pickers controlled through	Vandalism has broken security fences. Illegal miners and pickers present	Waste pickers are active on landfills, to the detriment of operations. Waste picker	All facilities with perimeter fences, no waste pickers allowed on site	No access control. Unauthorised waste pickers active on sites	Waste pickers are allowed on-site, with Metro not implementing

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
			registration system.		registration unsuccessful			access control for pickers
Airspace Availability	No recent calculations done	Limited airspace availability	Airspace constrained	Surveys in 2024.	Airspace constrained	Annual survey, limited airspace	Surveys annually	Airspace constrained
Disposal Practices	Undertaken by Metro. Dependent on external fleet	All disposal done by Metro. Some slope stability issues	Done by Pikiitup. Cover material application inconsistent due to availability	Contracted service providers. Only spot checks by Metros. Compaction and cover insufficient.	Monitored by Metro. Slope stability and compaction density assessments not undertaken	Daily cover suitable. Compaction density not assessed. Slope stability assessment annually	Slope stability and compaction density assessments not undertaken	Disposal operations undertaken by Metro. Daily cover applied, compaction density not measured, slope stability a problem
Plant Availability	External fleet in poor condition	Some challenges with servicing turnaround /lack of in-house skills	Yellow plant owned and serviced by each Dept.	Yellow plant provided by service provider. Unavailability an issue	Sourced from leased contracts. Availability an issue	No Critical shortages. All plant owned by Metro	Plant not available at all landfills	Yellow plant for operations, all contracted to private SP
Rehabilitation, Capping and Closure	None undertaken to date	Increased capping required	Two closed landfills being recapped/ rehabilitated again due to vandalism	Procedure for progressive rehabilitation of closing landfills delayed	Inactive landfills rehabilitated and maintained, active landfill rehabilitation in progress	Closure progressive. No outstanding closure issues	Northern landfill airspace depleted and is being progressively rehabilitated	Two closed landfills in the Metro, one capped & closed, the other uncapped
Waste Characterisation	Last reported in 2017	Frequent, comprehensive	Most recently in 2021	Most recently 2023	Most recently 2019	Undertaken in 2024 for wet and dry seasons	Undertaken in 2020	Last undertaken in 2021
Waste Recording	Classification aligned with SAWIS but recording only when weighbridges operational	At all facilities and backed up at Metro level	Classification aligned with SAWIS	Classification aligned with SAWIS but recording only when weighbridges operational	No operational weighbridges	At all facilities and backed up at Metro Level	Weighbridges are inoperative	Undertaken when weighbridges operational

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
Waste Reporting (SAWIS)	Quarterly, as required ???????	Quarterly, as required	Quarterly, as required	Quarterly, but data not provided	No operational weighbridges	Quarterly, as required, some discrepancies	Quarterly as required ?????????	Quarterly, as required
MWS Diversion	Information provided by BBCs	Yes, 450,000 t with records kept	Yes, 340 000 t/a and records kept	Tonnes of MSW diverted from landfill recorded by co-operatives & waste minimisation team	Reported for garden drop offs but otherwise unreliable	Not recorded	Only reported by private service providers	Waste reclaimed from landfill site is recorded
Organics Diversion	No organics diversion	Yes, 100,000 t /a with records kept	Yes, 11 000 t /a with records kept	Not recorded	Reported for garden drop offs but otherwise unreliable	Not recorded	Not recorded	No organic diversion undertaken
Reliance on others	Major reliance on others for diversion, data reporting, fleet.	None	Heavily reliant on private landfills	Highly reliant on others for WM services	Reliant on other for leased contracts, specialist activities (eg: water quality monitoring, lifespan assessment), funding of infrastructure	Metro not heavily reliant on others to provide service	Reliant on others for collection, fleet, waste diversion and technical advice	Facilities owned and operated by Metro, heavily reliant on others
Environmental								
Environmental Compliance Audits	No external audits undertaken. Internal check sheets prepared	At all facilities, internal and external, as per license requirements	At all facilities, internal and external, as per license requirements. Not all provided	Undertaken by external service provider at all facilities	Internal and external audits not being undertaken	At all facilities, internal and external, as per license requirements but not all available	Only some facilities audited, very poor scores	External audits undertaken at open and closed landfill facilities (data not provided at time of writing), no internal audits
Water Quality and Management	Routine surface and groundwater monitoring undertaken by municipal Health	Routine leachate monitoring as per license conditions. Some non-compliances.	Bi-annual monitoring by external SP. Issues with leachate seepage	Monitoring bi-annual by external service provider. Critical equipment stolen	Routine groundwater monitoring not undertaken for several years	Routine leachate monitoring as per license conditions. No NC issues	Groundwater monitoring at 3 landfills – leachate a concern since no	Routine groundwater monitoring undertaken, with no surface water

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
	Services at both landfill sites.	DEA&DP compliance notices received	and stormwater infrastructure	or vandalized. Evident leachate overflows			engineering controls	quality monitoring
Air Quality and Odour Management	No air quality monitoring undertaken	Monitoring as per license conditions. Some odour complaints due to irregular cover application	Some odour complaints received	Routine air quality monitoring not undertaken	Routine air quality monitoring not undertaken for several years	Monitoring as per license conditions. No concerns logged	No air quality monitoring. Odour is a noted concern	Rely on Municipal Health Services for air quality, however, not undertaken
Climate Resilience	No landfill gas capture undertaken	Methane reduction (landfill gas capture) at 3 landfills. Additional capping at others contributes to resilience	Methane reduction (landfill gas capture) at 2 landfills and one planned.	Landfill gas extraction at most landfills but mainly non-functional due to stolen / vandalized equipment	No landfill gas capture at any landfill. Progressive capping helps reduce methane release	Landfill gas extraction at 3 landfills and plans for future plant. Capping contributes to resilience	No landfill gas extraction or any other climate resilience measures	Landfill Gas Capture not undertaken. Lack of Progressive capping
Administrative								
Waste Licensing	All facilities licensed	All facilities licensed	All landfills licensed. All drop off licenses in progress	All facilities licensed	All facilities licensed	All facilities licensed	Two landfills not licensed	Landfills licensed. 2/18 drop offs licensed
Water Use Licensing	Water use licenses (where relevant) in place	Not in place, currently being undertaken	Abstraction borehole licenses not available	N/A	Not required	In place where required	N/A	N/A
WMO and WMCO	Waste Management Officer designated. WMCO not designated	Yes	Yes	WMO in place. WMCO being appointed	Yes	WMO designated. WMCO not required	Not designated	WMO designated. WMCO not designated
Incidents Management	Incident Register in place, with environmental incidents recorded and submitted to Regulator	Recorded and reported to relevant authorities	Maintained at landfills	Incident reports maintained at landfills	Log books kept on site but unable to confirm if incidents reported to regulator	On-site register provided to external auditor	Incident records kept at landfills and reported to General Manager of HOD	Incident register kept at landfills, with critical incidents reported to Metro SWM Head Office

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
Complaints handling	Complaints Register & centralised hotline for all matters pertaining to SWM, which are typically resolved at Ward level	Formal system in place for public complaints. Main complaints illegal dumping	CoJ call centre handles all complaints	Registers kept at depots and available to public; and via call centre or Metro App which allows for site specific complaints (e.g. odour) and general complaints (e.g. illegal dumping)	Recorded by complaints handling system – records available to public	Received via DSW complaints line; handled by responsible party	Complaints registers available at some landfills – public reporting illegal dumping directly to Ward Councillors	Complaints registers available at some landfills. Responsibilities for response allocated
Transparency	Routine Monitoring Committee Meetings are not undertaken	Routine monitoring committee. Six-monthly review of audit findings	Routine monitoring committee meetings for some landfills	Routine monitoring committee meetings undertaken annually	Routine monitoring committee meetings not being undertaken	Routine monitoring committee reporting. Results provided to auditor	Routine Monitoring Committee Meetings are not undertaken	Routine Monitoring Committee Meetings are undertaken
Health and Safety		Medical exams undertaken. OHS surveys at all facilities bi-annually	Internal medical assessments, last done 2020	Health and OHS surveys undertaken.	Medical examinations and OHS management undertaken but not consistent	Health risk exposure assessments at each facility by City OHS team		
Enforcement	SWM supported by Law Enforcement & do get support from Municipal Health Services	Lack of by-law enforcement. Bylaw updating needed	Reliant on CoJ law enforcement	Lack of enforcement by Metro police. Policy under review	Reliant on CoT law enforcement	Primarily by DSW peace officers - insufficient	Metro reliant on Law Enforcement which are under resourced	Key issue within the Metro, wholly reliant on Law Enforcement – no internal Peace Officers
Preparedness								
Education and awareness	BCMM have a unit for waste minimization which may be used for public involvement in future	Internal, frequent circulars to public. Too little done regarding S@S comms with public		Undertaken internally, primarily focused on separation at source & illegal dumping	Internally by Solid Waste Management. Resources limited	Undertaken by DSW on general waste management and minimisation	Undertaken by Metro, with key focus area being separation at source / basic waste management	Metro Community Liaison Officer (2) undertake community awareness

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
SOPS, EP&RP, ESMS	No Site Operating & EP&RP in place. Fire management plan in place	In place and utilized by all facilities	SOPs missing for some facilities	Plans are in-place as a requirement of the SLAs with private service providers operating the facilities	Some but ER&PP not in place for all landfills. Not a CoT priority	OEMPs not in place for all facilities	SOPs in place. No Operational Environmental Management Plans	No EP&RP. O-EMPs are outdated
End Use	No Masterplans and / or End-Use plans in-place	Outdated. Require updating	Masterplans in place (2022) for landfills	Masterplans for landfills in-place, including elements for progressive rehabilitation	Under development for closure permits	Masterplans -one currently being undertaken, others to follow	Masterplans in place for 3 facilities. Require updating	No end-use plans in-place for landfills
Alternative Waste Technologies								
Treatment & Minimization	Landfill Gas capture, flaring & combustion considered for future	Landfill gas recovery at 3 facilities. Two materials recovery facilities. Investigations into biological and heat and power, refuse-derived fuel alts. being assessed.	Feasibility of Integrated Waste Management Facilities being investigated for open and closed landfills	No existing materials recovery. Greens beneficiation & composting not undertaken. Investigations under way	Generally incomplete and not fully coordinated	Landfill gas and electrical generation only. No composting	Working towards garden waste drop-offs. Working to increase separation	No current plans for composting, materials recovery & waste to energy initiatives
Governance and Institutional								
Head of waste reports to Accounting Officer	Solid waste falls under the directorate of Solid Waste and Environmental Health	Solid waste functions within Urban Waste Management (UWM) directorate. The Executive Director: UWM reports to the City Manager.	Managing Director reports to a Board, but there is also a reporting line to the City Manager	No. The Waste Management Division is located within the Engineering and Resource Management (ERM) Department	No. The waste management function is located within the Environment and Agriculture Management (EAM) Department	No, the Head: Cleansing and Solid Waste (CSW) reports to the Deputy City Manager: Trading Services	Yes. The HOD Community Services reports to the City Manager	No. The head of the waste function is the Deputy Director: Waste Management

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
Is the head of the waste function also responsible for non-waste related functions?	No	Yes. UWM Includes the Public Empowerment and Development (PED) which manages all EPWP/CDWs	No. Pikitup as an entity is dedicated to waste management	No, the Manager: Waste Management Services is responsible only for waste functions.	No. The Divisional Head: Waste Management Services is responsible only for solid waste functions	No	Yes. The solid waste function is split	No
Does the head of the waste function have adequate control over the supporting functions required to undertake the service?	A major issue within Buffalo City is a lack of a fleet department and any support services, including finance, HR, IT, SCM, contract management, planning and strategy	Largely. UWM has full complement of support functions	Pikitup was designed as a ring-fenced municipal entity (utility) so has most functions in-house, but some important functions are not.	No. While the HOD, in terms of his performance agreement, is given responsibility for human resources, finances, SCM, asset management, and customer relations, in practice most support functions are centralised	No. At present, some critical functions are located outside the department (particularly fleet requirements)	No. Various gaps in responsibilities and reporting structures	No. The support functions in Mangaung are highly centralised. All fleet is centralised - slow turnaround times for vehicle repairs. Customer relations is handled centrally (poorly)	Insufficient information was provided to assess this
Is the organisational structure fit for purpose?	Within solid waste are five branches. New approach needed to better reflect the requirements of the waste hierarchy	Functional. The structure does allow for separation of collection, disposal and cleansing, as well as the management of fleet, collections and disposal by a single director	Yes. Pikitup is rationally organised into divisions dealing with all major business activities and support functions	The Waste Services Management department has eight sections that are logically structured	In general, the metro believes that the operational structure is fit for purpose, but there are gaps in the support functions	No. Present freeze on changes. a vertical structure which conflates multiple functions within line depts. and results in a lack of senior positions to drive strategic areas.	No. Solid Waste is divided into two branches	Waste Management is sub-divided into Waste Disposal (Landfills and Drop-Offs), Planning & Contracts, and three Sub-Districts. The fleet function appears to be under-developed
Is the department adequately resourced?	Critical vacancies exist in the department. 61%	Main constraint is contract management. HR	Large number of positions are vacant.	Vacancies high. Dept. has the lowest number of	Two of seven director posts vacant. There is a	Vacancies low but some key positions not	The vacancy rate in the current structure is very	The vacancy rate in the current structure is very

South Africa Metro Trading Services Program (P505813) – Final ESSA Report

Criterion	Buffalo City	City of Cape Town	City of JHB	City of Ekurhuleni	City of Tshwane	eThekweni	Mangaung	Nelson Mandela Bay
	of posts are vacant	function also under-resourced. Efforts being made to fill vacant positions	Workshops outsourced. The CoJ EISD Waste Directorate, which provides oversight and support, has only 13 employees	employees per 1000 population served for all metros and outsourcing will reduce this further. Lack of bylaw enforcement is a problem	need to expand capacity on finance, logistics, legal and performance management (or HR in general)	filled or acting and insufficient enforcement officers	high at 36%. The department also only has 19 collection trucks out of a required 60 trucks	high at 42%. The current staffing ratio is low
Key (% of total)								
Significant Concern	36.1%	2.7%	10.8%	22.8%	29.7%	2.7%	37.1%	35.3%
Some Concern	27.7%	35.1%	37.8%	42.8%	45.9%	37.8	5.7%	50%
Little to No Concern	36.2%	62.2%	51.4%	34.4%	24.4%	59.4%	17.2%	14.7%

